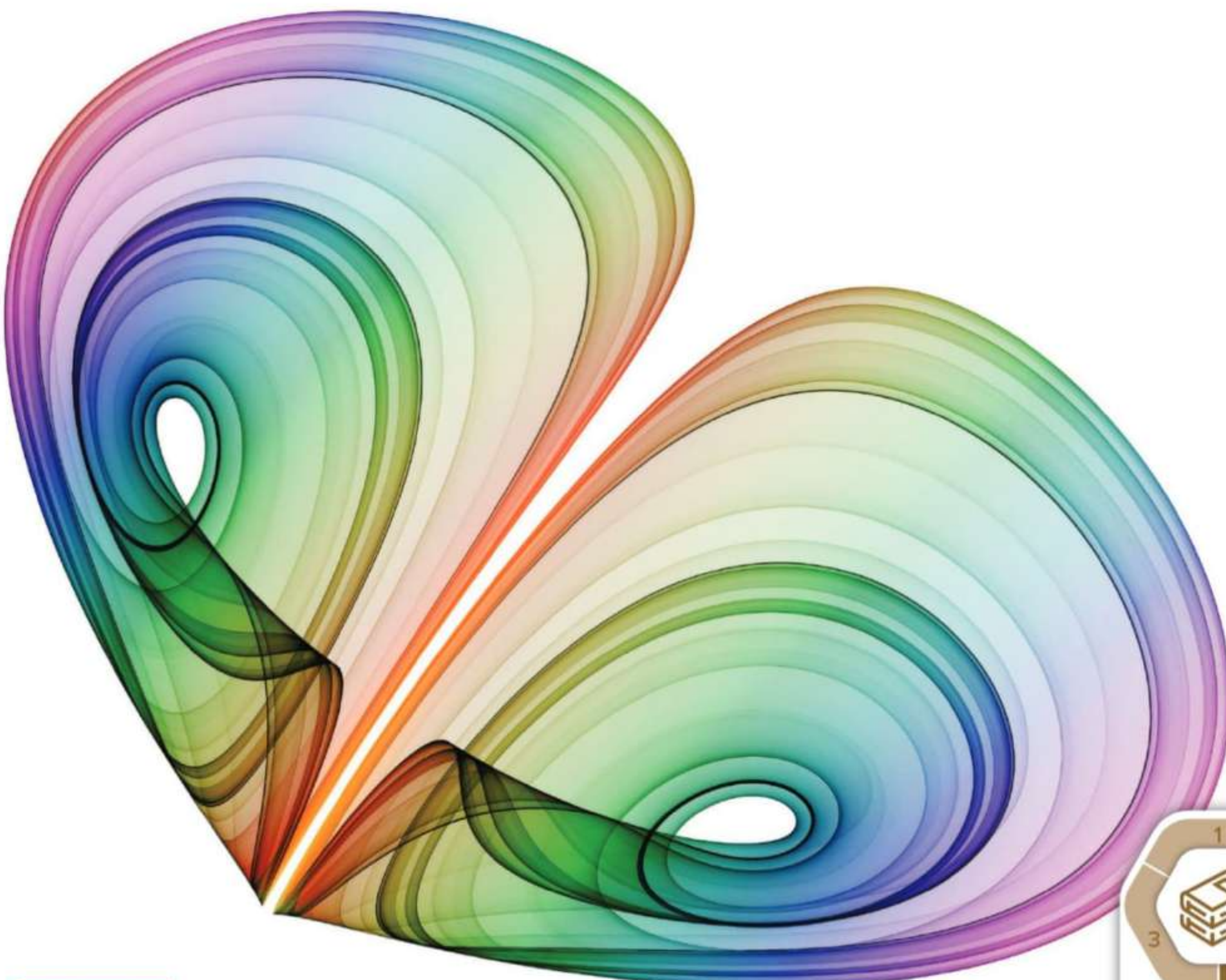
UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

المدرسة الإماراتية

2021-2022

Mathematics

United Arab Emirates Edition



McGraw Hill

Grade 11

Advanced

McGraw-Hill Education

Mathematics

United Arab Emirates Edition

Advanced Stream

1

11

2021-2022

3 2

Certified

The materials in this book are certified by the Ministry of Education

Project: McGraw-Hill Education United Arab Emirates Edition Grade 11 Advanced Math SE Vol 2

FM. Front Matter, from Precalculus © 2014
6. Conic Sections, from Algebra 2 Chapter 9 © 2014
& Conic Sections and Parametric Equations, from Precalculus Chapter 7 © 2014
7. Vectors, from Precalculus Chapter 8 © 2014
& Vectors and the Geometries of Space, from Calculus Chapter 10 © 2012
8. Polar Coordinates and Complex Numbers, from Precalculus Chapter 9 © 2014
9. Sequences and Series, from Algebra 2 Chapter 10 © 2014
& Sequences and Series, from Precalculus Chapter 10 © 2014
EM Appendix, from Bluman Elementary Statistics;9e Appendix © 2015
& End Matter/Glossary, from Precalculus © 2014

COVER: K-Fractals/Alamy Stock Photo

mheducation.com/prek-12

Copyright © 2021 McGraw-Hill Education

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written consent of McGraw-Hill Education, including, but not limited to, network storage or transmission, or broadcast for distance learning.

Exclusive rights by McGraw-Hill Education for manufacture and export. This book cannot be re-exported from the country to which it is sold by McGraw-Hill Education. This Regional Edition is not available outside Europe, the Middle East and Africa.

Printed in the United Arab Emirates.

ISBN: 978-1-39-890801-7 *(Student Edition)*
MHID: 1-39-890801-0 *(Student Edition)*

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 XXX 22 21 20 19 18 17

ePub Edition

ISBN: 978-1-39-890805-5 *(Student Edition)*
MHID: 1-39-890805-3 *(Student Edition)*
ISBN: 978-1-39-890807-9 *(Teacher Edition)*
MHID: 1-39-890807-X *(Teacher Edition)*

"Extensive knowledge and modern science must be acquired. The educational process we see today is in an ongoing and escalating challenge which requires hard work.
We succeeded in entering the third millennium, while we are more confident in ourselves."

H.H. Sheikh Khalifa Bin Zayed Al Nahyan
President of the United Arab Emirates

Contents in Brief

Authors

Our lead authors ensure that the McGraw-Hill mathematics programs are truly vertically aligned by beginning with the end in mind–success in high school and beyond. By "backmapping" the content from the high school programs, all of our mathematics programs are well articulated in their scope and sequence.

Lead Authors

J. A. Carter, Ph.D.
Assistant Principal for Teaching and Learning
Adlai E. Stevenson High School
Lincolnshire, Illinois

Areas of Expertise: Using technology and manipulatives to visualize concepts; mathematics achievement of English-language learners

Gilbert J. Cuevas, Ph.D.
Professor of Mathematics Education
Texas State University–San Marcos
San Marcos, Texas

Areas of Expertise: Applying concepts and skills in mathematically rich contexts; mathematical representations

Roger Day, Ph.D., NBCT
Mathematics Department Chairperson
Pontiac Township High School
Pontiac, Illinois

Areas of Expertise: Understanding and applying probability and statistics; mathematics teacher education

Carol Malloy, Ph.D.
Associate Professor
University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill
Chapel Hill, North Carolina

Areas of Expertise: Representations and critical thinking; student success in Algebra 1

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Program Authors

Luajean Bryan
Mathematics Teacher
2009 Tennessee Teacher of the Year
Walker Valley High School
Cleveland, Tennessee

Areas of Expertise: Meaningful projects that make precalculus and calculus real to students

Berchie Holliday, Ed.D.
National Mathematics Consultant
Silver Spring, Maryland

Areas of Expertise: Using mathematics to model and understand real-world data; the effect of graphics on mathematical understanding

Viken Hovsepian
Professor of Mathematics
Rio Hondo College
Whittier, California

Contributing Author

Jay McTighe
Educational Author and Consultant
Columbia, MD

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 1

Power, Polynomial, and Rational Functions

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Cultura Creative (RF)/Alamy Stock Photo

CHAPTER 2

Exponential and Logarithmic Functions

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education underworld/Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 3

Trigonometric Functions

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Bikeriderlondon/Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 4

Trigonometric Identities and Equations

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Stokkete/Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 5

Systems of Equations and Matrices

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Peter Beck/Corbis/Getty Images

CHAPTER 6

Conic Sections and Parametric Equations

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Purestock/SuperStock

CHAPTER 7 Vectors

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Ingram Publishing/SuperStock

CHAPTER 8

Polar Coordinates and Complex Numbers

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Bikeriderlondon/Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 9

Sequences and Series

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education I. Rozenbaum & F. Cirou/PhotoAlto

CHAPTER 10

Statistics and Probability

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Zurijeta/Shutterstock.com

CHAPTER 11

Functions from a Calculus Perspective

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ra2studio/Shutterstock

CHAPTER 12

Calculus

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Vitali Nesterchuk/Shutterstock

CHAPTER

Student Handbook

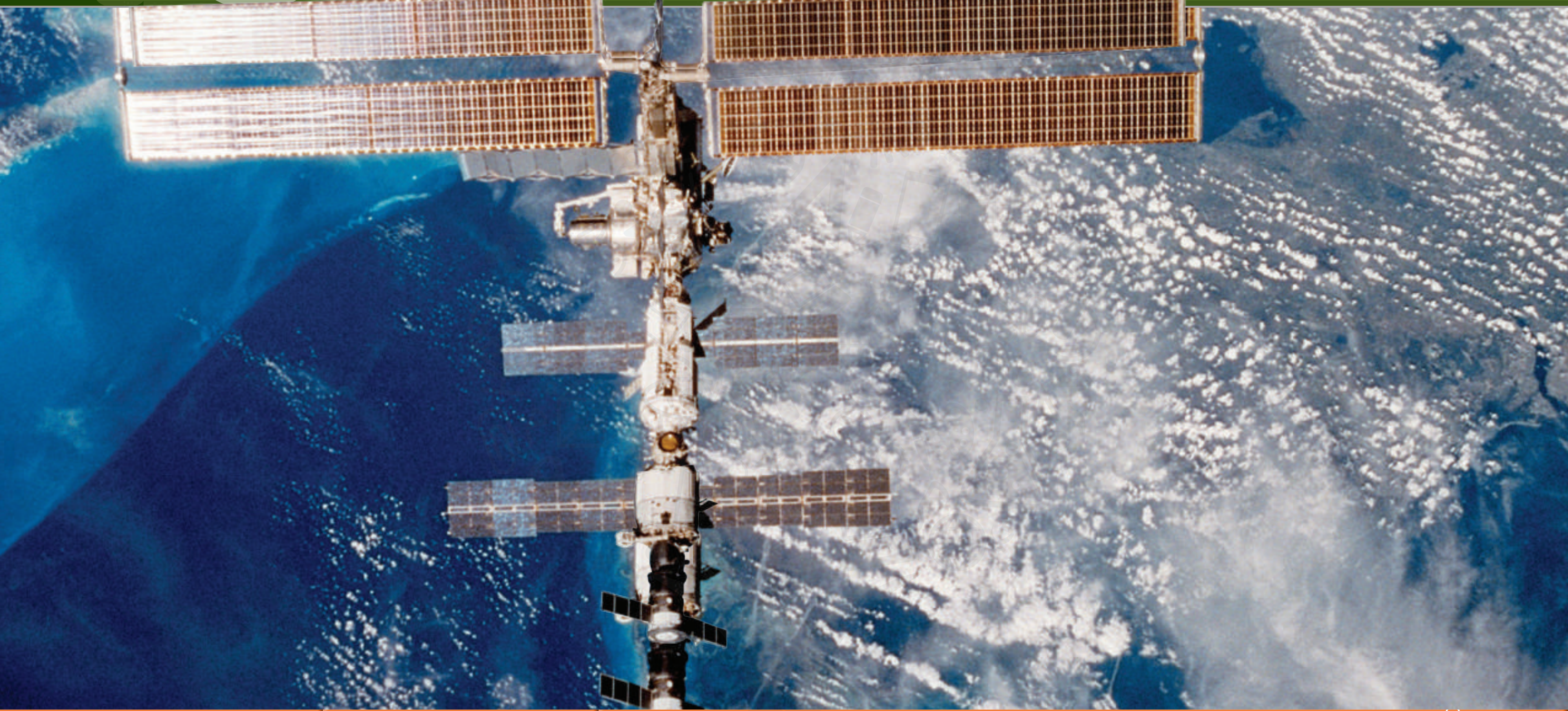
Symbols, Formulas, and Key Concepts

Statistical Tables

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 6

Conic Sections and Parametric Equations



Then

You solved systems of linear equations algebraically and graphically.

Now

You will:

- Use the Midpoint and Distance Formulas.
- Write and graph equations of parabolas, circles, ellipses, and hyperbolas.
- Identify conic sections.
- Solve systems of quadratic equations and inequalities.

Why? ▲

SPACE Conic sections are evident in many aspects of space. Equations of circles are used to pilot spacecraft and satellites in circular orbits around Earth and the Moon. Planets travel in elliptical paths, not circular ones as previously thought. Comets travel along one branch of a hyperbola, which can help us to predict when they will appear again.

Conic Sections, from Algebra 2 Chapter 9 © 2014 Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Purestock/SuperStock

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Get Ready for the Chapter

1 Textbook Option Take the Quick Check below. Refer to the Quick Review for help.

QuickCheck

Solve each equation by completing the square.

1. $x^2 + 8x + 7 = 0$
2. $x^2 + 5x - 6 = 0$
3. $x^2 - 8x + 15 = 0$
4. $x^2 + 2x - 120 = 0$
5. $2x^2 + 7x - 15 = 0$
6. $2x^2 + 3x - 5 = 0$
7. $x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x - \frac{23}{16} = 0$
8. $3x^2 - 4x = 2$

Solve each system of equations by using either substitution or elimination.

9. $y = x + 3$
   $2x - y = -1$
10. $2x - 5y = -18$
    $3x + 4y = 19$
11. $4y + 6x = -6$
    $5y - x = 35$
12. $x = y - 8$
    $4x + 2y = 4$
13. **MONEY** The student council paid AED 15 per registration for a conference. They also paid AED 10 for T-shirts for a total of AED 180. Last year, they spent AED 12 per registration and AED 9 per T-shirt for a total of AED 150 to buy the same number of registrations and T-shirts. Write and solve a system of two equations that represents the number of registrations and T-shirts bought each year.

QuickReview

Example 1

Solve $x^2 + 6x - 16 = 0$ by completing the square.

$x^2 + 6x = 16$

$x^2 + 6x + 9 = 16 + 9$

$(x + 3)^2 = 25$

$x + 3 = \pm 5$

$x + 3 = 5$ or $x + 3 = -5$

$x = 2$ $\qquad$ $x = -8$

Example 2

Solve the system of equations algebraically.
$3y = x - 9$
$4x + 5y = 2$

Since x has a coefficient of 1 in the first equation, use the substitution method. First, solve that equation for x.

$3y = x - 9 \quad \rightarrow \quad x = 3y + 9$

$4(3y + 9) + 5y = 2$	Substitute $3y + 9$ for x.
$12y + 36 + 5y = 2$	Distributive Property
$17y = -34$	Combine like terms.
$y = -2$	Divide each side by 17.

To find x, use $y = -2$ in the first equation.

$3(-2) = x - 9$	Substitute -2 for y.
$-6 = x - 9$	Multiply.
$3 = x$	Add 9 to each side.

The solution is $(3, -2)$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

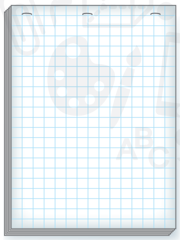
Get Started on the Chapter

You will learn several new concepts, skills, and vocabulary terms as you study Chapter 6. To get ready, identify important terms and organize your resources.

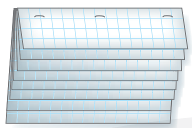
FOLDABLES® StudyOrganizer

Conic Sections Make this Foldable to help you organize your Chapter 6 notes about conic sections. Begin with eight sheets of grid paper.

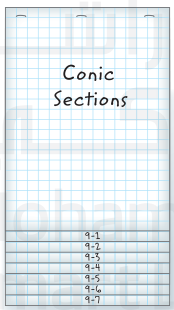
1 **Staple** the stack of grid paper along the top to form a booklet.



2 **Cut** seven lines from the bottom of the top sheet, six lines from the second sheet, and so on.



3 **Label** with lesson numbers as shown.



NewVocabulary

English

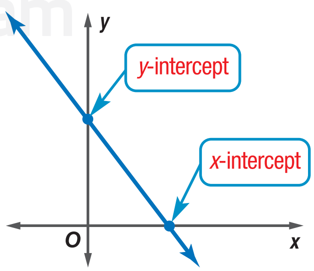
parabola
focus
directrix
circle
center of a circle
radius
ellipse
foci
major axis
minor axis
center of an ellipse
vertices
co-vertices
constant sum
hyperbola
transverse axis
conjugate axis
constant difference

ReviewVocabulary

quadratic equation an equation of the form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$

system of equations a set of equations with the same variables

***x*- and *y*-intercepts** the *x*- or *y*-coordinate of the point at which a graph crosses the *x*- or *y*-axis



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 6-1

Parabolas

:: Then	:: Now	:: Why?
You graphed quadratic functions.	**1** Write equations of parabolas in standard form. **2** Graph parabolas.	Satellite dishes can be used to send and receive signals and can be seen attached to residential homes and businesses. A satellite dish is a type of antenna constructed to receive signals from orbiting satellites. The signals are reflected off of the dish's parabolic surface to a common collection point.

New Vocabulary

parabola
focus
directrix
latus rectum
standard form
general form

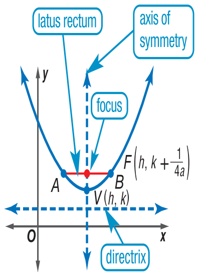
Mathematical Practices

1 Make sense of problems and persevere in solving them.

1 Equations of Parabolas

A **parabola** can be defined as the set of all points in a plane that are the same distance from a given point called the **focus** and a given line called the **directrix**.

The line segment through the focus of a parabola and perpendicular to the axis of symmetry is called the **latus rectum**. The endpoints of the latus rectum lie on the parabola.



Key Concept Equations of Parabolas

Form of Equation	$y = a(x - h)^2 + k$	$x = a(y - k)^2 + h$
Direction of Opening	upward if $a > 0$, downward if $a < 0$	right if $a > 0$, left if $a < 0$
Vertex	(h, k)	(h, k)
Axis of Symmetry	$x = h$	$y = k$
Focus	$\left(h, k + \frac{1}{4a}\right)$	$\left(h + \frac{1}{4a}, k\right)$
Directrix	$y = k - \frac{1}{4a}$	$x = h - \frac{1}{4a}$
Length of Latus Rectum	$\left\lvert\frac{1}{a}\right\rvert$ units	$\left\lvert\frac{1}{a}\right\rvert$ units

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

The **standard form** of the equation of a parabola with vertex (h, k) and axis of symmetry $x = h$ is $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$.

- If $a > 0$, k is the minimum value of the related function and the parabola opens upward.
- If $a < 0$, k is the maximum value of the related function and the parabola opens downward.

An equation of a parabola in the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ is the **general form**. Any equation in general form can be written in standard form. The shape of a parabola and the distance between the focus and directrix depend on the value of a in the equation.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Sean Russell/Getty Images

ReviewVocabulary

Completing the Square rewriting a quadratic expression as a perfect square trinomial

Example 1 Analyze the Equation of a Parabola

Write $y = 2x^2 - 12x + 6$ in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.

$y = 2x^2 - 12x + 6$	Original equation
$= 2(x^2 - 6x) + 6$	Factor 2 from the x- and x^2-terms.
$= 2(x^2 - 6x + \blacksquare) + 6 - 2(\blacksquare)$	Complete the square on the right side.
$= 2(x^2 - 6x + 9) + 6 - 2(9)$	The 9 added when you complete the square is multiplied by 2.
$= 2(x - 3)^2 - 12$	Factor.

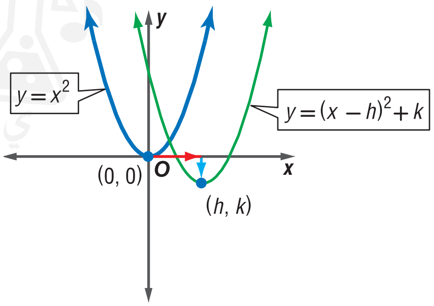
The vertex of this parabola is located at $(3, -12)$, and the equation of the axis of symmetry is $x = 3$. The parabola opens upward.

GuidedPractice

1. Write $y = 4x^2 + 16x + 34$ in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.

2 Graph Parabolas

Previously you learned that the graph of the quadratic equation $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ is a transformation of the parent graph of $y = x^2$ translated h units horizontally and k units vertically, and reflected and/or dilated depending on the value of a.



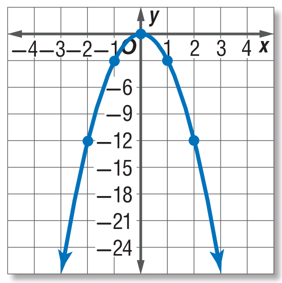
Example 2 Graph Parabolas

Graph each equation.

a. $y = -3x^2$

For this equation, $h = 0$ and $k = 0$. The vertex is at the origin. Since the equation of the axis of symmetry is $x = 0$, substitute some small positive integers for x and find the corresponding y-values.

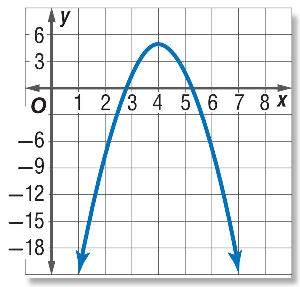
x	y
1	-3
2	-12
3	-27



Since the graph is symmetric about the y-axis, the points at $(-1, -3)$, $(-2, -12)$, and $(-3, -27)$ are also on the parabola. Use all of these points to draw the graph.

b. $y = -3(x - 4)^2 + 5$

The equation is of the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, where $h = 4$ and $k = 5$. The graph of this equation is the graph of $y = -3x^2$ in part **a** translated 4 units to the right and up 5 units. The vertex is now at $(4, 5)$.



GuidedPractice

2A. $y = 2x^2$

2B. $y = 2(x - 1)^2 - 4$

WatchOut!

Structure Carefully examine the values for h and k before beginning to graph an equation.

- If h is positive, translate the graph h units to the right.
- If h is negative, translate the graph $|h|$ units to the left.
- If k is positive, translate the graph k units up.
- If k is negative, translate the graph $|k|$ units down.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

StudyTip

Graphing When graphing these functions, it may be helpful to sketch the graph of the parent function.

Equations of parabolas with vertical axes of symmetry have the parent function $y = x^2$ and are of the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$. These are functions. Equations of parabolas with horizontal axes of symmetry are of the form $x = a(y - k)^2 + h$ and are not functions. The parent graph for these equations is $x = y^2$.

Example 3 Graph an Equation in General Form

Graph each equation.

a. $\mathbf{2x - y^2 = 4y + 10}$

Step 1 Write the equation in the form $x = a(y - k)^2 + h$.

$2x - y^2 = 4y + 10$	Original equation
$2x = y^2 + 4y + 10$	Add y^2 to each side to isolate the x-term.
$2x = (y^2 + 4y + \blacksquare) + 10 - \blacksquare$	Complete the square.
$2x = (y^2 + 4y + 4) + 10 - 4$	Add and subtract 4, since $\left(\frac{4}{2}\right)^2 = 4$.
$2x = (y + 2)^2 + 6$	Factor and subtract.
$x = \frac{1}{2}(y + 2)^2 + 3$	$(h, k) = (3, -2)$

Step 2 Use the equation to find information about the graph. Then draw the graph based on the parent graph, $x = y^2$.

vertex: $(3, -2)$

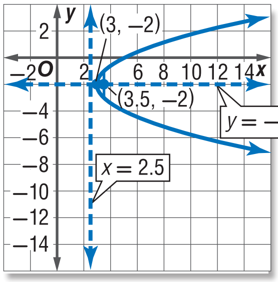
axis of symmetry: $y = -2$

focus: $\left(3 + \dfrac{1}{4\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}, -2\right)$ or $(3.5, -2)$

directrix: $x = 3 - \dfrac{1}{4\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}$ or 2.5

direction of opening: right, since $a > 0$

length of latus rectum: $\left|\dfrac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}\right|$ or 2 units



ReadingMath

latus rectum from the Latin *latus*, meaning side, and *rectum*, meaning straight

b. $\mathbf{y + 2x^2 + 32 = -16x - 1}$

Step 1

$y + 2x^2 + 32 = -16x - 1$	Original equation
$y = -2x^2 - 16x - 33$	Solve for y.
$y = -2(x^2 + 8x + \blacksquare) - 33 - \blacksquare$	Complete the square.
$y = -2(x^2 + 8x + 16) - 33 - (-32)$	Add and subtract -32.
$y = -2(x + 4)^2 - 1$	Factor and simplify.

Step 2 vertex: $(-4, -1)$

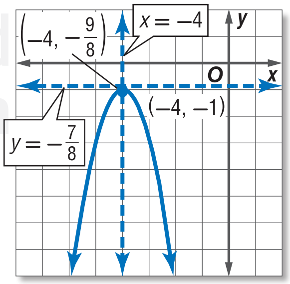
axis of symmetry: $x = -4$

focus: $\left(-4, -\frac{9}{8}\right)$

directrix: $y = -\frac{7}{8}$

length of latus rectum: $\frac{1}{2}$ unit

opens downward



GuidedPractice

3A. $3x - y^2 = 4x + 25$

3B. $y = x^2 + 6x - 4$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

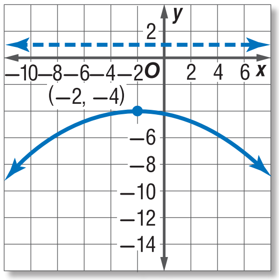
You can use specific information about a parabola to write an equation and draw a graph.

Example 4 Write an Equation of a Parabola

Write an equation for a parabola with vertex at $(-2, -4)$ and directrix $y = 1$. Then graph the equation.

The directrix is a horizontal line, so the equation of the parabola is of the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$. Find a, h, and k.

- The vertex is at $(-2, -4)$, so $h = -2$ and $k = -4$.
- Use the equation of the directrix to find a.



$y = k - \frac{1}{4a}$	Equation of directrix
$1 = -4 - \frac{1}{4a}$	Replace y with 1 and k with −4.
$5 = -\frac{1}{4a}$	Add 4 to each side.
$20a = -1$	Multiply each side by $4a$.
$a = -\frac{1}{20}$	Divide each side by 20.

So, the equation of the parabola is $y = -\frac{1}{20}(x + 2)^2 - 4$.

GuidedPractice

Write an equation for each parabola described below. Then graph the equation.

4A. vertex (1, 3), focus (1, 5)

4B. focus (5, 6), directrix $x = -2$

Parabolas are often used in the real world.

Real-WorldLink

In California's Mojave Desert, parabolic mirrors are used to heat oil that flows through tubes placed at the focus. The heated oil is used to produce electricity.

Source: Solel

Real-World Example 5 Write an Equation for a Parabola

ENVIRONMENT Solar energy may be harnessed by using parabolic mirrors. The mirrors reflect the rays from the Sun to the focus of the parabola. The focus of each parabolic mirror at the facility described at the left is 1.9 meters above the vertex. The latus rectum is 7.6 meters long.

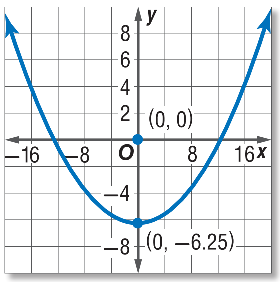
a. Assume that the focus is at the origin. Write an equation for the parabola formed by each mirror.

In order for the mirrors to collect the Sun's energy, the parabola must open upward. Therefore, the vertex must be below the focus.

focus: (0, 0) vertex: (0, −1.9)

The measure of the latus rectum is 7.6. So $7.6 = \left|\frac{1}{a}\right|$, and $a = \frac{1}{7.6}$.

Using the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, an equation for the parabola formed by each mirror is $y = \frac{1}{7.6}x^2 - 1.9$.



b. Graph the equation.

Now use all of the information to draw a graph.

GuidedPractice

5. Write and graph an equation for a parabolic mirror that has a focus 1.4 meters above the vertex and a latus rectum that is 5.5 meters long, when the focus is at the origin.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Doug Sherman/Geofile

Check Your Understanding

Example 1 **Write each equation in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.**

1. $y = 2x^2 - 24x + 40$
2. $y = 3x^2 - 6x - 4$
3. $x = y^2 - 8y - 11$
4. $x + 3y^2 + 12y = 18$

Examples 2–3 **Graph each equation.**

5. $y = (x - 4)^2 - 6$
6. $y = 4(x + 5)^2 + 3$
7. $y = -3x^2 - 4x - 8$
8. $x = 3y^2 - 6y + 9$

Example 4 **Write an equation for each parabola described below. Then graph the equation.**

9. vertex (0, 2), focus (0, 4)
10. vertex (−2, 4), directrix $x = -1$
11. focus (3, 2), directrix $y = 8$
12. vertex (−1, −5), focus (−5, −5)

Example 5

13. **ASTRONOMY** Consider a parabolic mercury mirror like the one described at the beginning of the lesson. The focus is 1.8 meters above the vertex and the latus rectum is 7.3 meters long.
    a. Assume that the focus is at the origin. Write an equation for the parabola formed by the parabolic microphone.
    b. Graph the equation.

Practice and Problem Solving

Example 1 **Write each equation in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.**

14. $y = x^2 - 8x + 13$
15. $y = 3x^2 + 42x + 149$
16. $y = -6x^2 - 36x - 8$
17. $y = -3x^2 - 9x - 6$
18. $x = \frac{1}{3}y^2 - 3y + 4$
19. $x = \frac{2}{3}y^2 - 4y + 12$

Examples 2–3 **Graph each equation.**

20. $y = \frac{1}{3}x^2$
21. $y = -2x^2$
22. $y = -2(x - 2)^2 + 3$
23. $y = 3(x - 3)^2 - 5$
24. $x = \frac{1}{2}y^2$
25. $4x - y^2 = 2y + 13$

Example 4 **Write an equation for each parabola described below. Then graph the equation.**

26. vertex (0, 1), focus (0, 4)
27. vertex (1, 8), directrix $y = 3$
28. focus (−2, −4), directrix $x = -6$
29. focus (2, 4), directrix $x = 10$
30. vertex (−6, 0), directrix $x = 2$
31. vertex (9, 6), focus (9, 5)

Example 5

32. **BASEBALL** When a ball is thrown, the path it travels is a parabola. Suppose a baseball is thrown from ground level, reaches a maximum height of 15.2 meters, and hits the ground 61 meters from where it was thrown. Assuming this situation could be modeled on a coordinate plane with the focus of the parabola at the origin, find the equation of the parabolic path of the ball. Assume the focus is on ground level.

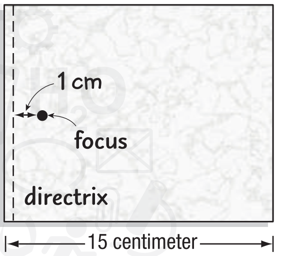
33. **PERSEVERANCE** Ground antennas and satellites are used to relay signals between the NASA Mission Operations Center and the spacecraft it controls. One such parabolic dish is 146 feet in diameter. Its focus is 48 feet from the vertex.
    a. Sketch two options for the dish, one that opens up and one that opens left.
    b. Write two equations that model the sketches in part **a**.
    c. If you wanted to find the depth of the dish, does it matter which equation you use? Why or why not?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

34. **UMBRELLAS** A beach umbrella has an arch in the shape of a parabola that opens downward. The umbrella spans 1.8 meters across and is 0.45 meters high. Write an equation of a parabola to model the arch, assuming that the origin is at the point where the pole and umbrella meet at the vertex of the arch.

35. **AUTOMOBILES** An automobile headlight contains a parabolic reflector. The light coming from the source bounces off the parabolic reflector and shines out the front of the headlight. The equation of the cross section of the reflector is $y = \frac{1}{12}x^2$. How far from the vertex should the filament for the high beams be placed?

36. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** Start with a sheet of wax paper that is about 15 centimeters long and 12 centimeters wide.



a. **Concrete** Make a line that is perpendicular to the sides of the sheet by folding the sheet near one end. Open up the paper again. This line is the directrix. Mark a point about midway between the sides of the sheet so that the distance from the directrix is about 1 inch. This is the focus.

b. **Concrete** Start with a new sheet of wax paper. Form another outline of a parabola with a focus that is about 3 centimeter from the directrix.

c. **Concrete** On a new sheet of a wax paper, form a third outline of a parabola with a focus that is about 5 centimeter from the directrix.

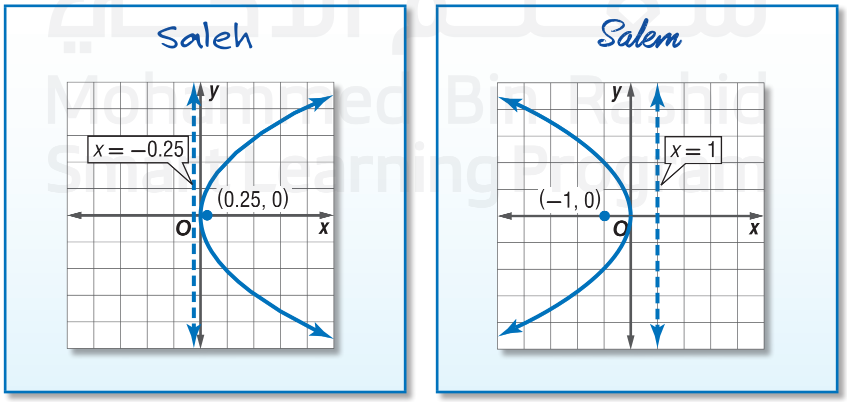
d. **Verbal** Compare the shapes of the three parabolas. How does the distance between the focus and the directrix affect the shape of a parabola?

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

37. **REASONING** How do you change the equation of the parent function $y = x^2$ to shift the graph to the right?

38. **OPEN ENDED** Two different parabolas have their vertex at $(-3, 1)$ and contain the point with coordinates $(-1, 0)$. Write two possible equations for these parabolas.

39. **CRITIQUE** Saleh and Salem are graphing $\frac{1}{4}y^2 + x = 0$. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.



40. **WRITING IN MATH** Why are parabolic shapes used in the real world?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Standardized Test Practice

41. A gardener is placing a fence around a 1320-square-meter rectangular garden. He ordered 148 meters of fencing. If he uses all the fencing, what is the length of the longer side of the garden?

A 30 m **C** 44 m

B 34 m **D** 46 m

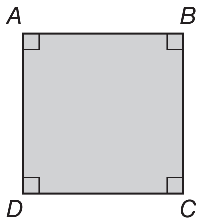
42. SAT/ACT When a number is divided by 5, the result is 7 more than the number. Find the number.

F $-\frac{35}{4}$ **J** $\frac{28}{4}$

G $-\frac{35}{6}$ **K** $\frac{35}{4}$

H $\frac{35}{6}$

43. GEOMETRY What is the area of the following square, if the length of $\overline{BD}$ is $2\sqrt{2}$?



A 1

B 2

C 3

D 4

44. SHORT RESPONSE The measure of the smallest angle of a triangle is two thirds the measure of the middle angle. The measure of the middle angle is three sevenths of the measure of the largest angle. Find the largest angle's measure.

Spiral Review

45. GEOMETRY Find the perimeter of a triangle with vertices at (2, 4), (−1, 3), and (1, −3). (Lesson 6-1)

46. WORK A worker can powerwash a wall of a certain size in 5 hours. Another worker can do the same job in 4 hours. If the workers work together, how long would it take to do the job? Determine whether your answer is reasonable.

Solve each equation or inequality. Round to the nearest ten-thousandth.

47. $\ln (x + 1) = 1$

48. $\ln (x - 7) = 2$

49. $e^x > 1.6$

50. $e^{5x} \geq 25$

Simplify.

51. $\sqrt{0.25}$

52. $\sqrt[3]{-0.064}$

53. $\sqrt[4]{z^8}$

54. $-\sqrt[6]{x^6}$

List all of the possible rational zeros of each function.

55. $h(x) = x^3 + 8x + 6$

56. $p(x) = 3x^3 - 5x^2 - 11x + 3$

57. $h(x) = 9x^6 - 5x^3 + 27$

Skills Review

Simplify each expression.

58. $\sqrt{24}$

59. $\sqrt{45}$

60. $\sqrt{252}$

61. $\sqrt{512}$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

EXPLORE 6-2

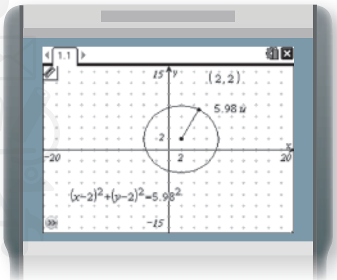
Graphing Technology Lab
Equations of Circles

You can use graphing technology to examine characteristics of circles and the relationship with an equation of the circle.

Activity

Step 1 Draw a circle.

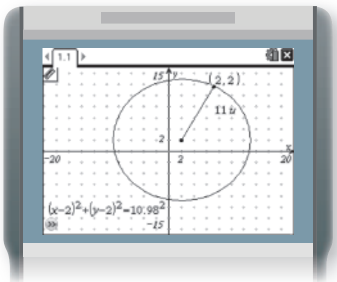
- Add a new **Graphs** page. Select **Window/Zoom** menu and use the **Windows Setting** tool to adjust the window size as shown. From the **View** menu, select **Show Grid**. Then from the **Shapes** menu, select **Circle**. Place the pointer at the point (2, 2) and press **enter** to set the center of the circle. Move the pointer out, creating a circle like the one shown.



- Use the **Point On** tool from the **Points & Line** menu to place a point on the circle.
- Use the **Segment** tool from the **Points & Line** menu to draw the radius.

Step 2 Add labels.

- From the **Actions** menu, select **Coordinates and Equations**. Use the pointer to select the center of the circle to display its coordinate. Then select the circle to display its equation. Move each display outside the circle.



- Use the **Length** tool from the **Measurement** menu to display the length of the radius.

Step 3 Change the radius.

Move the pointer so that a point on the circle is highlighted, then press and hold the center of the touchpad until it is selected. Examine the equation of the circle. Then move the edge of the circle in. Make note of changes in the equation.

Step 4 Move the center of the circle.

Move the pointer so that the center of the circle is highlighted, then press and hold the center of the touchpad until it is selected. Move the center of the circle. Again, examine the equation of the circle.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Analyze the Results

1. How does moving the edge of the circle in or out affect the equation of the circle?
2. What effect does moving the center of the circle have on the equation?
3. Repeat the activity by placing the center of a circle in Quadrant II. Move the center to each of the other two quadrants. How does the equation change?
4. **MAKE A CONJECTURE** Without graphing, write an equation of each circle.
   a. center: (4, 2), radius: 3
   b. center: (−1, 1), radius: 8
   c. center: (−6, −5), radius: 2.5
   d. center: (h, k), radius: r

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 6-2 Circles

Then

- You graphed and wrote equations of parabolas.

Now

1. Write equations of circles.
2. Graph circles.

Why?

- When an object is thrown into water, ripples move out from the center forming concentric circles. If the point where the object entered the water is assigned coordinates, each ripple can be modeled by an equation of a circle.

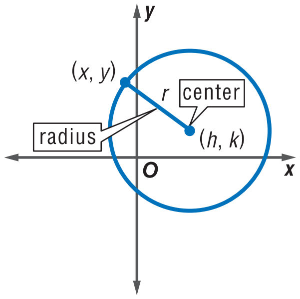
NewVocabulary
circle
center
radius

Mathematical Practices
4 Model with mathematics.

1 Equations of Circles

A **circle** is the set of all points in a plane that are equidistant from a given point in the plane, called the **center**. Any segment with endpoints at the center and a point on the circle is a **radius** of the circle.

Assume that (x, y) are the coordinates of a point on the circle at the right. The center is at (h, k), and the radius is r. You can find an equation of the circle by using the Distance Formula.



$$\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2} = d \qquad \text{Distance Formula}$$

$$\sqrt{(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2} = r \qquad (x_1, y_1) = (h, k),\ (x_2, y_2) = (x, y),\ d = r$$

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2 \qquad \text{Square each side.}$$

KeyConcept Equations of Circles

Standard Form of Equation	$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$	$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$
Center	(0, 0)	(h, k)
Radius	r	r

You can use the standard form of the equation of a circle to write an equation for a circle given the center and the radius or diameter.

Real-World Example 1 Write an Equation Given the Radius

DELIVERY **Appliances + More offers free delivery within 35 kilometers of the store. The Abu Dhabi store is located 100 kilometers north and 45 kilometers east of the corporate office. Write an equation to represent the delivery boundary of the Abu Dhabi store if the origin of the coordinate system is the corporate office.**

Since the corporate office is at (0, 0), the Abu Dhabi store is at (45, 100). The boundary of the delivery region is the circle centered at (45, 100) with radius 35 kilometers.

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2 \qquad \text{Equation of a circle}$$

$$(x - 45)^2 + (y - 100)^2 = 35^2 \qquad (h, k) = (45, 100) \text{ and } r = 35$$

$$(x - 45)^2 + (y - 100)^2 = 1225 \qquad \text{Simplify.}$$

GuidedPractice

1. **WI-FI** A certain wi-fi phone has a range of 30 kilometers in any direction. If the phone is 4 kilometers south and 3 kilometers west of headquarters, write an equation to represent the area within which the phone can operate via the Wi-Fi system.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education   Ian Nolan/Photodisc/Getty Images

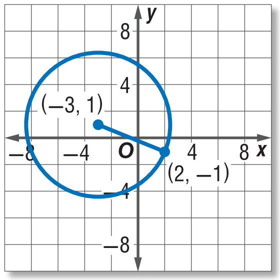
You can write the equation of a circle when you know the location of the center and a point on the circle.

StudyTip

Center-Radius Form Standard form is sometimes referred to as *center-radius form* because the center and radius of the circle are apparent in the equation.

Example 2 Write an Equation from a Graph

Write an equation for the graph.



$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$ Standard form

$(2 + 3)^2 + (-1 - 1)^2 = r^2$ $x = 2, y = -1, h = -3, k = 1$

$(5)^2 + (-2)^2 = r^2$ Simplify.

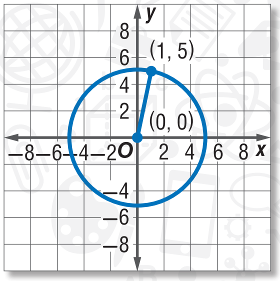
$25 + 4 = r^2$ Evaluate the exponents.

$29 = r^2$ Add.

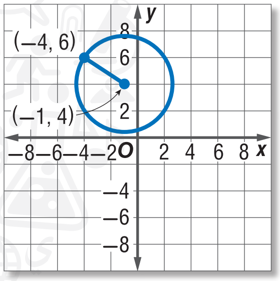
So, the equation of the circle is $(x + 3)^2 + (y - 1)^2 = 29$.

GuidedPractice

2A.



2B.



You can use the Midpoint and Distance Formulas when you know the endpoints of the radius or diameter of a circle.

Example 3 Write an Equation Given a Diameter

Write an equation for a circle if the endpoints of a diameter are at (7, 6) and (−1, −8).

Step 1 Find the center.

$(h, k) = \left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$ Midpoint Formula

$= \left(\frac{7 + (-1)}{2}, \frac{6 + (-8)}{2}\right)$ $(x_1, y_1) = (7, 6), (x_2, y_2) = (-1, -8)$

$= \left(\frac{6}{2}, \frac{-2}{2}\right)$ Add.

$= (3, -1)$ Simplify.

Step 2 Find the radius.

$r = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$ Distance Formula

$= \sqrt{(3 - 7)^2 + (-1 - 6)^2}$ $(x_1, y_1) = (7, 6), (x_2, y_2) = (3, -1)$

$= \sqrt{(-4)^2 + (-7)^2}$ Subtract.

$= \sqrt{65}$ Simplify.

The radius of the circle is $\sqrt{65}$ units, so $r^2 = 65$. Substitute h, k, and r^2 into the standard form of the equation of a circle. An equation of the circle is $(x - 3)^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 65$.

GuidedPractice

3. Write an equation for a circle if the endpoints of a diameter are at (3, −3) and (1, 5).

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Study Tip

Axis of Symmetry Every diameter in a circle is an axis of symmetry. There are infinitely many axes of symmetry in a circle.

2 Graph Circles

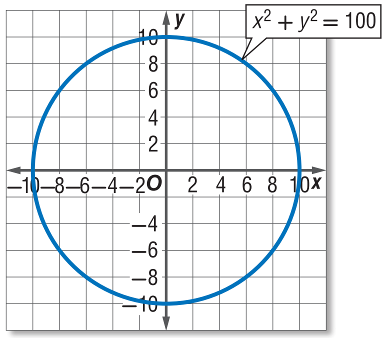
You can use symmetry to help you graph circles.

Example 4 Graph an Equation in Standard Form

Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 = 100$. Then graph the circle.

- The center of the circle is at (0, 0), and the radius is 10.
- The table lists some integer values for x and y that satisfy the equation.
- Because the circle is centered at the origin, it is symmetric about the y-axis. Therefore, the points at $(-6, 8)$, $(-8, 6)$, and $(-10, 0)$ lie on the graph.
- The circle is also symmetric about the x-axis, so the points $(-6, -8)$, $(-8, -6)$, $(0, -10)$, $(6, -8)$, and $(8, -6)$ lie on the graph.
- Plot all of these points and draw the circle that passes through them.

x	y
0	10
6	8
8	6
10	0



Guided Practice

4. Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 = 81$. Then graph the circle.

Circles with centers that are not (0, 0) can be graphed by using translations. The graph of $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$ is the graph of $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ translated h units horizontally and k units vertically.

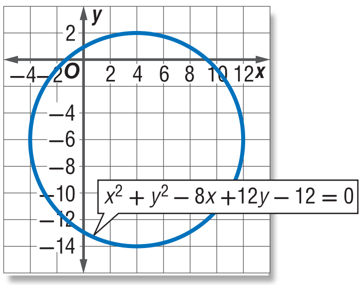
Example 5 Graph an Equation Not in Standard Form

Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 12y - 12 = 0$. Then graph the circle.

Complete the squares.

$$x^2 + y^2 - 8x + 12y - 12 = 0$$
$$x^2 - 8x + \blacksquare + y^2 + 12y + \blacksquare = 12 + \blacksquare + \blacksquare$$
$$x^2 - 8x + 16 + y^2 + 12y + 36 = 12 + 16 + 36$$
$$(x - 4)^2 + (y + 6)^2 = 64$$

The center of the circle is at $(4, -6)$, and the radius is 8. The graph of $(x - 4)^2 + (y + 6)^2 = 64$ is the same as $x^2 + y^2 = 64$ translated 4 units to the right and down 6 units.



Guided Practice

5. Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 + 4x - 10y - 7 = 0$. Then graph the circle.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Check Your Understanding

Example 1

1. **WEATHER** On average, the eye of a tornado is about 200 feet across. Suppose the center of the eye is at the point (72, 39). Write an equation to represent the boundary of the eye.

Write an equation for each circle given the center and radius.

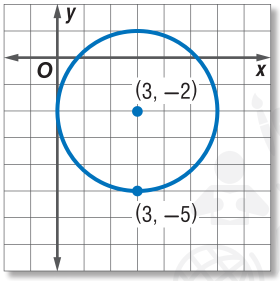
2. center: $(-2, -6)$, $r = 4$ units

3. center: $(1, -5)$, $r = 3$ units

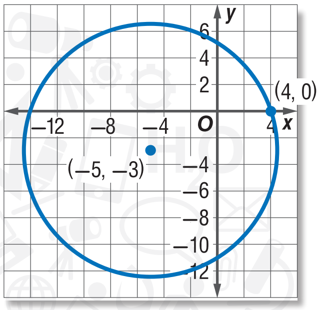
Example 2

Write an equation for each graph.

4.



5.



Example 3

Write an equation for each circle given the endpoints of a diameter.

6. $(-1, -7)$ and $(0, 0)$

7. $(4, -2)$ and $(-4, -6)$

Examples 4–5 **Find the center and radius of each circle. Then graph the circle.**

8. $x^2 + y^2 = 16$

9. $x^2 + (y - 7)^2 = 9$

10. $(x - 4)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 25$

11. $x^2 + y^2 - 4x + 8y - 5 = 0$

Practice and Problem Solving

Example 1

Write an equation for each circle given the center and radius.

12. center: $(4, 9)$, $r = 6$

13. center: $(-3, 1)$, $r = 4$

14. center: $(-7, -3)$, $r = 13$

15. center: $(-2, -1)$, $r = 9$

16. center: $(1, 0)$, $r = \sqrt{15}$

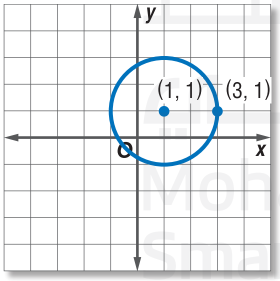
17. center: $(0, -6)$, $r = \sqrt{35}$

18. **MODELING** The radar for an airport control tower is located at (5, 10) on a map. It can detect a plane up to 20 kilometers away. Write an equation for the outer limits of the detection area.

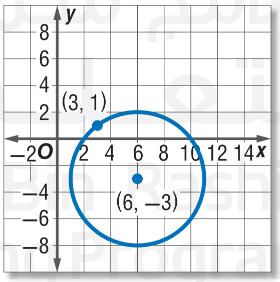
Example 2

Write an equation for each graph.

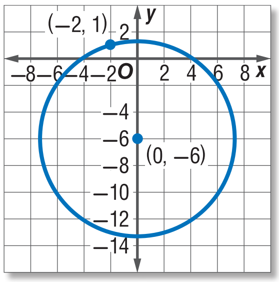
19.



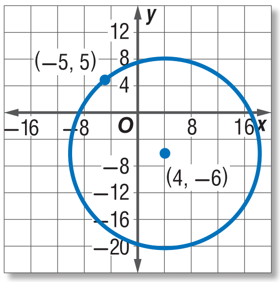
20.



21.



22.



Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 3 **Write an equation for each circle given the endpoints of a diameter.**

23. (2, 1) and (2, −4) **24.** (−4, −10) and (4, −10) **25.** (5, −7) and (−2, −9)

26. (−6, 4) and (4, 8) **27.** (2, −5) and (6, 3) **28.** (18, 11) and (−19, −13)

29. **LAWN CARE** A sprinkler waters a circular section of lawn.

a. Write an equation to represent the boundary of the sprinkler area if the endpoints of a diameter are at (−12, 16) and (12, −16).

b. What is the area of the lawn that the sprinkler waters?

30. **SPACE** Apollo 8 was the first manned spacecraft to orbit the Moon at an average altitude of 185 kilometers above the Moon's surface. Write an equation to model a single circular orbit of the command module if the endpoints of a diameter of the Moon are at (1740, 0) and (−1740, 0). Let the center of the Moon be at the origin of the coordinate system measured in kilometers.

Examples 4–5 **Find the center and radius of each circle. Then graph the circle.**

31. $x^2 + y^2 = 75$

32. $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 4$

33. $(x - 1)^2 + (y - 4)^2 = 34$

34. $x^2 + (y - 14)^2 = 144$

35. $(x - 5)^2 + (y + 2)^2 = 16$

36. $x^2 + y^2 = 256$

37. $(x - 4)^2 + y^2 = \frac{8}{9}$

38. $\left(x + \frac{2}{3}\right)^2 + \left(y - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{16}{25}$

39. $x^2 + y^2 + 4x = 9$

40. $x^2 + y^2 - 6y + 8x = 0$

41. $x^2 + y^2 + 2x + 4y = 9$

42. $x^2 + y^2 - 3x + 8y = 20$

43. $x^2 + y^2 + 6y = -50 - 14x$

44. $x^2 - 18x + 53 = 18y - y^2$

45. $2x^2 + 2y^2 - 4x + 8y = 32$

46. $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 6y + 12x = 24$

47. **SPACE** A satellite is in a circular orbit 25,000 miles above Earth.

a. Write an equation for the orbit of this satellite if the origin is at the center of Earth. Use 8000 miles as the diameter of Earth.

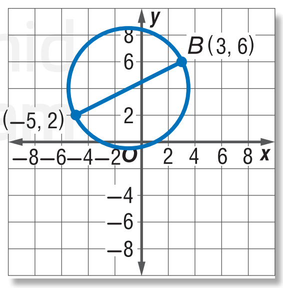
b. Draw a sketch of Earth and the orbit to scale. Label your sketch.

48. **SENSE-MAKING** Suppose an unobstructed radio station broadcast could travel 120 kilometers. Assume the station is centered at the origin.

a. Write an equation to represent the boundary of the broadcast area with the origin as the center.

b. If the transmission tower is relocated 40 kilometers east and 10 kilometers south of the current location, and an increased signal will transmit signals an additional 80 kilometers, what is an equation to represent the new broadcast area?

49. **GEOMETRY** Concentric circles are circles with the same center but different radii. Refer to the graph at the right where $\overline{AB}$ is a diameter of the circle.



a. Write an equation of the circle concentric with the circle at the right, with radius 4 units greater.

b. Write an equation of the circle concentric with the circle at the right, with radius 2 units less.

c. Graph the circles from parts a and b on the same coordinate plane.

50. **EARTHQUAKES** A stadium is located about 35 kilometers west and 40 kilometers north of a city. Suppose an earthquake occurs with its epicenter about 55 kilometers from the stadium. Assume that the origin of a coordinate plane is located at the center of the city. Write an equation for the set of points that could be the epicenter of the earthquake.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

PRECISION **Write an equation for the circle that satisfies each set of conditions.**

51. center $(9, -8)$, passes through $(19, 22)$

52. center $\left(-\sqrt{15}, 30\right)$, passes through the origin

53. center at $(8, -9)$, tangent to y-axis

54. center at $(2, 4)$, tangent to x-axis

55. center in the first quadrant; tangent to $x = 5$, the x-axis, and the y-axis

56. center in the second quadrant; tangent to $y = 1$, $y = 5$, and the y-axis

57. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** Graph $y = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$ and $y = -\sqrt{9 - x^2}$ on the same graphing calculator screen.

a. **Verbal** Describe the graph formed by the union of these two graphs.

b. **Algebraic** Write an equation for the union of the two graphs.

c. **Verbal** Most graphing calculators cannot graph the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 49$ directly. Describe a way to use a graphing calculator to graph the equation. Then graph the equation.

d. **Analytical** Solve $(x - 2)^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 4$ for y. Why do you need two equations to graph a circle on a graphing calculator?

e. **Verbal** Do you think that it is easier to graph the equation in part **d** using graph paper and a pencil or using a graphing calculator? Explain.

Find the center and radius of each circle. Then graph the circle.

58. $x^2 - 12x + 84 = -y^2 + 16y$

59. $4x^2 + 4y^2 + 36y + 5 = 0$

60. $\left(x + \sqrt{5}\right)^2 + y^2 - 8y = 9$

61. $x^2 + 2\sqrt{7}x + 7 + \left(y - \sqrt{11}\right)^2 = 11$

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

62. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Hana says that $(x - 2)^2 + (y + 3)^2 = 36$ and $(x - 2) + (y + 3) = 6$ are equivalent equations. Samira says that the equations are *not* equivalent. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

63. **OPEN ENDED** Consider graphs with equations of the form $(x - 3)^2 + (y - a)^2 = 64$. Assign three different values for a, and graph each equation. Describe all graphs with equations of this form.

64. **REASONING** Explain why the phrase "in a plane" is included in the definition of a circle. What would be defined if the phrase were *not* included?

65. **OPEN ENDED** Concentric circles have the same center, but most often, not the same radius. Write equations of two concentric circles. Then graph the circles.

66. **REASONING** Assume that (x, y) are the coordinates of a point on a circle. The center is at (h, k), and the radius is r. Find an equation of the circle by using the Distance Formula.

67. **WRITING IN MATH** The circle with equation $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$ lies in the first quadrant and is tangent to both the x-axis and the y-axis. Sketch the circle. Describe the possible values of a, b, and r. Do the same for a circle in Quadrants II, III, and IV. Discuss the similarities among the circles.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Standardized Test Practice

68. GRIDDED RESPONSE Two circles, both with a radius of 6, have exactly one point in common. If A is a point on one circle and B is a point on the other circle, what is the maximum possible length for the line segment $\overline{AB}$?

69. In a movie theatre, there are 20% more girls than boys. If there are 180 girls, how many more girls than boys are there?

A 30
B 36
C 90
D 144

70. A AED 1,000 deposit is made at a bank that pays 2% compounded weekly. How much will you have in your account at the end of 10 years?

F AED 1,200.00 **H** AED 1,221.36
G AED 1,218.99 **J** AED 1,224.54

71. The mean of six numbers is 20. If one of the numbers is removed, the average of the remaining numbers is 15. What is the number that was removed?

A 42 **C** 45
B 43 **D** 48

Spiral Review

Graph each equation. (Lesson 6-2)

72. $y = -\frac{1}{2}(x - 1)^2 + 4$ **73.** $4(x - 2) = (y + 3)^2$ **74.** $(y - 8)^2 = -4(x - 4)$

Find the midpoint of the line segment with endpoints at the given coordinates. Then find the distance between the points. (Lesson 6-1)

75. $\left(-3, -\frac{2}{11}\right), \left(5, \frac{9}{11}\right)$ **76.** $\left(2\sqrt{3}, -5\right), \left(-3\sqrt{3}, 9\right)$ **77.** $(2.5, 4), (-2.5, 2)$

78. If y varies directly as x and $y = 8$ when $x = 6$, find y when $x = 15$.

79. If y varies jointly as x and z and $y = 80$ when $x = 5$ and $z = 8$, find y when $x = 16$ and $z = 2$.

80. If y varies inversely as x and $y = 16$ when $x = 5$, find y when $x = 20$.

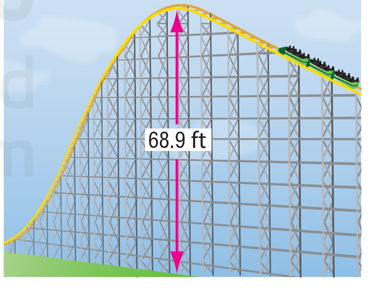
Evaluate each expression.

81. $\log_9 243$ **82.** $\log_2 \frac{1}{32}$ **83.** $\log_3 \frac{1}{81}$ **84.** $\log_{10} 0.001$

85. AMUSEMENT PARKS The velocity v in feet per second of a roller coaster at the bottom of a hill is related to the vertical drop h in feet and the velocity v_0 in feet per second of the coaster at the top of the hill by the formula $v_0 = \sqrt{v^2 - 64h}$.

a. Explain why $v_0 = v - 8\sqrt{h}$ is not equivalent to the given formula.

b. What velocity must the coaster have at the top of the hill to achieve a velocity of 38.1 feet per second at the bottom?



Skills Review

Solve each equation by completing the square.

86. $x^2 + 3x - 18 = 0$ **87.** $2x^2 - 3x - 3 = 0$ **88.** $x^2 + 2x + 6 = 0$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

EXPLORE

6-3 Algebra Lab
Investigating Ellipses

Follow the steps below to construct a type of conic section.

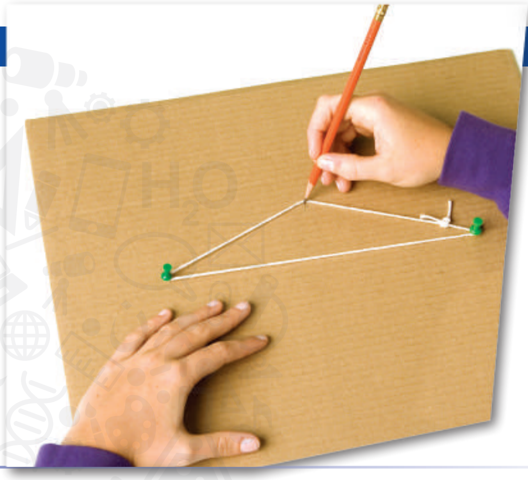
Mathematical Practices
5 Use appropriate tools strategically.

Activity Make an Ellipse

Step 1 Place two thumbtacks in a piece of cardboard, about 1 foot apart.

Step 2 Tie a knot in a piece of string and loop it around the thumbtacks. Place your pencil in the string.

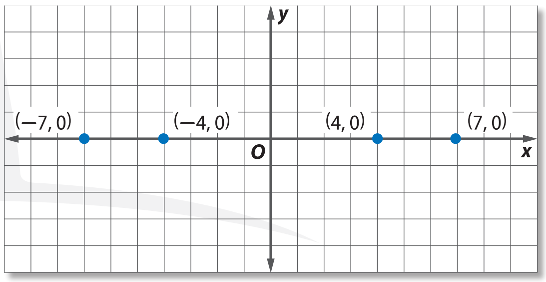
Step 3 Keep the string tight and draw a curve. Continue drawing until you return to your starting point.



The curve you have drawn is called an **ellipse**. The points where the thumbtacks are located are called the **foci** of the ellipse. *Foci* is the plural of *focus*.

Model and Analyze

Place a large piece of grid paper on a piece of cardboard.



1. Place the thumbtacks at (7, 0) and (−7, 0). Choose a string long enough to loop around both thumbtacks. Draw an ellipse.
2. Repeat Exercise 1, but place the thumbtacks at (4, 0) and (−4, 0). Use the same loop of string and draw an ellipse. How does this ellipse compare to the one in Exercise 1?

Place the thumbtacks at each set of points and draw an ellipse. You may change the length of the loop of string if you like.

3. (11, 0), (−11, 0)
4. (3, 0), (−3, 0)
5. (13, 3), (−9, 3)

Make a Conjecture

Describe what happens to the shape of an ellipse when each change is made.

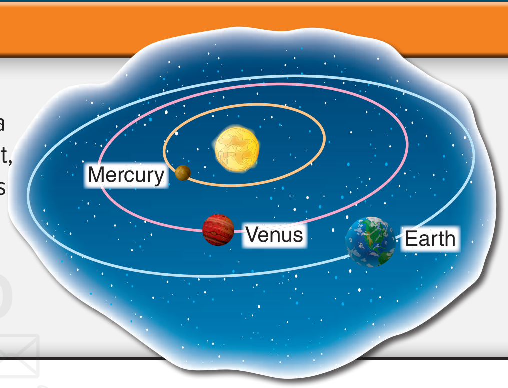
6. The thumbtacks are moved closer together.
7. The thumbtacks are moved farther apart.
8. The length of the loop of string is increased.
9. The thumbtacks are arranged vertically.
10. One thumbtack is removed, and the string is looped around the remaining thumbtack.
11. Pick a point on one of the ellipses you have drawn. Use a ruler to measure the distances from that point to the points where the thumbtacks were located. Add the distances. Repeat for other points on the same ellipse. What relationship do you notice?
12. Could this activity be done with a rubber band instead of a piece of string? Explain.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Ed-Imaging

LESSON 6-3 Ellipses

:: Then	:: Now	:: Why?
You graphed and wrote equations for circles.	1 Write equations of ellipses. 2 Graph ellipses.	Mercury, like all of the planets of our solar system, does not orbit the Sun in a perfect circular path. At its farthest point, Mercury is about 69.2 million kilometers from the Sun. At its closest point, it is only about 45.9 million kilometers from the Sun. This orbit is in the shape of an ellipse with the Sun at a focus.



NewVocabulary

ellipse
foci
major axis
minor axis
center
vertices
co-vertices
constant sum

Mathematical Practices

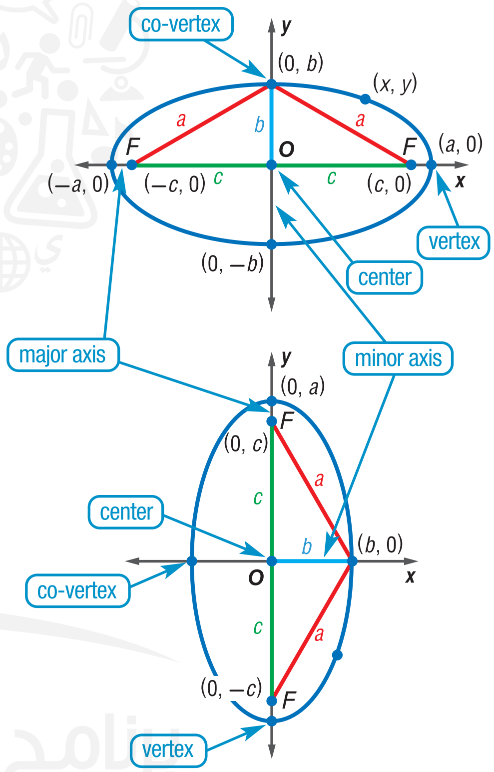
7 Look for and make use of structure.

1 Equations of Ellipses

An **ellipse** is the set of all points in a plane such that the sum of the distances from two fixed points is constant. These two points are called the **foci** of the ellipse.

Every ellipse has two axes of symmetry, the **major axis** and the **minor axis**. The axes are perpendicular at the **center** of the ellipse.

The foci of an ellipse always lie on the major axis. The endpoints of the major axis are the **vertices** of the ellipse and the endpoints of the minor axis are the **co-vertices** of the ellipse.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

KeyConcept Equations of Ellipses Centered at the Origin

Standard Form	$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{y^2}{a^2} + \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$
Orientation	horizontal	vertical
Foci	$(c, 0), (-c, 0)$	$(0, c), (0, -c)$
Length of Major Axis	$2a$ units	$2a$ units
Length of Minor Axis	$2b$ units	$2b$ units

There are several important relationships among the many parts of an ellipse.

- The length of the major axis, $2a$ units, equals the sum of the distances from the foci to any point on the ellipse.
- The values of a, b, and c are related by the equation $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$.
- The distance from a focus to either co-vertex is a units.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

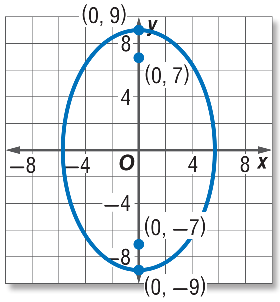
The sum of the distances from the foci to any point on the ellipse, or the **constant sum**, must be greater than the distance between the foci.

StudyTip

Major Axis In standard form, if the x^2-term has the greater denominator, then the major axis is horizontal. If the y^2-term has the greater denominator, then it is vertical.

Example 1 Write an Equation Given Vertices and Foci

Write an equation for the ellipse.



Step 1 Find the center.
The foci are equidistant from the center.
The center is at (0, 0).

Step 2 Find the value of a.
The vertices are (0, 9) and (0, −9), so the length of the major axis is 18.
The value of a is 18 ÷ 2 or 9, and $a^2 = 81$.

Step 3 Find the value of b.
We can use $c^2 = a^2 - b^2$ to find b.
The foci are 7 units from the center, so $c = 7$.

$c^2 = a^2 - b^2$ — Equation relating a, b, and c

$49 = 81 - b^2$ — $a = 9$ and $c = 7$

$b^2 = 32$ — Solve for b^2.

Step 4 Write the equation.
Because the major axis is vertical, a^2 goes with y and b^2 goes with x.
The equation for the ellipse is $\frac{y^2}{81} + \frac{x^2}{32} = 1$.

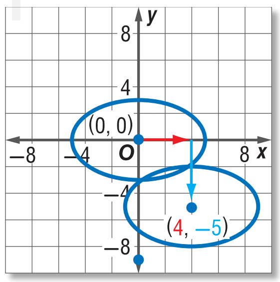
GuidedPractice

1. Write an equation for an ellipse with vertices at (−4, 0) and (4, 0) and foci at (2, 0) and (−2, 0).

Like other graphs, the graph of an ellipse can be translated. When the graph is translated h units right and k units up, the center of the translation is (h, k). This is equivalent to replacing x with $x - h$ and replacing y with $y - k$ in the parent function.

KeyConcept Equations of Ellipses Centered at (h, k)

Standard Form	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$
Orientation	horizontal	vertical
Foci	$(h \pm c, k)$	$(h, k \pm c)$
Vertices	$(h \pm a, k)$	$(h, k \pm a)$
Co-vertices	$(h, k \pm b)$	$(h \pm b, k)$



We can use this information to determine the equations for ellipses. The original ellipse at the right is horizontal and has a major axis of 10 units, so $a = 5$.

The length of the minor axis is 6 units, so $b = 3$.

The ellipse is translated 4 units right and 5 units down. So, the value of h is 4 and the value of k is −5.

The equation for the original ellipse is $\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

The equation for the translation is $\frac{(x-4)^2}{25} + \frac{(y+5)^2}{9} = 1$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

You can also determine the equation for an ellipse if you are given all four vertices.

Example 2 Write an Equation Given the Lengths of the Axes

Write an equation for the ellipse with vertices at (6, −8) and (6, 4) and co-vertices at (3, −2) and (9, −2).

The x-coordinate is the same for both vertices, so the ellipse is vertical.

The center of the ellipse is at $\left(\frac{6+6}{2}, \frac{-8+4}{2}\right)$ or (6, −2).

The length of the major axis is $4 - (-8)$ or 12 units, so $a = 6$.

The length of the minor axis is $9 - 3$ or 6 units, so $b = 3$.

The equation for the ellipse is $\frac{(y+2)^2}{36} + \frac{(x-6)^2}{9} = 1$. $a^2 = 36$, $b^2 = 9$

GuidedPractice

2. Write an equation for the ellipse with vertices at (−3, 8) and (9, 8) and co-vertices at (3, 12) and (3, 4).

Real-World Career

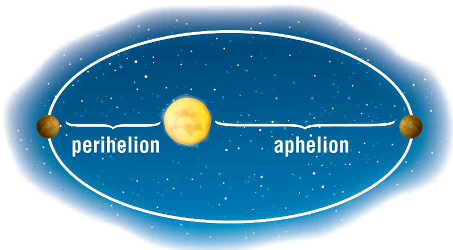
Aerospace Technician
Aerospace technicians work for NASA, helping engineers research and develop virtual reality and verbal communication between humans and computer systems. Although a bachelor's degree is desired, on-the-job training is available.

Source: NASA

Many real-world phenomena can be represented by ellipses.

Real-World Example 3 Write an Equation for an Ellipse

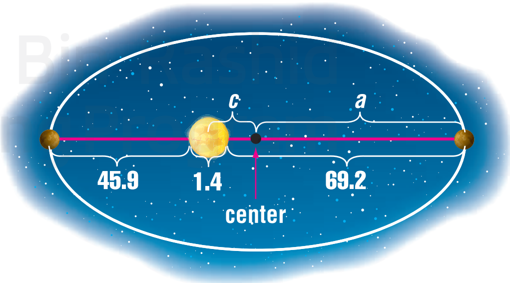
SPACE Refer to the application at the beginning of the lesson. Mercury's greatest distance from the Sun, or *aphelion*, is about 69.2 million kilometers. Mercury's closest distance, or *perihelion*, is about 45.9 million kilometers. The diameter of the Sun is about 1,400,129.3 kilometers. Use this information to determine an equation relating Mercury's elliptical orbit around the Sun in millions of kilometers.



Understand We need to determine an equation representing Mercury's orbit around the Sun.

Plan Including the diameter of the Sun, the sum of the perihelion and aphelion equals the length on the major axis of the ellipse. We can use this information to determine the values of a, b, and c.

Solve Find the value of a.
The value of a is one half the length of the major axis.
$a = 0.5(69.2 + 45.9 + 1.4)$ or 58.23



Find the value of c.
The value of c is the distance from the center of the ellipse to the focus.
This distance is equal to a minus the perihelion and the radius of the Sun.
$c = 58.23 - 45.9 - 0.7$or 11.67

Problem-Solving Tip

Sense-Making Draw a diagram when the problem situation involves spatial reasoning or geometric figures.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education McGraw-Hill Education

(continued on the next page)

Find the value of b.

$c^2 = a^2 - b^2$	Equation relating a, b, and c
$(11.67)^2 = (58.23)^2 - b^2$	$c = 7.25$ and $a = 36.185$
$136.1889 = 3390.7329 - b^2$	Simplify.
$b^2 = 3254.544$	Solve for b^2.
$b = 57.0486$	Take the square root of each side.

So, with the center of the orbit at the origin, the equation relating Mercury's orbit around the Sun can be modeled by $\frac{x^2}{3390.7329} + \frac{y^2}{3254.544} = 1$.

Check Use your answer to recalculate a, b, and c. Then determine the aphelion and perihelion based on your answer. Compare to the actual values.

Real-WorldLink

Earth's orbit around the Sun is nearly circular, with only about a 3% difference between perihelion and aphelion.

Source: *The Astronomer*

GuidedPractice

3. SPACE Pluto's distance from the Sun is 4.44 billion kilometers at perihelion and about 7.38 billion kilometers at aphelion. Determine an equation relating Pluto's orbit around the Sun in billions of kilometers with the center of the horizontal ellipse at the origin.

2 Graph Ellipses

When you are given an equation for an ellipse that is not in standard form, you can write it in standard form by completing the square for both x and y. Once the equation is in standard form, you can use it to graph the ellipse.

Example 4 Graph an Ellipse

Find the coordinates of the center and foci, and the lengths of the major and minor axes of an ellipse with equation $25x^2 + 9y^2 + 250x - 36y + 436 = 0$. Then graph the ellipse.

Step 1 Write in standard form. Complete the square for each variable to write this equation in standard form.

$25x^2 + 9y^2 + 250x - 36y + 436 = 0$	Original equation
$25x^2 + 250x + 9y^2 - 36y = -436$	Associative Property
$25(x^2 + 10x) + 9(y^2 - 4y) = -436$	Distributive Property
$25(x^2 + 10x + \blacksquare) + 9(y^2 - 4y + \blacksquare) = -436 + 25(\blacksquare) + 9(\blacksquare)$	Complete the squares.
$25(x^2 + 10x + 25) + 9(y^2 - 4y + 4) = -436 + 25(25) + 9(4)$	$5^2 = 25$ and $(-2)^2 = 4$
$25(x + 5)^2 + 9(y - 2)^2 = 225$	Write as perfect squares.
$\frac{(x + 5)^2}{9} + \frac{(y - 2)^2}{25} = 1$	Divide each side by 225.

Step 2 Find the center.

$h = -5$ and $k = 2$, so the center of the ellipse is at $(-5, 2)$.

Step 3 Find the lengths of the axes and graph.

The ellipse is vertical.

$a^2 = 25$, so $a = 5$. $b^2 = 9$, so $b = 3$.

The length of the major axis is $2 \cdot 5$ or 10.

The length of the minor axis is $2 \cdot 3$ or 6.

The vertices are at $(-5, 7)$ and $(-5, -3)$.

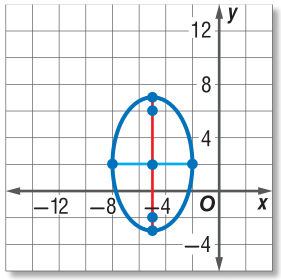
The co-vertices are at $(-2, 2)$ and $(-8, 2)$.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education StockTrek/Getty Images

Step 4 Find the foci.
$c^2 = 25 - 9$ or 16, so $c = 4$.
The foci are at $(-5, 6)$ and $(-5, -2)$.

Step 5 Graph the ellipse.
Draw the ellipse that passes through the vertices and co-vertices.



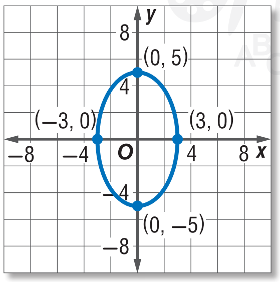
GuidedPractice

4. Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes of the ellipse with equation $x^2 + 4y^2 - 2x + 24y + 21 = 0$. Then graph the ellipse.

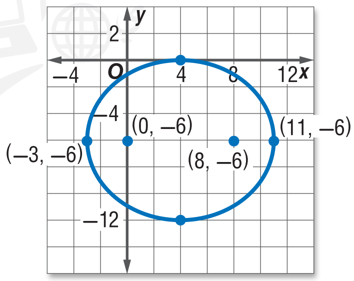
Check Your Understanding

Example 1 **Write an equation for each ellipse.**

1.



2.



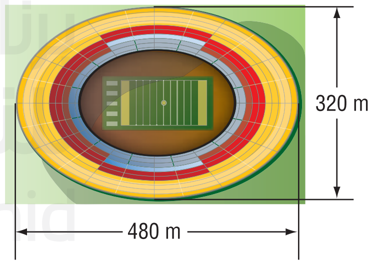
Example 2 **Write an equation for an ellipse that satisfies each set of conditions.**

3. vertices at $(-2, -6)$ and $(-2, 4)$, co-vertices at $(-5, -1)$ and $(1, -1)$

4. vertices at $(-2, 5)$ and $(14, 5)$, co-vertices at $(6, 1)$ and $(6, 9)$

Example 3

5. **SENSE-MAKING** An architectural firm sent a proposal to a city for building a coliseum, shown at the right.



a. Determine the values of a and b.

b. Assuming that the center is at the origin, write an equation to represent the ellipse.

c. Determine the coordinates of the foci.

6. **SPACE** Earth's orbit is about 147.1 million kilometers at perihelion and about 152.1 million kilometers at aphelion. Determine an equation relating Earth's orbit around the Sun in millions of miles with the center of the horizontal ellipse at the origin.

Example 4 **Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes for the ellipse with the given equation. Then graph the ellipse.**

7. $\dfrac{(y+1)^2}{64} + \dfrac{(x-5)^2}{28} = 1$

8. $\dfrac{(x+2)^2}{48} + \dfrac{(y-1)^2}{20} = 1$

9. $4x^2 + y^2 - 32x - 4y + 52 = 0$

10. $9x^2 + 25y^2 + 72x - 150y + 144 = 0$

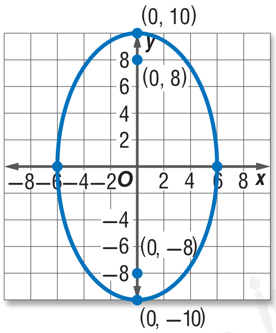
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

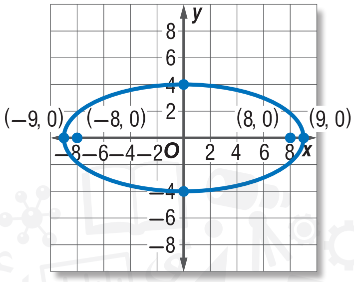
Practice and Problem Solving

Example 1 **Write an equation for each ellipse.**

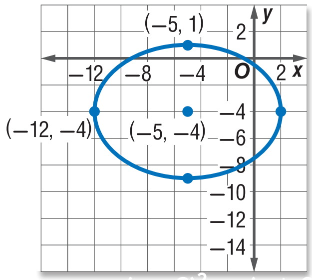
11.



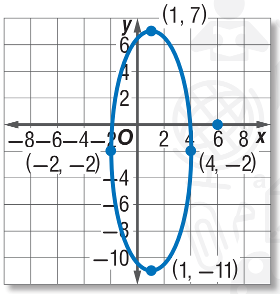
12.



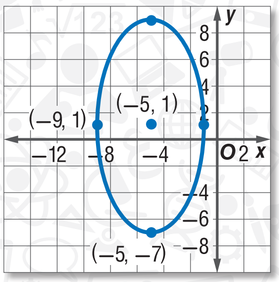
13.



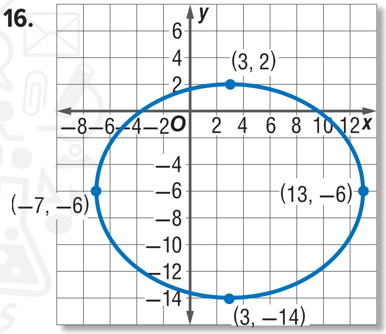
14.



15.



16.



Example 2 **Write an equation for an ellipse that satisfies each set of conditions.**

17. vertices at $(-6, 4)$ and $(12, 4)$, co-vertices at $(3, 12)$ and $(3, -4)$

18. vertices at $(-1, 11)$ and $(-1, 1)$, co-vertices at $(-4, 6)$ and $(2, 6)$

19. center at $(-2, 6)$, vertex at $(-2, 16)$, co-vertex at $(1, 6)$

20. center at $(3, -4)$, vertex at $(8, -4)$, co-vertex at $(3, -2)$

21. vertices at $(4, 12)$ and $(4, -4)$, co-vertices at $(1, 4)$ and $(7, 4)$

22. vertices at $(-11, 2)$ and $(-1, 2)$, co-vertices at $(-6, 0)$ and $(-6, 4)$

Example 3

23. **MODELING** The opening of a tunnel in the mountains can be modeled by semiellipses, or halves of ellipses. If the opening is 14.6 meters wide and 8.6 meters high, determine an equation to represent the opening with the center at the origin.

Example 4 **Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes for the ellipse with the given equation. Then graph the ellipse.**

24. $\frac{(x-3)^2}{36} + \frac{(y-2)^2}{128} = 1$

25. $\frac{(x+6)^2}{50} + \frac{(y-3)^2}{72} = 1$

26. $\frac{x^2}{27} + \frac{(y-5)^2}{64} = 1$

27. $\frac{(x+4)^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{75} = 1$

28. $3x^2 + y^2 - 6x - 8y - 5 = 0$

29. $3x^2 + 4y^2 - 18x + 24y + 3 = 0$

30. $7x^2 + y^2 - 56x + 6y + 93 = 0$

31. $3x^2 + 2y^2 + 12x - 20y + 14 = 0$

32. **SPACE** Like the planets, Halley's Comet travels around the Sun in an elliptical orbit. The aphelion is 5283.3 million kilometers and the perihelion is 88.3 million kilometers. Determine an equation relating the comet's orbit around the Sun in millions of kilometers with the center of the horizontal ellipse at the origin.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education James Houck/Alamy Images

Write an equation for an ellipse that satisfies each set of conditions.

33. center at $(-5, -2)$, focus at $(-5, 2)$, co-vertex at $(-8, -2)$

34. center at $(4, -3)$, focus at $(9, -3)$, co-vertex at $(4, -5)$

35. foci at $(-2, 8)$ and $(6, 8)$, co-vertex at $(2, 10)$

36. foci at $(4, 4)$ and $(4, 14)$, co-vertex at $(0, 9)$

37. **GOVERNMENT** The Oval Office is located in the West Wing of the White House. It is an elliptical shaped room used as the main office by the President of the United States. The long axis is 10.9 meters long and the short axis is 8.8 meters long. Write an equation to represent the outer walls of the Oval Office. Assume that the center of the room is at the origin.

38. **SOUND** A whispering gallery is an elliptical room in which a faint whisper at one focus cannot be heard by other people in the room, but can easily be heard by someone at the other focus. Suppose an ellipse is 121.9 meters long and 36.6 meters wide. What is the distance between the foci?

39. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** The *eccentricity* of an ellipse measures how circular the ellipse is.

a. **Graphical** Graph $\frac{x^2}{81} + \frac{y^2}{36} = 1$ and $\frac{x^2}{81} + \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$ on the same graph.

b. **Verbal** Describe the difference between the two graphs.

c. **Algebraic** The eccentricity of an ellipse is $\frac{c}{a}$. Find the eccentricity for each.

d. **Analytical** Make a conjecture about the relationship between the value of an ellipse's eccentricity and the shape of the ellipse as compared to a circle.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

40. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Shaima and Maha are determining the equation for an ellipse with foci at $(-4, -11)$ and $(-4, 5)$ and co-vertices at $(2, -3)$ and $(-10, -3)$. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

Shaima

$$\frac{(x-4)^2}{64} + \frac{(y+3)^2}{36} = 1$$

Maha

$$\frac{(x+4)^2}{100} + \frac{(y+3)^2}{36} = 1$$

41. **OPEN ENDED** Write an equation for an ellipse with a focus at the origin.

42. **CHALLENGE** When the values of a and b are equal, an ellipse is a circle. Use this information and your knowledge of ellipses to determine the formula for the area of an ellipse in terms of a and b.

43. **CHALLENGE** Determine an equation for an ellipse with foci at $(2, \sqrt{6})$ and $(2, -\sqrt{6})$ that passes through $(3, \sqrt{6})$.

44. **ARGUMENTS** What happens to the location of the foci as an ellipse becomes more circular? Explain your reasoning.

45. **REASONING** An ellipse has foci at $(-7, 2)$ and $(18, 2)$. If $(2, 14)$ is a point on the ellipse, show that $(2, -10)$ is also a point on the ellipse.

46. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain why the domain is $\{x \mid -a \le x \le a\}$ and the range is $\{y \mid -b \le y \le b\}$ for an ellipse with equation $\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Standardized Test Practice

47. Multiply.

$$(2 + 3i)(4 + 7i)$$

A $8 + 21i$ **C** $-6 + 10i$

B $-13 + 26i$ **D** $13 + 12i$

48. The average lifespan of American women has been tracked, and the model for the data is $y = 0.2t + 73$, where $t = 0$ corresponds to 1960. What is the meaning of the y-intercept?

F In 2007, the average lifespan was 60.

G In 1960, the average lifespan was 58.

H In 1960, the average lifespan was 73.

J The lifespan is increasing 0.2 years every year.

49. **GRIDDED RESPONSE** If we decrease a number by 6 and then double the result, we get 5 less than the number. What is the number?

50. **SAT/ACT** The length of a rectangular prism is one inch greater than its width. The height is three times the length. Find the volume of the prism.

A $3x^3 + x^2 + 3x$

B $x^3 + x^2 + x$

C $3x^3 + 6x^2 + 3x$

D $3x^3 + 3x^2 + 3x$

E $3x^3 + 3x^2$

Spiral Review

Write an equation for the circle that satisfies each set of conditions. (Lesson 6-3)

51. center $(8, -9)$, passes through $(21, 22)$

52. center at $(4, 2)$, tangent to x-axis

53. center in the second quadrant; tangent to $y = -1$, $y = 9$, and the y-axis

54. **ENERGY** A parabolic mirror is used to collect solar energy. The mirrors reflect the rays from the Sun to the focus of the parabola. The focus of a particular mirror is 9.75 feet above the vertex, and the latus rectum is 39 feet long. (Lesson 6-2)

a. Assume that the focus is at the origin. Write an equation for the parabola formed by the mirror.

b. One foot is exactly 0.3048 meter. Rewrite the equation for the mirror in meters.

c. Graph one of the equations for the mirror.

d. Which equation did you choose to graph? Explain why.

Simplify each expression.

55. $\dfrac{6}{d^2 + 4d + 4} + \dfrac{5}{d + 2}$

56. $\dfrac{a}{a^2 - a - 20} + \dfrac{2}{a + 4}$

57. $\dfrac{x}{x + 1} + \dfrac{3}{x^2 - 4x - 5}$

Solve each equation.

58. $\log_{10} (x^2 + 1) = 1$

59. $\log_b 64 = 3$

60. $\log_b 121 = 2$

Simplify.

61. $-5ab^2(-3a^2b + 6a^3b - 3a^4b^4)$

62. $2xy(3xy^3 - 4xy + 2y^4)$

63. $(4x^2 - 3y^2 + 5xy) - (8xy + 3y^2)$

64. $(10x^2 - 3xy + 4y^2) - (3x^2 + 5xy)$

Skills Review

Write an equation of the line passing through each pair of points.

65. $(-2, 5)$ and $(3, 1)$

66. $(7, 1)$ and $(7, 8)$

67. $(-3, 5)$ and $(2, 2)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

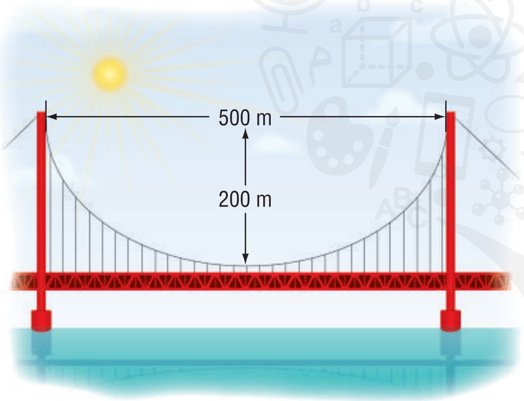
Mid-Chapter Quiz

Lessons 6-1 through 6-4

Write each equation in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola. (Lesson 6-2)

1. $y = 3x^2 - 12x + 21$
2. $x - 2y^2 = 4y + 6$
3. $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2 + 12x - 8$
4. $x = 3y^2 + 5y - 9$

5. **BRIDGES** Write an equation of a parabola to model the shape of the suspension cable of the bridge shown. Assume that the origin is at the lowest point of the cables. (Lesson 6-2)



Identify the coordinates of the vertex and focus, the equation of the axis of symmetry and directrix, and the direction of opening of the parabola with the given equation. Then find the length of the latus rectum. (Lesson 6-2)

6. $y = x^2 + 6x + 5$

7. $x = -2y^2 + 4y + 1$

8. Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 9$. Then graph the circle. (Lesson 6-3)

9. Write an equation for a circle that has center at $(3, -2)$ and passes through $(3, 4)$. (Lesson 6-3)

10. Write an equation for a circle if the endpoints of a diameter are at $(8, 31)$ and $(32, 49)$. (Lesson 6-3)

11. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** What is the radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + 2x + y^2 + 14y + 34 = 0$? (Lesson 6-3)

 A 2

 B 4

 C 8

 D 16

Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes of the ellipse with the given equation. Then graph the ellipse. (Lesson 6-3)

12. $\frac{(x + 4)^2}{16} + \frac{(y - 2)^2}{9} = 1$

13. $\frac{(x - 1)^2}{20} + \frac{(y + 2)^2}{4} = 1$

14. $4y^2 + 9x^2 + 16y - 90x + 205 = 0$

15. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** Which equation represents an ellipse with endpoints of the major axis at $(-4, 10)$ and $(-4, -6)$ and foci at about $(-4, 7.3)$ and $(-4, -3.3)$? (Lesson 6-3)

 F $\frac{(x - 2)^2}{36} + \frac{(y + 4)^2}{64} = 1$

 G $\frac{(x + 4)^2}{64} + \frac{(y - 2)^2}{36} = 1$

 H $\frac{(y - 2)^2}{64} + \frac{(x + 4)^2}{36} = 1$

 J $\frac{(x - 2)^2}{64} + \frac{(y + 4)^2}{36} = 1$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 6-4 Hyperbolas

Then

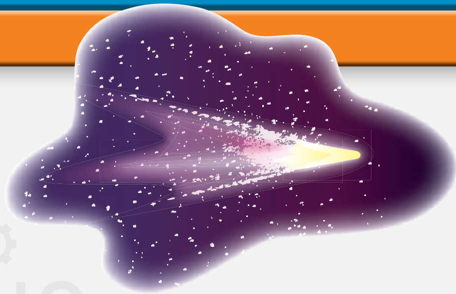
- You graphed and analyzed equations of ellipses.

Now

1. Write equations of hyperbolas.
2. Graph hyperbolas.

Why?

- Because Halley's Comet travels around the Sun in an elliptical path, it reappears in our sky. Other comets pass through our sky only once. Many of these comets travel in paths that resemble hyperbolas.

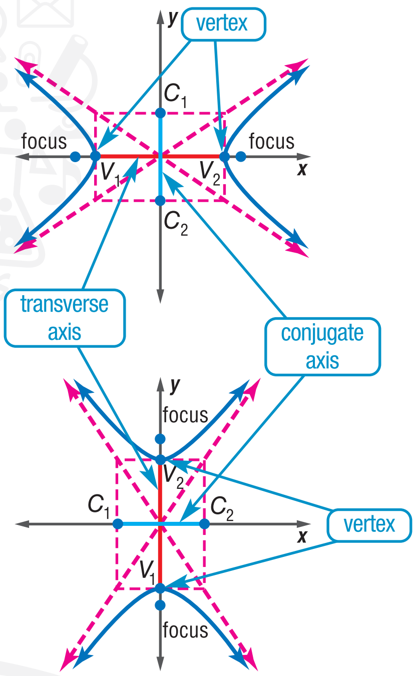


NewVocabulary
hyperbola
transverse axis
conjugate axis
foci
vertices
co-vertices
constant difference

Mathematical Practices
6 Attend to precision.

1 Equations of Hyperbolas

Similar to an ellipse, a **hyperbola** is the set of all points in a plane such that the absolute value of the differences of the distances from the foci is constant.



Every hyperbola has two axes of symmetry, the **transverse axis** and the **conjugate axis**. The axes are perpendicular at the center of the hyperbola.

The **foci** of a hyperbola always lie on the transverse axis. The **vertices** are the endpoints of the transverse axis. The **co-vertices** are the endpoints of the conjugate axis.

As a hyperbola recedes from the center, both halves approach asymptotes.

KeyConcept Equations of Hyperbolas Centered at the Origin

Standard Form	$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$
Orientation	horizontal	vertical
Foci	$(\pm c, 0)$	$(0, \pm c)$
Length of Transverse Axis	$2a$ units	$2a$ units
Length of Conjugate Axis	$2b$ units	$2b$ units
Equations of Asymptotes	$y = \pm\frac{b}{a}x$	$y = \pm\frac{a}{b}x$

As with ellipses, there are several important relationships among the parts of hyperbolas.

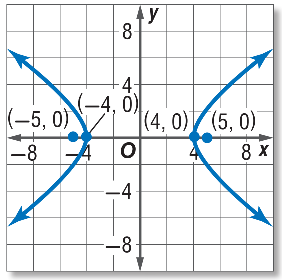
- There are two axes of symmetry.
- The values of a, b, and c are related by the equation $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Example 1 Write an Equation Given Vertices and Foci

Write an equation for the hyperbola shown in the graph.



Step 1 Find the center.

The vertices are equidistant from the center.

The center is at (0, 0).

Step 2 Find the values of a, b, and c.

The value of a is the distance between a vertex and the center, or 4 units.

The value of c is the distance between a focus and the center, or 5 units.

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ Equation relating a, b, and c for a hyperbola

$5^2 = 4^2 + b^2$ $c = 5$ and $a = 3$

$9 = b^2$ Subtract 4^2 from each side.

Step 3 Write the equation.

The transverse axis is horizontal, so the equation is $\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{9} = 1$.

GuidedPractice

1. Write an equation for a hyperbola with vertices at (6, 0) and (−6, 0) and foci at (8, 0) and (−8, 0).

Hyperbolas can also be determined using the equations of their asymptotes.

Example 2 Write an Equation Given Asymptotes

The asymptotes for a vertical hyperbola are $y = \frac{5}{3}x$ and $y = -\frac{5}{3}x$ and the vertices are at (0, 5) and (0, −5). Write the equation for the hyperbola.

Step 1 Find the center.

The vertices are equidistant from the center.

The center of the hyperbola is at (0, 0).

Step 2 Find the values of a and b.

The hyperbola is vertical, so $a = 5$.

From the asymptotes, $b = 3$.

The value of c is not needed.

Step 3 Write the equation.

The equation for the hyperbola is $\frac{y^2}{25} - \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$.

GuidedPractice

2. The asymptotes for a horizontal hyperbola are $y = \frac{7}{9}x$ and $y = -\frac{7}{9}x$. The vertices are (9, 0) and (−9, 0). Write an equation for the hyperbola.

Math HistoryLink

Hypatia (415–370 B.C.) Hypatia was a mathematician, scientist, and philosopher in Alexandria, Egypt. She is considered the first woman to write on mathematical topics. Hypatia edited the book *On the Conics of Apollonius*, adding her own problems and examples to clarify the topic for her students. This book developed the ideas of hyperbolas, parabolas, and ellipses.

ReadingMath

Standard Form In the standard form of a hyperbola, the squared terms are subtracted. For an ellipse, they are added.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

2 Graphs of Hyperbolas

Graphs of Hyperbolas Hyperbolas can be translated in the same manner as the other conic sections.

KeyConcept Equations of Hyperbolas Centered at (h, k)

Standard Form	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$
Orientation	horizontal	vertical
Foci	$(h \pm c, k)$	$(h, k \pm c)$
Vertices	$(h \pm a, k)$	$(h, k \pm a)$
Co-vertices	$(h, k \pm b)$	$(h \pm b, k)$
Equations of Asymptotes	$y - k = \pm\frac{b}{a}(x - h)$	$y - k = \pm\frac{a}{b}(x - h)$

StudyTip

Calculator You can graph a hyperbola on a graphing calculator by solving for y, and then graphing the two equations on the same screen.

Example 3 Graph a Hyperbola

Graph $\frac{(x-3)^2}{4} - \frac{(y+2)^2}{16} = 1$. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.

Step 1 Find the center. The center is at $(3, -2)$.

Step 2 Find a, b, and c. From the equation, $a^2 = 4$ and $b^2 = 16$, so $a = 2$ and $b = 4$.

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ Equation relating a, b, and c for a hyperbola

$c^2 = 2^2 + 4^2$ $a = 2$, $b = 4$

$c^2 = 20$ Simplify.

$c = \sqrt{20}$ or about 4.47 Take the square root of each side.

Step 3 Identify the vertices and foci. The hyperbola is horizontal and the vertices are 2 units from the center, so the vertices are at $(1, -2)$ and $(5, -2)$. The foci are about 4.47 units from the center. The foci are at $(-1.47, -2)$ and $(7.47, -2)$.

Step 4 Identify the asymptotes.

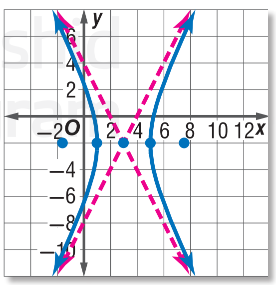
$y - k = \pm\frac{b}{a}(x - h)$ Equation for asymptotes of a horizontal hyperbola

$y - (-2) = \pm\frac{4}{2}(x - 3)$ $a = 2$, $b = 4$, $h = 3$, and $k = -2$

The equations for the asymptotes are $y = 2x - 8$ and $y = -2x + 4$.

Step 5 Graph the hyperbola. The hyperbola is symmetric about the transverse and conjugate axes. Use this symmetry to plot additional points for the hyperbola.

Use the asymptotes as a guide to draw the hyperbola that passes through the vertices and the other points.



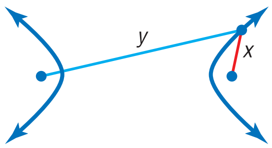
GuidedPractice

3. Graph $\frac{(y-4)^2}{9} - \frac{(x+3)^2}{25} = 1$. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

In the equation for any hyperbola, the value of $2a$ represents the **constant difference**. This is the absolute value of the difference between the distances from any point on the hyperbola to the foci of the hyperbola.

Any point on the hyperbola at the right will have the same constant difference, $|y - x|$ or $2a$.



Real-WorldLink

Halley's Comet becomes visible to the unaided eye about every 76 years as it nears the Sun.

Source: NASA

Real-World Example 4 Write an Equation of a Hyperbola

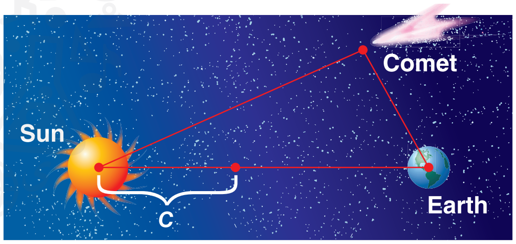
SPACE Earth and the Sun are 146 million kilometers apart. A comet follows a path that is one branch of a hyperbola. Suppose the comet is 30 million kilometers farther from the Sun than from Earth. Determine the equation of the hyperbola centered at the origin for the path of the comet.

Understand We need to determine the equation for the hyperbola.

Plan Find the center and the values of a and b. Once we have this information, we can determine the equation.

Solve The foci are Earth and the Sun, with the origin between them.

The value of c is $146 \div 2$ or 73.



The difference of the distances from the comet to each body is 30. Therefore, a is $30 \div 2$ or 15 million kilometers.

$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$	Equation relating a, b, and c for a hyperbola
$73^2 = 15^2 + b^2$	$a = 15$ and $c = 73$
$5104 = b^2$	Simplify.

The equation of the hyperbola is $\frac{x^2}{225} - \frac{y^2}{5104} = 1$.

Since the comet is farther from the Sun, it is located on the branch of the hyperbola near Earth.

Check (21, 70) is a point that satisfies the equation.

The distance between this point and the Sun (−73, 0) is

$\sqrt{[21 - (-73)]^2 + (70 - 0)^2}$ or 117.2 million kilometers.

The distance between this point and Earth (73, 0) is

$\sqrt{(21 - 73)^2 + (70 - 0)^2}$ or 87.2 million kilometers.

The difference between these distances is 30. ✓

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

GuidedPractice

4. **SEARCH AND RESCUE** Two receiving stations that are 150 kilometers apart receive a signal from a downed airplane. They determine that the airplane is 80 kilometers farther from station A than from station B. Determine the equation of the hyperbola centered at the origin on which the plane is located.

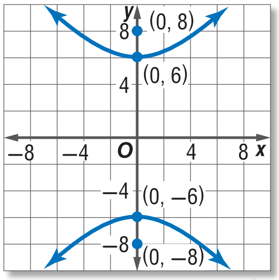
StudyTip

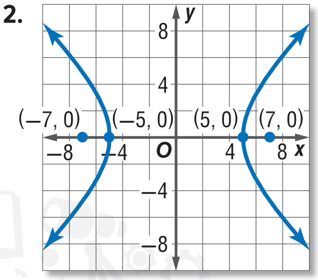
Exact Locations A third receiving station is necessary to determine the plane's exact location.

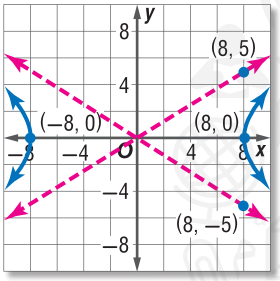
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education StockTrek/Getty Images

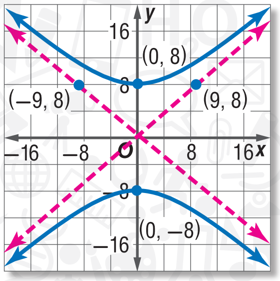
Check Your Understanding

Examples 1–2 **Write an equation for each hyperbola.**

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

Example 3 **STRUCTURE** **Graph each hyperbola. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.**

5. $\frac{x^2}{64} - \frac{y^2}{49} = 1$

6. $\frac{y^2}{36} - \frac{x^2}{60} = 1$

7. $9y^2 + 18y - 16x^2 + 64x - 199 = 0$

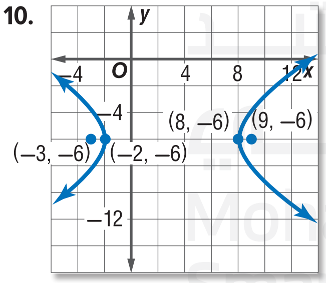
8. $4x^2 + 24x - y^2 + 4y - 4 = 0$

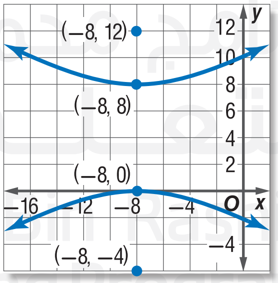
Example 4

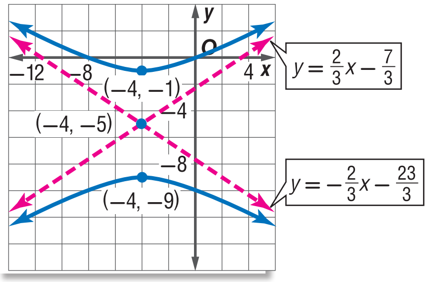
9. **NAVIGATION** A ship determines that the difference of its distances from two stations is 60 nautical miles. Write an equation for a hyperbola on which the ship lies if the stations are at $(-80, 0)$ and $(80, 0)$.

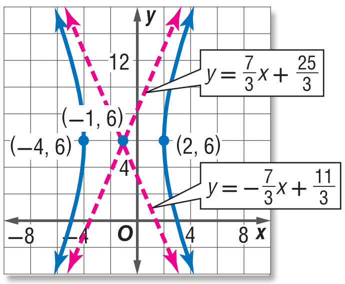
Practice and Problem Solving

Examples 1–2 **Write an equation for each hyperbola.**

10. 

11. 

12. 

13. 

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 3 **Graph each hyperbola. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.**

14. $\frac{x^2}{36} - \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$

15. $\frac{y^2}{9} - \frac{x^2}{49} = 1$

16. $\frac{y^2}{36} - \frac{x^2}{25} = 1$

17. $\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$

18. $\frac{(x-3)^2}{16} - \frac{(y+1)^2}{4} = 1$

19. $\frac{(y+5)^2}{16} - \frac{(x+2)^2}{36} = 1$

20. $9y^2 - 4x^2 - 54y + 32x - 19 = 0$

21. $16x^2 - 9y^2 + 128x + 36y + 76 = 0$

22. $25x^2 - 4y^2 - 100x + 48y - 144 = 0$

23. $81y^2 - 16x^2 - 810y + 96x + 585 = 0$

Example 4 24. **NAVIGATION** A ship determines that the difference of its distances from two stations is 80 nautical miles. Write an equation for a hyperbola on which the ship lies if the stations are at $(-100, 0)$ and $(100, 0)$.

Determine whether the following equations represent ellipses or hyperbolas.

25. $4x^2 = 5y^2 + 6$

26. $8x^2 - 2x = 8y - 3y^2$

27. $-5x^2 + 4x = 6y + 3y^2$

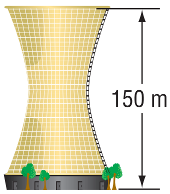
28. $7y - 2x^2 = 6x - 2y^2$

29. $6x - 7x^2 - 5y^2 = 2y$

30. $4x + 6y + 2x^2 = -3y^2$

31. **SPACE** Refer to the application at the beginning of the lesson. With the Sun as a focus and the center at the origin, a certain comet's path follows a branch of a hyperbola. If two of the coordinates of the path are (10, 0) and (30, 100) where the units are in millions of kilometers, determine the equation of the path.

32. **COOLING** Natural draft cooling towers are shaped like hyperbolas for more efficient cooling of power plants. The hyperbola in the tower at the right can be modeled by $\frac{x^2}{16} - \frac{y^2}{225} = 1$, where the units are in meters. Find the width of the tower at the top and at its narrowest point in the middle.



33. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** Consider $xy = 16$.

a. **Tabular** Make a table of values for the equation for $-12 \leq x \leq 12$.

b. **Graphical** Graph the hyperbola represented by the equation.

c. **Logical** Determine and graph the asymptotes for the hyperbola.

d. **Analytical** What special property do you notice about the asymptotes? Hyperbolas that represent this property are called *rectangular hyperbolas*.

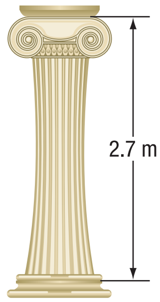
e. **Analytical** Without any calculations, what do you think will be the coordinates of the vertices for $xy = 25$? for $xy = 36$?

34. **MODELING** Two receiving stations that are 250 kilometers apart receive a signal from a downed airplane. They determine that the airplane is 70 kilometers farther from station B than from station A. Determine the equation of the horizontal hyperbola centered at the origin on which the plane is located.

35. **WEATHER** Fatima and Ayesha live exactly 4000 feet apart. While on the phone at their homes, Fatima hears thunder out of her window and Ayesha hears it 3 seconds later out of hers. If sound travels 1100 feet per second, determine the equation for the horizontal hyperbola on which the lightning is located.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

36. **ARCHITECTURE** Large pillars with cross sections in the shape of hyperbolas were popular in ancient Greece. The curves can be modeled by the equation $\frac{x^2}{0.16} - \frac{y^2}{4} = 1$, where the units are in meters. If the pillars are 2.7 meters tall, find the width of the top of each pillar and the width of each pillar at the narrowest point in the middle. Round to the nearest hundredth of a meter.



Write an equation for the hyperbola that satisfies each set of conditions.

37. vertices $(-8, 0)$ and $(8, 0)$, conjugate axis of length 20 units

38. vertices $(0, -6)$ and $(0, 6)$, conjugate axis of length 24 units

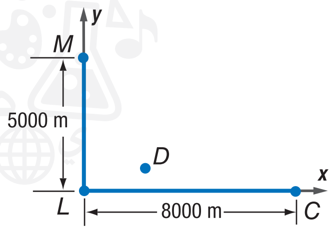
39. vertices $(6, -2)$ and $(-2, -2)$, foci $(10, -2)$ and $(-6, -2)$

40. vertices $(-3, 4)$ and $(-3, -8)$, foci $(-3, 9)$ and $(-3, -13)$

41. centered at the origin with a horizontal transverse axis of length 10 units and a conjugate axis of length 4 units

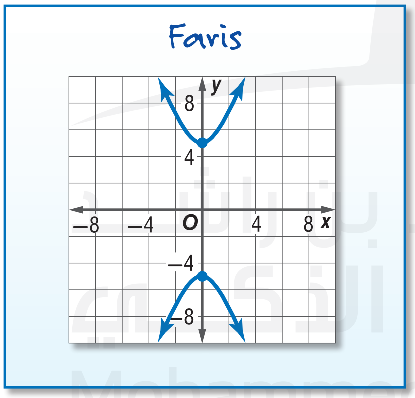
42. centered at the origin with a vertical transverse axis of length 16 units and a conjugate axis of length 12 units

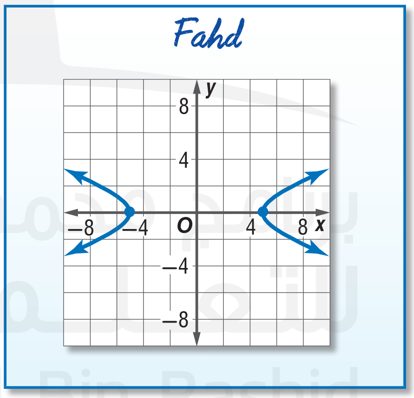
43. **TRIANGULATION** While looking for their lost cat in the woods, Ahmed, Mohammad, and Humaid hear a meow. Mohammad hears it 2 seconds after Ahmed and Humaid hears it 3 seconds after Ahmed. With Ahmed at the origin, determine the exact location of their cat if sound travels 1100 meters per second.



H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

44. **CRITIQUE** Faris and Fahd are graphing $\frac{y^2}{25} - \frac{x^2}{4} = 1$. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.





45. **CHALLENGE** The origin lies on a horizontal hyperbola. The asymptotes for the hyperbola are $y = -x + 1$ and $y = x - 5$. Find the equation for the hyperbola.

46. **REASONING** What happens to the location of the foci of a hyperbola as the value of a becomes increasingly smaller than the value of b? Explain your reasoning.

47. **REASONING** Consider $\frac{y^2}{36} - \frac{x^2}{16} = 1$. Describe the change in the shape of the hyperbola and the locations of the vertices and foci if 36 is changed to 9. Explain why this happens.

48. **OPEN ENDED** Write an equation for a hyperbola with a focus at the origin.

49. **WRITING IN MATH** Why would you choose a conic section to model a set of data instead of a polynomial function?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Standardized Test Practice

50. You have 6 more 10 fils coins than 25 fils coins. You have a total of AED 5.15. How many 10 fils coins do you have?

A 13 **C** 19
B 16 **D** 25

51. How tall is a shrub that is 15 centimeters shorter than a pole three times as tall as the shrub?

F 24.5 cm
G 22.5 cm
H 21.5 cm
J 7.5 cm

52. SHORT RESPONSE A rectangle is 8 meters long and 6 meters wide. If each dimension is increased by the same number of meters, the area of the new rectangle formed is 32 square meters more than the area of the original rectangle. By how many meters was each dimension increased?

53. SAT/ACT When the equation $y = 4x^2 - 5$ is graphed in the coordinate plane, the graph is which of the following?

A line **D** hyperbola
B circle **E** parabola
C ellipse

Spiral Review

Write an equation for an ellipse that satisfies each set of conditions. (Lesson 6-4)

54. endpoints of major axis at (2, 2) and (2, −10), endpoints of minor axis at (0, −4) and (4, −4)

55. endpoints of major axis at (0, 10) and (0, −10), foci at (0, 8) and (0, −8)

Find the center and radius of the circle with the given equation. Then graph the circle. (Lesson 6-3)

56. $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 16$ **57.** $x^2 + y^2 - 6y - 16 = 0$ **58.** $x^2 + y^2 + 9x - 8y + 4 = 0$

59. BASKETBALL Wafa plays basketball for her high school. So far this season, she has made 6 out of 10 free throws. She is determined to improve her free throw percentage. If she can make x consecutive free.

a. Graph the function.

b. What part of the graph is meaningful in the context of the problem?

c. Describe the meaning of the y-intercept.

d. What is the equation of the horizontal asymptote? Explain its meaning with respect to Wafa's shooting percentage.

Solve each equation.

60. $\left(\frac{1}{7}\right)^{y-3} = 343$ **61.** $10^{x-1} = 100^{2x-3}$ **62.** $36^{2p} = 216^{p-1}$

Graph each inequality.

63. $y \geq \sqrt{5x - 8}$ **64.** $y \geq \sqrt{x - 3} + 4$ **65.** $y < \sqrt{6x - 2} + 1$

Skills Review

66. Write an equation for a parabola with vertex at the origin that passes through (2, −8)

67. Write an equation for a parabola with vertex at (−3, −4) that opens up and has y-intercept 8.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

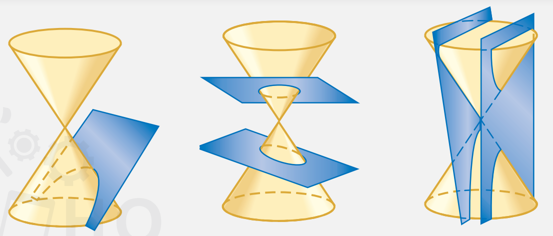
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

LESSON 6-5 Identifying Conic Sections

Then
- You analyzed different conic sections.

Now
1. Write equations of conic sections in standard form.
2. Identify conic sections from their equations.

Why?
- Parabolas, circles, ellipses, and hyperbolas are called conic sections because they are the cross sections formed when a double cone is sliced by a plane.



Parabola | Circle and Ellipse | Hyperbola

Mathematical Practices
3 Construct viable arguments and critique the reasoning of others.
8 Look for and express regularity in repeated reasoning.

1 Conics in Standard Form
The equation for any conic section can be written in the form $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$, where A, B, and C are not all zero. This general form can be converted to the standard forms below by completing the square.

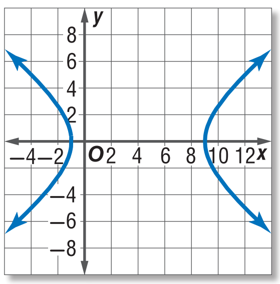
ConceptSummary Standard Forms of Conic Sections

Conic Section	Standard Form of Equation	
Circle	$(x - h)^2 + (y - k) = r^2$	
	Horizontal Axis	Vertical Axis
Parabola	$y = a(x - h)^2 + k$	$x = a(y - k)^2 + h$
Ellipse	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$
Hyperbola	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$	$\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$

Example 1 Rewrite an Equation of a Conic Section

Write $16x^2 - 25y^2 - 128x - 144 = 0$ in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.

$16x^2 - 25y^2 - 128x - 144 = 0$	Original equation
$16(x^2 - 8x + \blacksquare) - 25y^2 = 144 + 16(\blacksquare)$	Isolate terms.
$16(x^2 - 8x + 16) - 25y^2 = 144 + 16(16)$	Complete the square.
$16(x - 4)^2 - 25y^2 = 400$	Perfect square
$\frac{(x-4)^2}{25} - \frac{y^2}{16} = 1$	Divide each side by 400.



The graph is a hyperbola with its center at (4, 0).

GuidedPractice

1. Write $4x^2 + y^2 - 16x + 8y - 4 = 0$ in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

ReviewVocabulary

discriminant the expression $b^2 - 4ac$ from the Quadratic Formula

2 Identify Conic Sections

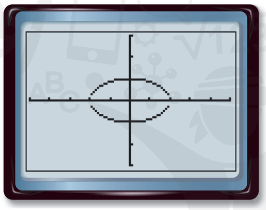
You can determine the type of conic without having to write $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ in standard form. When there is an xy-term ($B \neq 0$), you can use the discriminant to identify the conic. $B^2 - 4AC$ is the discriminant of $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$.

ConceptSummary Classify Conics with the Discriminant

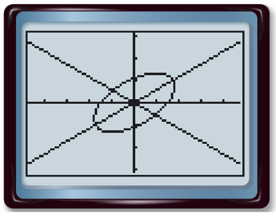
Discriminant	Conic Section
$B^2 - 4AC < 0$; $B = 0$ and $A = C$	circle
$B^2 - 4AC < 0$; either $B \neq 0$ or $A \neq C$	ellipse
$B^2 - 4AC = 0$	parabola
$B^2 - 4AC > 0$	hyperbola

When $B = 0$, the conic will be either vertical or horizontal. When $B \neq 0$, the conic will be neither vertical nor horizontal.

Horizontal Ellipse: $B = 0$



Rotated Ellipse: $B \neq 0$



StudyTip

Identifying Conics When there is no xy-term ($B = 0$), use A and C.
Parabola: A or $C = 0$ but not both.
Circle: $A = C$
Ellipse: A and C have the same sign but are not equal.
Hyperbola: A and C have opposite signs.

Example 2 Analyze an Equation of a Conic Section

Without writing in standard form, state whether the graph of each equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*.

a. $y^2 + 4x^2 - 3xy + 4x - 5y - 8 = 0$

$A = 4$, $B = -3$, and $C = 1$

The discriminant is $(-3)^2 - 4(4)(1)$ or -7.

Because the discriminant is less than 0 and $B \neq 0$, the conic is an ellipse.

b. $3x^2 - 6x + 4y - 5y^2 + 2xy - 4 = 0$

$A = 3$, $B = 2$, and $C = -5$

The discriminant is $2^2 - 4(3)(-5)$ or 64.

Because the discriminant is greater than 0, the conic is a hyperbola.

c. $4y^2 - 8x + 6y - 14 = 0$

$A = 0$, $B = 0$, and $C = 4$

The discriminant is $0^2 - 4(0)(4)$ or 0.

Because the discriminant equals 0, the conic is a parabola.

GuidedPractice

2A. $8y^2 - 6x^2 + 4xy - 6x + 2y - 4 = 0$

2B. $3xy + 4x^2 - 2y + 9x - 3 = 0$

2C. $3x^2 + 16x - 12y + 2y^2 - 6 = 0$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Check Your Understanding

Example 1 **Write each equation in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.**

1. $x^2 + 4y^2 - 6x + 16y - 11 = 0$
2. $x^2 + y^2 + 12x - 8y + 36 = 0$
3. $9y^2 - 16x^2 - 18y - 64x - 199 = 0$
4. $6y^2 - 24y + 28 - x = 0$

Example 2 **Without writing in standard form, state whether the graph of each equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*.**

5. $4x^2 + 6y^2 - 3x - 2y = 12$
6. $5y^2 = 2x + 6y - 8 + 3x^2$
7. $8x^2 + 8y^2 + 16x + 24 = 0$
8. $4x^2 - 6y = 8x + 2$
9. $4x^2 - 3y^2 + 8xy - 12 = 2x + 4y$
10. $5xy - 3x^2 + 6y^2 + 12y = 18$
11. $8x^2 + 12xy + 16y^2 + 4y - 3x = 12$
12. $16xy + 8x^2 + 8y^2 - 18x + 8y = 13$

13. **MODELING** A military jet performs for an air show. The path of the plane during one maneuver can be modeled by a conic section with equation $24x^2 + 1000y - 31{,}680x - 45{,}600 = 0$, where distances are represented in feet.
    a. Identify the shape of the curved path of the jet. Write the equation in standard form.
    b. If the jet begins its path upward, or ascent, at $x = 0$, what is the horizontal distance traveled by the jet from the beginning of the ascent to the end of the descent?
    c. What is the maximum height of the jet?

Practice and Problem Solving

Example 1 **Write each equation in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.**

14. $3x^2 - 2y^2 + 18x + 8y - 35 = 0$
15. $3x^2 + 24x + 4y^2 - 40y + 52 = 0$
16. $x^2 + y^2 = 16 + 6y$
17. $32x + 28 = y - 8x^2$
18. $7x^2 - 8y = 84x - 2y^2 - 176$
19. $x^2 + 8y = 11 + 6x - y^2$
20. $4y^2 = 24y - x - 31$
21. $112y + 64x = 488 + 7y^2 - 8x^2$
22. $28x^2 + 9y^2 - 188 = 56x - 36y$
23. $25x^2 + 384y - 64y^2 + 200x = 1776$

Example 2 **Without writing in standard form, state whether the graph of each equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*.**

24. $4x^2 - 5y = 9x - 12$
25. $4x^2 - 12x = 18y - 4y^2$
26. $9x^2 + 12y = 9y^2 + 18y - 16$
27. $18x^2 - 16y = 12x - 4y^2 + 19$
28. $12y^2 - 4xy + 9x^2 = 18x - 124$
29. $5xy + 12x^2 - 16x = 5y + 3y^2 + 18$
30. $19x^2 + 14y = 6x - 19y^2 - 88$
31. $8x^2 + 20xy + 18 = 4y^2 - 12 + 9x$
32. $5x - 12xy + 6x^2 = 8y^2 - 24y - 9$
33. $18x - 24y + 324xy = 27x^2 + 3y^2 - 5$

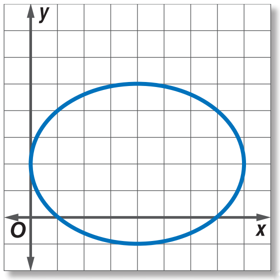
34. **LIGHT** A lamp standing near a wall throws an arc of light in the shape of a conic section. Suppose the edge of the light can be represented by the equation $3y^2 - 2y - 4x^2 + 2x - 8 = 0$. Identify the shape of the edge of the light and graph the equation.

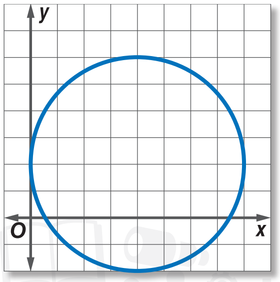
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

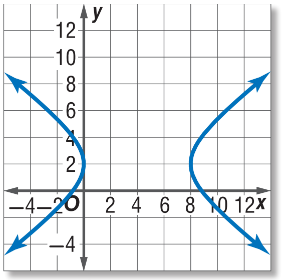
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Match each graph with its corresponding equation.

a. $x^2 + y^2 - 8x - 4y = -4$ b. $9x^2 - 16y^2 - 72x + 64y = 64$ c. $9x^2 + 16y^2 = 72x + 64y - 64$

35. 

36. 

37. 

For Exercises 38–41, match each situation with an equation that could be used to represent it.

a. $47.25x^2 - 9y^2 + 18y + 33.525 = 0$ b. $25x^2 + 100y^2 - 1900x - 2200y + 45{,}700 = 0$

c. $16x^2 - 90x + y - 0.25 = 0$ d. $x^2 + y^2 - 18x - 30y - 14{,}094 = 0$

38. **COMPUTERS** the boundary of a wireless network with a range of 120 feet

39. **FITNESS** the oval path of your foot on an exercise machine

40. **COMMUNICATIONS** the position of a cell phone between two cell towers

41. **SPORTS** the height of a ball above the ground after being kicked

42. **SENSE-MAKING** The shape of the cables in a suspension bridge is approximately parabolic. If the towers for a planned bridge are 1000 meters apart and the lowest point of the suspension cables is 200 meters below the top of the towers, write the equation in standard form with the origin at the vertex.

43. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** Consider an ellipse with center $(3, -2)$, vertex $M(-1, -2)$, and co-vertex $N(3, -4)$.

a. **Analytical** Determine the standard form of the equation of the ellipse.

b. **Algebraic** Convert part **a** to $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ form.

c. **Graphical** Graph the ellipse.

d. **Analytical** If the ellipse is rotated such that M is moved to $(3, -6)$, determine the location of N and the angle of rotation.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

44. **CHALLENGE** When a plane passes through the vertex of a cone, a *degenerate* conic is formed.

a. Determine the type of conic represented by $4x^2 + 8y^2 = 0$.

b. Graph the conic.

c. Describe the difference between this degenerate conic and a standard conic of the same type with $A = 4$ and $B = 8$.

45. **REASONING** Is the following statement *sometimes*, *always*, or *never* true? Explain.

When a conic is vertical and $A = C$, it is a circle.

46. **OPEN ENDED** Write an equation of the form $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$, where $A = 9C$, that represents a parabola.

47. **WRITING IN MATH** Compare and contrast the graphs of the four types of conics and their corresponding equations.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Standardized Test Practice

48. SAT/ACT A class of 25 students took a science test. Ten students had a mean score of 80. The other students had an average score of 60. What is the average score of the whole class?

A 66
B 68
C 70
D 72
E 78

49. Six times a number minus 11 is 43. What is the number?

F 12
G 11
H 10
J 9

50. EXTENDED RESPONSE The amount of water remaining in a storage tank as it is drained can be represented by the equation $L = -4t^2 - 10t + 130$, where L represents the number of liters of water remaining and t represents the number of minutes since the drain was opened. How many liters of water were in the tank initially? Determine to the nearest tenth of a minute how long it will take for the tank to drain completely.

51. Ahmed has a square piece of paper with sides 4 centimeters long. He rolled up the paper to form a cylinder. What is the volume of the cylinder?

A $\frac{4}{\pi}$
B $\frac{16}{\pi}$
C 4π
D 16π

Spiral Review

52. ASTRONOMY Suppose a comet's path can be modeled by a branch of the hyperbola with equation $\frac{y^2}{225} - \frac{x^2}{400} = 1$. Find the coordinates of the vertices and foci and the equations of the asymptotes for the hyperbola. Then graph the hyperbola. (Lesson 6-5)

Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes for the ellipse with the given equation. Then graph the ellipse. (Lesson 6-4)

53. $\frac{y^2}{18} + \frac{x^2}{9} = 1$

54. $4x^2 + 8y^2 = 32$

55. $x^2 + 25y^2 - 8x + 100y + 91 = 0$

Graph each function.

56. $f(x) = \frac{3}{x}$

57. $f(x) = \frac{-2}{x+5}$

58. $f(x) = \frac{6}{x-2} - 4$

59. SPACE A radioisotope is used as a power source for a satellite. The power output P (in watts) is given by $P = 50e^{-\frac{t}{250}}$, where t is the time in days.

a. Is the formula for power output an example of exponential *growth* or *decay*? Explain your reasoning.

b. Find the power available after 100 days.

c. Ten watts of power are required to operate the equipment in the satellite. How long can the satellite continue to operate?

Skills Review

Solve each system of equations.

60. $6g - 8h = 50$
$6h = 22 - 4g$

61. $3u + 5v = 6$
$2u - 4v = -7$

62. $10m - 9n = 15$
$5m - 4n = 10$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Graphing Technology Lab
Analyzing Quadratic Relations

You can use graphing technology to analyze quadratic relations.

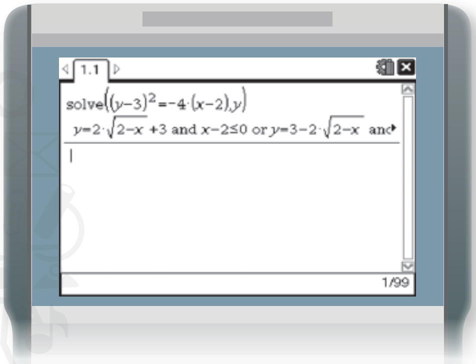
Activity 1 Characteristics of a Parabolic Relation

Graph $f(x) = 9x^2 + 1$, $g(x) = -x^2 + 3x - 4$, and $(y - 3)^2 = -4(x - 2)$. Identify the maxima, minima, and axes of symmetry.

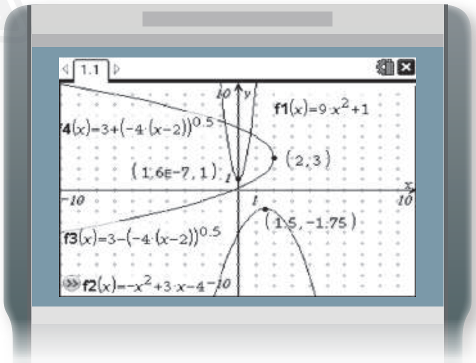
Step 1 Add a new **Graphs** and **Calculator** page.

Step 2 Enter $f(x)$ into **f1** and $g(x)$ into **f2**.

Step 3 On the **Calculator** page, use **solve** to solve $(y - 3)^2 = -4(x - 2)$ for y. Hold the **shift** and use ▶ to highlight one equation; then press **ctrl** C. Press **ctrl** ▶ to go to the **Graphs** page; then press **tab ctrl** V. Repeat to copy the other equation into **f4**.



Step 4 Use **Analyze Graph**, **Maximum**, **Minimum**, and **Intersection** to find the coordinates of the extrema. For $f(x)$, the minimum is at (0, 1); for $g(x)$, the maximum is at (1.5, −1.75); for the relation, the vertex is at (2, 3).



[−10, 10] scl: 1 by [−10, 10] scl: 1

Step 5 You can use the coordinates of the extrema to find the equations of the axes of symmetry. For $f(x)$, the equation of the axis of symmetry is $x = 1.5$; for $g(x)$, the equation of the axis of symmetry is $x = 0$; for the relation, the equation of the axis of symmetry is $y = 3$.

You can also use a graphing calculator to determine the equation of a parabola.

Activity 2 Write an Equation for a Parabola

Given that $f(x)$ has zeros at −2 and 4 and $f(x)$ opens downward, write an equation for the parabola.

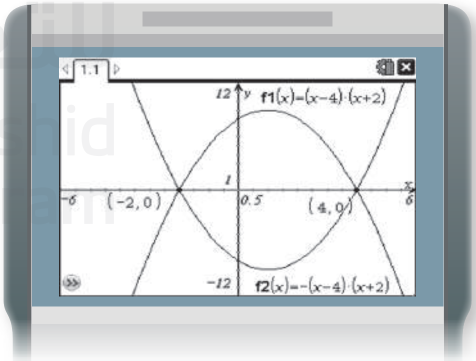
Step 1 Add a new **Graphs** and **Calculator** page.

Step 2 Because the zeros are $x = -2$ and $x = 4$, the factors of the quadratic equation are $(x + 2)$ and $(x - 4)$.

Step 3 Use the **expand** command on the **Calculator** page to multiply $(x + 2)$ and $(x - 4)$. So, $y = x^2 - 2x - 8$.

Step 4 On the **Graphs** page, graph $y = x^2 - 2x - 8$. Verify the roots and direction of opening.

Step 5 The function in the graph opens upward, not downward, so multiply $x^2 - 2x - 8$ by −1. Thus, $y = -x^2 + 2x + 8$. Graph this function.



[−6, 6] scl: 0.5 by [−12, 12] scl: 1

An equation for the parabola that has zeros at −2 and 4 and opens downward is $y = -x^2 + 2x + 8$.

(continued on the next page)

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Analyzing Quadratic Relations *Continued*

You can use a graphing calculator to determine an equation of a quadratic relation.

Activity 3 Write an Equation for an Ellipse

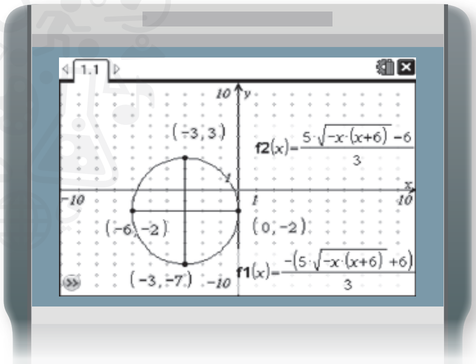
Write an equation for an ellipse that has vertices at (−3, 3) and (−3, −7) and co-vertices at (0, −2) and (−6, −2).

Step 1 Add a new **Graphs** and **Calculator** page.

Step 2 Turn on the grid from **View, Show Axis.** Then use **Points, Points On** to graph the four points. Use **Actions, Coordinates and Equations** to show the coordinates of the points.

Step 3 Use the graph to identify the intersection point of the segment formed by the vertices and the segment formed by the co-vertices. The center is at (−3, −2).

Step 4 Identify other important characteristics. The ellipse is oriented vertically. The length of the major axis is 10, so $a = 5$. The length of the minor axis is 6, so $b = 3$.



[−10, 10] scl: 1 by [−10, 10] scl: 1

Step 5 Write the equation in standard form.

$$\frac{[y - (-2)]^2}{5^2} + \frac{[x - (-3)]^2}{3^2} = 1 \text{ or}$$

$$\frac{(y + 2)^2}{25} + \frac{(x + 3)^2}{9} = 1$$

Step 6 Check the equation by using **Solve** under the **Algebra** menu on the **Calculator** page to solve for y. Copy and paste the two equations into the **Graph** page to graph the ellipse.

Exercises

Graph each function and relation. Identify the maxima, minima, and axes of symmetry.

1. $f(x) = -(x - 3)^2 + 12$, $g(x) = x^2 + x - 12$, and $(y + 5)^2 = -12(x - 2)$.

2. $f(x) = -0.25x^2 - 3x - 6$, $g(x) = 2x^2 + 2x + 4$, and $(y + 1)^2 = 2(x + 6)$.

3. Given that $f(x)$ has zeros at −1 and 3 and $f(x)$ opens upward, write an equation for the parabola.

4. Given that $f(x)$ has zeros at −3 and −1 and $f(x)$ opens downward, write an equation for the parabola.

5. Write an equation for an ellipse that has vertices at (−6, 2) and (−6, −8) and co-vertices at (−3, −3) and (−9, −3).

6. Write an equation for an ellipse that has vertices at (−13, 2) and (1, 2) and co-vertices at (−6, 4) and (−6, 0).

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

EXPLORE 6-6

Graphing Technology Lab
Linear-Nonlinear Systems

You can use a graphing application to solve linear-nonlinear systems by using the **Y=** menu to graph each equation on the same set of axes.

Example Linear-Quadratic System

Solve the system of equations.
$3y - 4x = -7$
$4x^2 + 3y^2 = 91$

Step 1 Solve each equation for y.

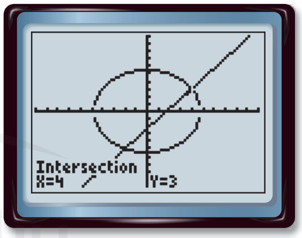
$$3y - 4x = -7 \qquad\qquad 4x^2 + 3y^2 = 91$$
$$3y = 4x - 7 \qquad\qquad 3y^2 = 91 - 4x^2$$
$$y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{7}{3} \qquad\qquad y = \pm\sqrt{\frac{91 - 4x^2}{3}}$$

Step 2 Enter $y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{7}{3}$ as **Y1**, $y = \sqrt{\frac{91 - 4x^2}{3}}$ as **Y2**, and $y = -\sqrt{\frac{91 - 4x^2}{3}}$ as **Y3**.
Then graph the equations in a standard viewing window.

KEYSTROKES: [Y=] 4 [÷] 3 [X,T,θ,n] [−] 7 [÷] 3 [ENTER] [2nd] [x^2] [(] 91 [−] 4 [X,T,θ,n] [x^2] [)] [÷] 3 [)] [ENTER] [(−)] [2nd] [x^2] [(] 91 [−] 4 [X,T,θ,n] [x^2] [)] [÷] 3 [)] [ENTER] [ZOOM] 6

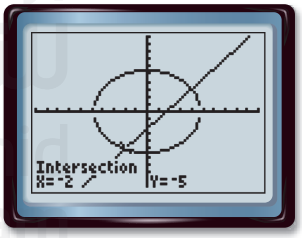
Step 3 Find the intersection of $y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{7}{3}$ with $y = \sqrt{\frac{91 - 4x^2}{3}}$.

KEYSTROKES: Press [2nd] [TRACE] 5 [ENTER] [ENTER] [ENTER]. The two graphs intersect at (4, 3).



Step 4 Find the intersection of $y = \frac{4}{3}x - \frac{7}{3}$ with $y = -\sqrt{\frac{91 - 4x^2}{3}}$.

KEYSTROKES: Press [2nd] [TRACE] 5 [ENTER] [▼] [ENTER]. Then use [◄] to move the cursor to the second intersection point. Press [ENTER]. The two graphs intersect at (−2, −5).



The solutions of the system are (4, 3) and (−2, −5).

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Use a graphing calculator to solve each system of equations.

1. $x^2 + y^2 = 100$
$x + y = 2$

2. $2y - x = 11$
$5x^2 + 2y^2 = 407$

3. $21x + 9y = -36$
$7x^2 + 9y^2 = 1152$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 6-6 Solving Linear-Nonlinear Systems

Then

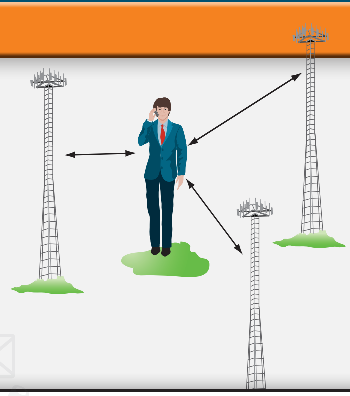
- You solved systems of linear equations.

Now

1. Solve systems of linear and nonlinear equations algebraically and graphically.
2. Solve systems of linear and nonlinear inequalities graphically.

Why?

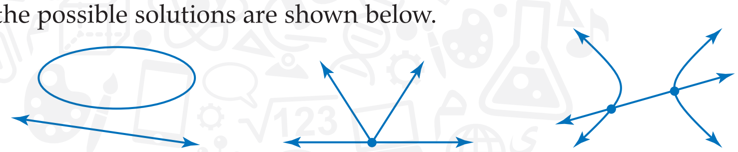
- Have you ever wondered how law enforcement agencies can track a cell phone user's location? A person using a cell phone can be located in respect to three cellular towers. The respective coordinates and distances each tower is from the caller are used to pinpoint the caller's location. This is accomplished using a system of quadratic equations.



Mathematical Practices
6 Attend to precision.

1 Systems of Equations

When a system of equations consists of a linear and a nonlinear equation, the system may have zero, one, or two solutions. Some of the possible solutions are shown below.



no solutions **one solution** **two solutions**

You can solve linear-quadratic systems by using graphical or algebraic methods.

Example 1 Linear-Quadratic System

Solve the system of equations. $9x^2 + 25y^2 = 225$ (1)
$10y + 6x = 6$ (2)

Step 1 Solve the linear equation for y.

$10y + 6x = 6$ Equation (2)
$y = -0.6x + 0.6$ Solve for y.

Step 2 Substitute into the quadratic equation and solve for x.

$9x^2 + 25y^2 = 225$ Quadratic equation
$9x^2 + 25(-0.6x + 0.6)^2 = 225$ Substitute $-0.6x + 0.6$ for y.
$9x^2 + 25(0.36x^2 - 0.72x + 0.36) = 225$ Simplify.
$9x^2 + 9x^2 - 18x + 9 = 225$ Distribute.
$18x^2 - 18x - 216 = 0$ Simplify.
$x^2 - x - 12 = 0$ Divide each side by 18.
$(x - 4)(x + 3) = 0$ Factor.
$x = 4$ or -3 Zero Product Property

Step 3 Substitute x-values into the linear equation and solve for y.

$y = -0.6x + 0.6$ Equation (2) $y = -0.6x + 0.6$
$= -0.6(4) + 0.6$ Substitute the x-values $= -0.6(-3) + 0.6$
$= -1.8$ Simplify. $= 2.4$

The solutions of the system are $(4, -1.8)$ and $(-3, 2.4)$.

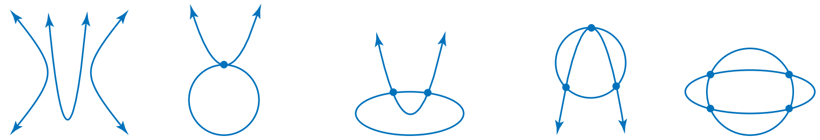
Guided Practice

1A. $3y + x^2 - 4x - 17 = 0$
$3y - 10x + 38 = 0$

1B. $3(y - 4) - 2(x - 3) = -6$
$5x^2 + 2y^2 - 53 = 0$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

If a quadratic system contains two conic sections, the system may have anywhere from zero to four solutions. Some graphical representations are shown below.



You can use elimination to solve quadratic-quadratic systems.

Example 2 Quadratic-Quadratic System

Solve the system of equations.

$x^2 + y^2 = 45$ (1)
$y^2 - x^2 = 27$ (2)

$y^2 + x^2 = 45$	Equation (1), Commutative Property
$(+)\ y^2 - x^2 = 27$	Equation (2)
$2y^2 = 72$	Add.
$y^2 = 36$	Divide each side by 2.
$y = \pm 6$	Take the square root of each side.

Substitute 6 and −6 into one of the original equations and solve for x.

$x^2 + y^2 = 45$	Equation (1)	$x^2 + y^2 = 45$
$x^2 + 6^2 = 45$	Substitute for y.	$x^2 + (-6)^2 = 45$
$x^2 = 9$	Subtract 36 from each side.	$x^2 = 9$
$x = \pm 3$	Take the square root of each side.	$x = \pm 3$

The solutions are $(-3, -6)$, $(-3, 6)$, $(3, -6)$, and $(3, 6)$.

StudyTip

Tools If you use **ZSquare** on the **ZOOM** menu, the graph of the first equation will look like a circle.

GuidedPractice

2A. $x^2 + y^2 = 8$
$x^2 + 3y = 10$

2B. $3x^2 + 4y^2 = 48$
$2x^2 - y^2 = -1$

2 Systems of Inequalities

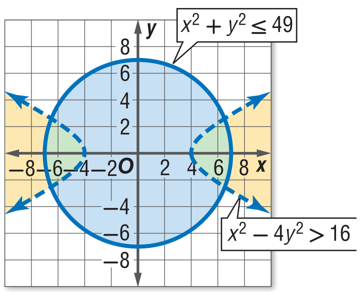
Systems of quadratic inequalities can be solved by graphing.

Example 3 Quadratic Inequalities

Solve the system of inequalities by graphing.

$x^2 + y^2 \leq 49$
$x^2 - 4y^2 > 16$

The intersection of the graphs, shaded green, represents the solution of the system.



CHECK (6, 0) is in the shaded area. Use this point to check your solution.

$x^2 + y^2 \leq 49$	$x^2 - 4y^2 > 16$
$6^2 + 0^2 \stackrel{?}{\leq} 49$	$62 - 4(0)^2 \stackrel{?}{>} 16$
$36 \leq 49$ ✓	$36 > 16$ ✓

GuidedPractice

3A. $5x^2 + 2y^2 \leq 10$
$y \geq x^2 - 2x + 1$

3B. $x^2 - y^2 \leq 8$
$x^2 + y^2 \geq 120$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Systems involving absolute value can also be solved by graphing.

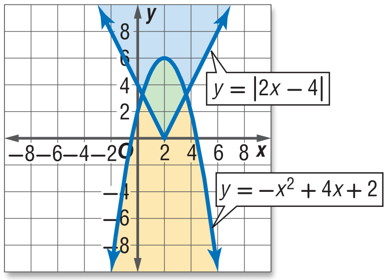
StudyTip

Graphing Calculator Like linear inequalities, systems of quadratic and absolute value inequalities can be checked with a graphing calculator.

Example 4 Quadratics with Absolute Value

Solve the system of inequalities by graphing.

$y \geq |2x - 4|$
$y \leq -x^2 + 4x + 2$



Graph the boundary equations. Then shade appropriately.

The intersection of the graphs, shaded green, represents the solution to the system.

CHECK (2, 4) is in the shaded area. Use the point to check your solution.

$y \geq \vert 2x - 4 \vert$	$y \leq -x^2 + 4x + 2$
$4 \overset{?}{\geq} \vert 2(2) - 4 \vert$	$4 \overset{?}{\leq} -(2)^2 + 4(2) + 2$
$4 \geq 0$ ✓	$4 \leq 6$ ✓

GuidedPractice

4A. $y > |-0.5x + 2|$
$\frac{x^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{36} \leq 1$

4B. $x^2 + y^2 \leq 49$
$y \geq |x^2 + 1|$

Check Your Understanding

Examples 1–2 **Solve each system of equations.**

1. $8y = -10x$
$y^2 = 2x^2 - 7$

2. $x^2 + y^2 = 68$
$5y = -3x + 34$

3. $y = 12x - 30$
$4x^2 - 3y = 18$

4. $6y^2 - 27 = 3x$
$6y - x = 13$

5. $x^2 + y^2 = 16$
$x^2 - y^2 = 20$

6. $y^2 - 2x^2 = 8$
$3y^2 + x^2 = 52$

7. $x^2 + 2y = 7$
$y^2 - x^2 = 8$

8. $4y^2 - 3x^2 = 11$
$3y^2 + 2x^2 = 21$

9. PERSEVERANCE Refer to the beginning of the lesson. A person using a cell phone can be located with respect to three cellular towers. In a coordinate system where one unit represents one kilometer, the location of the caller is determined to be 50 kilometers from the tower at the origin. The person is also 40 kilometers from a tower at (0, 30) and 13 kilometers from a tower at (35, 18). Where is the caller?

Examples 3–4 **Solve each system of inequalities by graphing.**

10. $6x^2 + 9(y - 2)^2 \leq 36$
$x^2 + (y + 3)^2 \leq 25$

11. $16x^2 + 4y^2 \leq 64$
$y \geq -x^2 + 2$

12. $4x^2 - 8y^2 \geq 32$
$y \geq |1.5x| - 8$

13. $x^2 + 8y^2 < 32$
$y < -|x - 2| + 2$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Practice and Problem Solving

Examples 1–2 **Solve each system of equations.**

14. $3x^2 - 2y^2 = -24$
$2y = -3x$

15. $5x^2 + 4y^2 = 20$
$5y = 7x + 35$

16. $x^2 + 3x = -4y - 2$
$y = -2x + 1$

17. $y = 2x$
$4x^2 - 2y^2 = -36$

18. $2y = x + 10$
$y^2 - 4y = 5x + 10$

19. $9y = 8x - 19$
$8x + 11 = 2y^2 + 5y$

20. $2y^2 + 5x^2 = 26$
$2x^2 - y^2 = 5$

21. $x^2 + y^2 = 16$
$x^2 - 4x + y^2 = 12$

22. $x^2 + y^2 = 8$
$5y^2 = 3x^2$

23. $y^2 - x^2 + 3y = 26$
$x^2 + 2y^2 = 34$

24. $x^2 - y^2 = 25$
$x^2 + y^2 + 7 = 0$

25. $x^2 - 10x + 2y^2 = 47$
$y^2 - 2x^2 = -14$

26. **FIREWORKS** Two fireworks are set off simultaneously but from different altitudes. The height y in feet of one is represented by $y = -16t^2 + 120t + 10$, where t is the time in seconds. The height of the other is represented by $y = -16t^2 + 60t + 310$.

a. After how many seconds are the fireworks the same height?

b. What is that height?

Examples 3–4 **TOOLS** **Solve each system of inequalities by graphing.**

27. $x^2 + y^2 \geq 36$
$x^2 + 9(y + 6)^2 \leq 36$

28. $-x > y^2$
$4x^2 + 14y^2 \leq 56$

29. $12x^2 - 4y^2 \geq 48$
$16(x - 4)^2 + 25y^2 < 400$

30. $8y^2 - 3x^2 \leq 24$
$2y > x^2 - 8x + 14$

31. $y > x^2 - 6x + 8$
$x \geq y^2 - 6y + 8$

32. $x^2 + y^2 \geq 9$
$25x^2 + 64y^2 \leq 1600$

33. $16(x - 3)^2 + 4y^2 \leq 64$
$y \leq -|x - 2| + 2$

34. $x^2 - 4x + y^2 + 6y \leq 23$
$y > |x - 2| - 6$

35. $2y - 4 \geq |x + 4|$
$12 - 2y > x^2 + 12x + 36$

36. $18y^2 - 3x^2 \leq 54$
$y \geq |2x| - 6$

37. $x^2 + y^2 < 16$
$y \geq |x - 2| + 6$

38. $x^2 < y - 2$
$y \leq |x + 8| - 7$

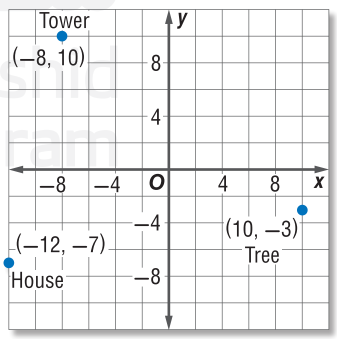
39. **SPACE** Two satellites are placed in orbit about Earth. The equations of the two orbits are $\frac{x^2}{(300)^2} + \frac{y^2}{(900)^2} = 1$ and $\frac{x^2}{(600)^2} + \frac{y^2}{(690)^2} = 1$, where distances are in kilometers and Earth is the center of each curve.

a. Solve each equation for y.

b. Use a graphing calculator to estimate the intersection points of the two orbits.

c. Compare the orbits of the two satellites.

40. **PETS** Asma's cat was missing one day. Fortunately, he was wearing an electronic monitoring device. If the cat is 10 units from the tree, 13 units from the tower, and 20 units from the house, determine the coordinates of his location.



41. **BASEBALL** In 1997, after Mark McGwire hit a home run, the claim was made that the ball would have traveled 538 feet if it had not landed in the stands. The path of the baseball can be modeled by $y = -0.0037x^2 + 1.77x - 1.72$ and the stands can be modeled by $y = \frac{3}{7}x - 128.6$. How far vertically and horizontally from home plate did the ball land in the stands?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

42. **ADVERTISING** The corporate logo for an automobile manufacturer is shown at the right. Write a system of three equations to model this logo.

Write a system of equations that satisfies each condition.

43. a circle and an ellipse that intersect at one point

44. a parabola and an ellipse that intersect at two points

45. a hyperbola and a circle that do not intersect

46. an ellipse and a parabola that intersect at three points

47. an ellipse and a hyperbola that intersect at four points

48. **FINANCIAL LITERACY** Prices are often set on an equilibrium curve, where the supply of a certain product equals its corresponding demand by consumers. An economist represents the supply of a product with $y = p^2 + 10p$ and the corresponding demand with $y = -p^2 + 40p$, where p is the price. Determine the equilibrium price.

49. **PAINTBALL** The shape of a paintball field is modeled by $x^2 + 4y^2 = 10{,}000$ in yards where the center is at the origin. The teams are provided with short-range walkie-talkies with a maximum range of 80 yards. Are the teams capable of hearing each other anywhere on the field? Explain your reasoning graphically.

50. **MOVING** Laila is moving to a new city and needs for the location of her new home to satisfy the following conditions.

- It must be less than 10 kilometers from the office where she will work.
- Because of the terrible smell of the local paper mill, it must be at least 15 kilometers away from the mill.

If the paper mill is located 9.5 kilometers east and 6 kilometers north of Laila's office, write and graph a system of inequalities to represent the area(s) were she should look for a home.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

51. **CHALLENGE** Find all values of k for which the following system of equations has two solutions.

$$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1 \qquad x^2 + y^2 = k^2$$

52. **ARGUMENTS** When the vertex of a parabola lies on an ellipse, how many solutions can the quadratic system represented by the two graphs have? Explain your reasoning using graphs.

53. **OPEN ENDED** Write a system of equations, one a hyperbola and the other an ellipse, for which a solution is $(-4, 8)$.

54. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain how sketching the graph of a quadratic system can help you solve it.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Vytautas Kielaitis/Shutterstock

Standardized Test Practice

55. SHORT RESPONSE Solve.

$$4x - 3y = 0$$
$$x^2 + y^2 = 25$$

56. You have 16 stamps. Some are postcard stamps that cost AED 0.23, and the rest cost AED 0.41. If you spent a total of AED 5.30 on the stamps, how many postcard stamps do you have?

A 7
B 8
C 9
D 10

57. Maysa received a promotion and a 7.2% raise. Her new salary is AED 53,600 a year. What was her salary before the raise?

F AED 50,000
G AED 53,600
H AED 55,000
J AED 57,500

58. SAT/ACT When a number is multiplied by $\frac{2}{3}$, the result is 188. Find the number.

A 292
B 282
C 272
D 262
E $125\frac{1}{3}$

Spiral Review

Match each equation with the situation that it could represent. (Lesson 6-6)

a. $9x^2 + 4y^2 - 36 = 0$
b. $0.004x^2 - x + y - 3 = 0$
c. $x^2 + y^2 - 20x + 30y - 75 = 0$

59. SPORTS the flight of a baseball

60. PHOTOGRAPHY the oval opening in a picture frame

61. GEOGRAPHY the set of all points 20 kilometers from a landmark

Find the coordinates of the vertices and foci and the equations of the asymptotes for the hyperbola with the given equation. Then graph the hyperbola. (Lesson 6-5)

62. $\frac{y^2}{16} - \frac{x^2}{25} = 1$

63. $\frac{(y-3)^2}{25} - \frac{(x-2)^2}{16} = 1$

64. $6y^2 = 2x^2 + 12$

Simplify each expression.

65. $\frac{12p^2 + 6p - 6}{4(p+1)^2} \div \frac{6p - 3}{2p + 10}$

66. $\frac{x^2 + 6x + 9}{x^2 + 7x + 6} \div \frac{4x + 12}{3x + 3}$

67. $\frac{r^2 + 2r - 8}{r^2 + 4r + 3} \div \frac{r - 2}{3r + 3}$

Graph each function. State the domain and range.

68. $f(x) = -\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^x$

69. $y = -2.5(5)^x$

70. $f(x) = 2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^x$

Skills Review

Solve each equation or formula for the specified variable.

71. $d = rt$, for r

72. $x = \frac{-b}{2a}$, for a

73. $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$, for h

74. $A = \frac{1}{2}h(a + b)$, for b

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

LESSON 6-7 Rotations of Conic Sections

Then

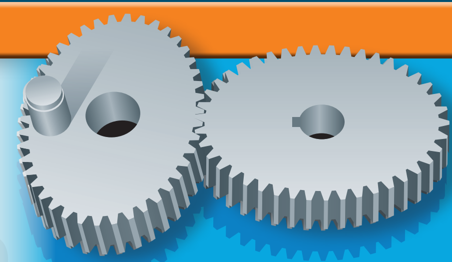
- You identified and graphed conic sections.

Now

1. Find rotation of axes to write equations of rotated conic sections.
2. Graph rotated conic sections.

Why?

- Elliptical gears are paired by rotating them about their foci. The driver gear turns at a constant speed, and the driven gear changes its speed continuously during each revolution.



1 Rotations of Conic Sections

In the previous lesson, you learned that when a conic section is vertical or horizontal with its axes parallel to the x- and y-axis, $B = 0$ in its general equation. The equation of such a conic does not contain an xy-term.

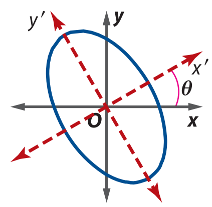
$Ax^2 + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ — Axes of conic are parallel to coordinate axes.

In this lesson, you will examine conics with axes that are rotated and no longer parallel to the coordinate axes. In the general equation for such rotated conics, $B \neq 0$, so there is an xy-term.

$Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ — Axes of conic are rotated from coordinate axes.

If the xy-term were eliminated, the equation of the rotated conic could be written in standard form by completing the square. To eliminate this term, we rotate the coordinate axes until they are parallel to the axes of the conic.

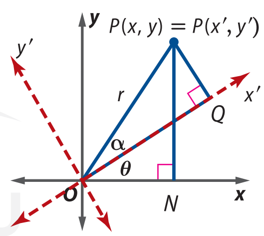
When the coordinate axes are rotated through an angle θ as shown, the origin remains fixed and new axes x' and y' are formed. The equation of the conic in the new $x'y'$-plane has the following general form.



$A(x')^2 + C(y')^2 + Dx' + Ey' + F = 0$ — Equation in $x'y'$-plane

Trigonometry can be used to develop formulas relating a point $P(x, y)$ in the xy-plane and $P(x', y')$ in the $x'y'$ plane.

Consider the figure at the right. Notice that in right triangle PNO, $OP = r$, $ON = x$, $PN = y$, and $m\angle NOP = \alpha + \theta$. Using $\triangle PNO$, you can establish the following relationships.



$x = r\cos(\alpha + \theta)$ — Cosine ratio

$\quad = r\cos\alpha\cos\theta - r\sin\alpha\sin\theta$ — Cosine Sum Identity

$y = r\sin(\alpha + \theta)$ — Sine ratio

$\quad = r\sin\alpha\cos\theta + r\cos\alpha\sin\theta$ — Sine Sum Identity

Using right triangle POQ, in which $OP = r$, $OQ = x'$, $PQ = y'$, and $m\angle QOP = \alpha$, you can establish the relationships $x' = r\cos\alpha$ and $y' = r\sin\alpha$. Substituting these values into the previous equations, you obtain the following.

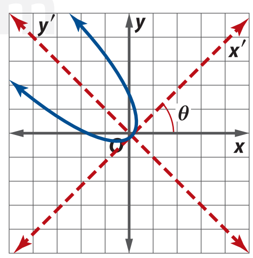
$x = x'\cos\theta - y'\sin\theta$ $\qquad$ $y = y'\cos\theta + x'\sin\theta$

KeyConcept Rotation of Axes of Conics

An equation $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ in the xy-plane can be rewritten as $A(x')^2 + C(y')^2 + Dx' + Ey' + F = 0$ in the rotated $x'y'$-plane.

The equation in the $x'y'$-plane can be found using the following equations, where θ is the angle of rotation.

$x = x'\cos\theta - y'\sin\theta$ $\qquad$ $y = x'\sin\theta + y'\cos\theta$



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Example 1 Write an Equation in the $x'y'$-Plane

Use $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ to write $6x^2 + 6xy + 9y^2 = 53$ in the $x'y'$-plane. Then identify the conic.

Find the equations for x and y.

$x = x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta$	Rotation equations for x and y	$y = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$
$= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}x' - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}y'$	$\sin \frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ and $\cos \frac{\pi}{4} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}x' + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}y'$

Substitute into the original equation.

$$6x^2 + 6xy + 9y^2 = 53$$

$$6\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}x' - \sqrt{2}y'}{2}\right)^2 + 6\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}x' - \sqrt{2}y'}{2}\right)\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}x' + \sqrt{2}y'}{2}\right) + 9\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}x' + \sqrt{2}y'}{2}\right)^2 = 53$$

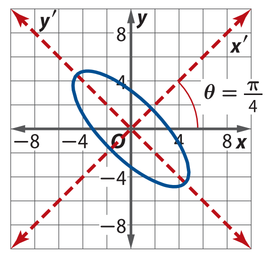
$$\frac{6[2(x')^2 - 4x'y' + 2(y')^2]}{4} + \frac{6[2(x')^2 - 2(y')^2]}{4} + \frac{9[2(x')^2 + 4x'y' + 2(y')^2]}{4} = 53$$

$$3(x')^2 - 6x'y' + 3(y')^2 + 3(x')^2 - 3(y')^2 + \frac{9}{2}(x')^2 + 9x'y' + \frac{9}{2}(y')^2 - 53 = 0$$

$$6(x')^2 - 12\,x'y' + 6(y')^2 + 6(x')^2 - 6(y')^2 + 9(x')^2 + 18x'y' + 9(y')^2 - 106 = 0$$

$$21(x')^2 + 6x'y' + 9(y')^2 - 106 = 0$$

The equation in the $x'y'$-plane is $21(x')^2 + 6x'y' + 9(y')^2 - 106 = 0$. For this equation, $B^2 - 4AC = 6^2 - 4(21)(9)$ or -720. Since $-720 < 0$, the conic is an ellipse as shown.

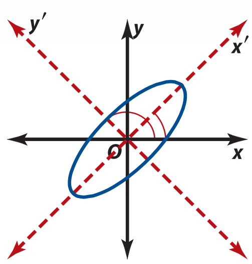


GuidedPractice

1. Use $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ to write $7x^2 + 4\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2 - 60 = 0$ in the $x'y'$-plane. Then identify the conic.

StudyTip

Angle of Rotation The angle of rotation θ is an acute angle due to the fact that either the x'-axis or the y'-axis will be in the first quadrant. For example, while the plane in the figure below could be rotated 123°, a 33° rotation is all that is needed to align the axes.



When the angle of rotation θ is chosen appropriately, the $x'y'$-term is eliminated from the general form equation, and the axes of the conic will be parallel to the axes of the $x'y'$-plane.

After substituting $x = x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta$ and $y = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$ into the general form of a conic, $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$, the coefficient of the $x'y'$-term is $B \cos 2\theta + (C - A) \sin 2\theta$. By setting this equal to 0, the $x'y'$-term can be eliminated.

$B \cos 2\theta + (C - A) \sin 2\theta = 0$	Coefficient of $x'y'$-term
$B \cos 2\theta = -(C - A) \sin 2\theta$	Subtract $(C - A) \sin 2\theta$ from each side.
$B \cos 2\theta = (A - C) \sin 2\theta$	Distributive Property
$\frac{\cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta} = \frac{A - C}{B}$	Divide each side by $B \sin 2\theta$.
$\cot 2\theta = \frac{A - C}{B}$	$\frac{\cos 2\theta}{\sin 2\theta} = \cot 2\theta$

KeyConcept Angle of Rotation Used to Eliminate xy-Term

An angle of rotation θ such that $\cot 2\theta = \frac{A - C}{B}$, $B \neq 0$, $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, will eliminate the xy-term from the equation of the conic section in the rotated $x'y'$-coordinate system.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 2 Write an Equation in Standard Form

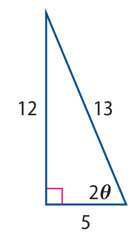
Using a suitable angle of rotation for the conic with equation $8x^2 + 12xy + 3y^2 = 4$, write the equation in standard form.

The conic is a hyperbola because $B^2 - 4AC > 0$. Find θ.

$$\cot 2\theta = \frac{A - C}{B} \quad \text{Rotation of the axes}$$

$$= \frac{5}{12} \quad A = 8,\ B = 12, \text{ and } C = 3$$

The figure illustrates a triangle for which $\cot 2\theta = \frac{5}{12}$. From this, $\sin 2\theta = \frac{12}{13}$ and $\cos 2\theta = \frac{5}{13}$.



Use the half-angle identities to determine $\sin \theta$ and $\cos \theta$.

Half-Angle Identities

$$\sin \theta = \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2}} \qquad \cos \theta = \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2}}$$

$\cos 2\theta = \frac{5}{13}$

$$= \sqrt{\frac{1 - \frac{5}{13}}{2}} \qquad = \sqrt{\frac{1 + \frac{5}{13}}{2}}$$

Simplify.

$$= \frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13} \qquad = \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}$$

Next, find the equations for x and y.

Rotation equations for x and y

$$x = x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta \qquad y = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$$

$\sin \theta = \frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}$ and $\cos \theta = \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}$

$$= \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}x' - \frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}y' \qquad = \frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}x' + \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}y'$$

Simplify.

$$= \frac{3\sqrt{13}x' - 2\sqrt{13}y'}{13} \qquad = \frac{2\sqrt{13}x' + 3\sqrt{13}y'}{13}$$

Substitute these values into the original equation.

$$8x^2 \quad + \quad 12xy \quad + \quad 3y^2 = 4$$

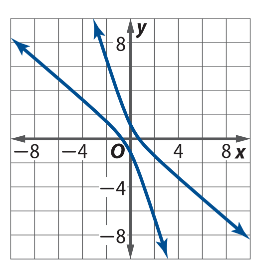
$$8\left(\frac{3\sqrt{13}x' - 2\sqrt{13}y'}{13}\right)^2 + 12\,\frac{3\sqrt{13}x' - 2\sqrt{13}y'}{13} \cdot \frac{2\sqrt{13}x' + 3\sqrt{13}y'}{13} + 3\left(\frac{2\sqrt{13}x' + 3\sqrt{13}y'}{13}\right)^2 = 4$$

$$\frac{72(x')^2 - 96x'y' + 32(y')^2}{13} + \frac{72(x')^2 + 60x'y' - 72(y')^2}{13} + \frac{12(x')^2 + 36x'y' + 27(y')^2}{13} = 4$$

$$\frac{156(x')^2 - 13(y')^2}{13} = 4$$

$$3(x')^2 - \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1$$

The standard form of the equation in the $x'y'$-plane is $\frac{(x')^2}{\frac{1}{3}} - \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1$. The graph of this hyperbola is shown.



GuidedPractice

Using a suitable angle of rotation for the conic with each given equation, write the equation in standard form.

2A. $2x^2 - 12xy + 18y^2 - 4y = 2$

2B. $20x^2 + 20xy + 5y^2 - 12x - 36y - 200 = 0$

StudyTip

$x'y'$ Term When you correctly substitute values of x' and y' in for x and y, the coefficient of the $x'y'$ term will become zero. If the coefficient of this term is not zero, then an error has occurred.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Two other formulas relating x' and y' to x and y can be used to find an equation in the xy-plane for a rotated conic.

KeyConcept Rotation of Axes of Conics

When an equation of a conic section is rewritten in the $x'y'$-plane by rotating the coordinate axes through $\boldsymbol{\theta}$, the equation in the xy-plane can be found using

$$x' = x \cos \boldsymbol{\theta} + y \sin \boldsymbol{\theta}, \text{ and } y' = y \cos \boldsymbol{\theta} - x \sin \boldsymbol{\theta}.$$

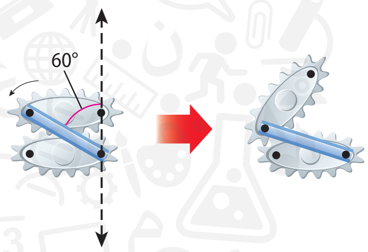
Real-WorldLink

In a system of gears where both gears spin, such as a bicycle, the speed of the gears in relation to each other is related to their size. If the diameter of one of the gears is $\frac{1}{2}$ of the diameter of the second gear, the first gear will rotate twice as fast as the second gear.

Source: *How Stuff Works*

Example 3 Write an Equation in the *xy*-Plane

PHYSICS Elliptical gears can be used to generate variable output speeds. After a 60° rotation, the equation for the rotated gear in the $x'y'$-plane is $\frac{(x')^2}{36} + \frac{(y')^2}{18} = 1$. Write an equation for the ellipse formed by the rotated gear in the xy-plane.



Use the rotation formulas for x' and y' to find the equation of the rotated conic in the xy-plane.

$x' = x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta$	Rotation equations for x' and y'	$y' = y \cos \theta - x \sin \theta$
$= x \cos 60° + y \sin 60°$	$\theta = 60°$	$= y \cos 60° - x \sin 60°$
$= \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}y$	$\sin 60° = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\cos 60° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$= \frac{1}{2}y - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x$

Substitute these values into the original equation.

$$\frac{(x')^2}{36} + \frac{(y')^2}{18} = 1 \quad \text{Original equation}$$

$$(x')^2 + 2(y')^2 = 36 \quad \text{Multiply each side by 36.}$$

$$\left(\frac{x + \sqrt{3}y}{2}\right)^2 + 2\left(\frac{y - \sqrt{3}x}{2}\right)^2 = 36 \quad \text{Substitute.}$$

$$\frac{x^2 + 2\sqrt{3}xy + 3y^2}{4} + \frac{2y^2 - 4\sqrt{3}xy + 6x^2}{4} = 36 \quad \text{Simplify.}$$

$$\frac{7x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 5y^2}{4} = 36 \quad \text{Combine like terms.}$$

$$7x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 5y^2 = 144 \quad \text{Multiply each side by 4.}$$

$$7x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 5y^2 - 144 = 0 \quad \text{Subtract 144 from each side.}$$

The equation of the rotated ellipse in the xy-plane is $7x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy + 5y^2 - 144 = 0$.

GuidedPractice

3. If the equation for the gear after a 30° rotation in the $x'y'$-plane is $(x')^2 + 4(y')^2 - 40 = 0$, find the equation for the gear in the xy-plane.

2 Graph Rotated Conics

When the equations of rotated conics are given for the $x'y'$-plane, they can be graphed by finding points on the graph of the conic and then converting these points to the xy-plane.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Tony Cordoza/Alamy Images

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Example 4 Graph a Conic Using Rotations

Graph $(x' - 2)^2 = 4(y' - 3)$ if it has been rotated 30° from its position in the xy-plane.

The equation represents a parabola, and it is in standard form. Use the vertex (2, 3) and axis of symmetry $x' = 2$ in the $x'y'$-plane to determine the vertex and axis of symmetry for the parabola in the xy-plane.

Find the equations for x and y for $\theta = 30°$.

$$x = x' \cos\theta - y' \sin\theta \qquad \text{Rotation equations for } x \text{ and } y \qquad y = x' \sin\theta + y' \cos\theta$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x' - \frac{1}{2}y' \qquad \sin 30° = \frac{1}{2} \text{ and } \cos 30° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \qquad = \frac{1}{2}x' + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}y'$$

Use the equations to convert the $x'y'$-coordinates of the vertex into xy-coordinates.

$$x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x' - \frac{1}{2}y' \qquad \text{Conversion equation} \qquad y = \frac{1}{2}x' + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}y'$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(2) - \frac{1}{2}(3) \qquad x' = 2 \text{ and } y' = 3 \qquad = \frac{1}{2}(2) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(3)$$

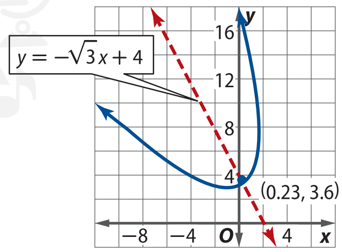
$$= \sqrt{3} - \frac{3}{2} \text{ or about } 0.23 \qquad \text{Multiply.} \qquad = 1 + \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} \text{ or about } 3.60$$

Find the equation for the axis of symmetry.

$x' = x\cos\theta + y\sin\theta$ — Conversion equation

$2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}y$ — $\sin 30° = \frac{1}{2}$ and $\cos 30° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

$y = -\sqrt{3}x + 4$ — Solve for y.



The new vertex and axis of symmetry can be used to sketch the graph of the parabola in the xy-plane.

StudyTip

Graphing Convert other points on the conic from $x'y'$-coordinates to xy-coordinates. Then make a table of these values to complete the sketch of the conic.

GuidedPractice

Graph each equation at the indicated angle.

4A. $\frac{(x')^2}{9} - \frac{(y')^2}{32} = 1;\ 60°$

4B. $\frac{(x')^2}{16} + \frac{(y')^2}{25} = 1;\ 30°$

One method of graphing conic sections with an xy-term is to solve the equation for y and graph with a calculator. Write the equation in quadratic form and then use the Quadratic Formula.

Example 5 Graph a Conic in Standard Form

Use a graphing calculator to graph the conic given by $4y^2 + 8xy - 60y + 2x^2 - 40x + 155 = 0$.

$4y^2 + 8xy - 60y + 2x^2 - 40x + 155 = 0$ — Original equation

$4y^2 + (8x - 60)y + (2x^2 - 40x + 155) = 0$ — Quadratic form

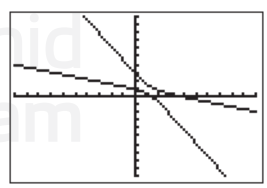
$y = \frac{-(8x - 60) \pm \sqrt{(8x - 60)^2 - 4(4)(2x^2 - 40x + 155)}}{2(4)}$ — $a = 4$, $b = 8x - 60$, and $c = 2x^2 - 40x + 155$

$= \frac{-8x + 60 \pm \sqrt{32x^2 - 320x + 1120}}{8}$ — Multiply and combine like terms.

$= \frac{-8x + 60 \pm 4\sqrt{2x^2 - 20x + 70}}{8}$ — Factor out $\sqrt{16}$.

$= \frac{-2x + 15 \pm \sqrt{2x^2 - 20x + 70}}{2}$ — Divide each term by 4.

Graphing both of these equations on the same screen yields the hyperbola shown.



[−40, 40] scl: 4 by [−40, 40] scl: 4

StudyTip

Arranging Terms Arrange the terms in descending powers of y in order to convert the equation to quadratic form.

GuidedPractice

5. Use a graphing calculator to graph the conic given by $4x^2 - 6xy + 2y^2 - 60x - 20y + 275 = 0$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Write each equation in the $x'y'$-plane for the given value of θ. Then identify the conic. (Example 1)

1. $x^2 - y^2 = 9,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$
2. $xy = -8,\ \theta = 45°$
3. $x^2 - 8y = 0,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$
4. $2x^2 + 2y^2 = 8,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$
5. $y^2 + 8x = 0,\ \theta = 30°$
6. $4x^2 + 9y^2 = 36,\ \theta = 30°$
7. $x^2 - 5x + y^2 = 3,\ \theta = 45°$
8. $49x^2 - 16y^2 = 784,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$
9. $4x^2 - 25y^2 = 64,\ \theta = 90°$
10. $6x^2 + 5y^2 = 30,\ \theta = 30°$

Using a suitable angle of rotation for the conic with each given equation, write the equation in standard form. (Example 1)

11. $xy = -4$
12. $x^2 - xy + y^2 = 2$
13. $145x^2 + 120xy + 180y^2 = 900$
14. $16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 - 5x - 90y + 25 = 0$
15. $2x^2 - 72xy + 23y^2 + 100x - 50y = 0$
16. $x^2 - 3y^2 - 8x + 30y = 60$
17. $8x^2 + 12xy + 3y^2 + 4 = 6$
18. $73x^2 + 72xy + 52y^2 + 25x + 50y - 75 = 0$

Write an equation for each conic in the xy-plane for the given equation in $x'y'$ form and the given value of θ. (Example 3)

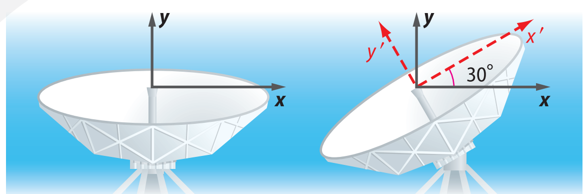
19. $(x')^2 + 3(y')^2 = 8,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$
20. $\frac{(x')^2}{25} - \frac{(y')^2}{225} = 1,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$
21. $\frac{(x')^2}{9} - \frac{(y')^2}{36} = 1,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$
22. $(x')^2 = 8y',\ \theta = 45°$
23. $\frac{(x')^2}{7} + \frac{(y')^2}{28} = 1,\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$
24. $4x' = (y')^2,\ \theta = 30°$
25. $\frac{(x')^2}{64} - \frac{(y')^2}{16} = 1,\ \theta = 45°$
26. $(x')^2 = 5y',\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$
27. $\frac{(x')^2}{4} - \frac{(y')^2}{9} = 1,\ \theta = 30°$
28. $\frac{(x')^2}{3} + \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1,\ \theta = 60°$

29. **ASTRONOMY** Suppose $144(x')^2 + 64(y')^2 = 576$ models the shape in the $x'y'$-plane of a reflecting mirror in a telescope. (Example 4)
    a. If the mirror has been rotated 30°, determine the equation of the mirror in the xy-plane.
    b. Graph the equation.

Graph each equation at the indicated angle.

30. $\frac{(x')^2}{4} + \frac{(y')^2}{9} = 1;\ 60°$
31. $\frac{(x')^2}{25} - \frac{(y')^2}{36} = 1;\ 45°$
32. $(x')^2 + 6x' - y' = -9;\ 30°$
33. $8(x')^2 + 6(y')^2 = 24;\ 30°$
34. $\frac{(x')^2}{4} - \frac{(y')^2}{16} = 1;\ 45°$
35. $y' = 3(x')^2 - 2x' + 5;\ 60°$

36. **COMMUNICATION** A satellite dish tracks a satellite directly overhead. Suppose $y = \frac{1}{6}x^2$ models the shape of the dish when it is oriented in this position. Later in the day, the dish is observed to have rotated approximately 30°. (Example 4)
    a. Write an equation that models the new orientation of the dish.
    b. Use a graphing calculator to graph both equations on the same screen. Sketch this graph on your paper.



GRAPHING CALCULATOR **Graph the conic given by each equation.** (Example 5)

37. $x^2 - 2xy + y^2 - 5x - 5y = 0$
38. $2x^2 + 9xy + 14y^2 = 5$
39. $8x^2 + 5xy - 4y^2 = -2$
40. $2x^2 + 4\sqrt{3}xy + 6y^2 + 3x = y$
41. $2x^2 + 4xy + 2y^2 + 2\sqrt{2}x - 2\sqrt{2}y = -12$
42. $9x^2 + 4xy + 6y^2 = 20$
43. $x^2 + 10\sqrt{3}xy + 11y^2 - 64 = 0$
44. $x^2 + y^2 - 4 = 0$
45. $x^2 - 2\sqrt{3}xy - y^2 + 18 = 0$
46. $2x^2 + 9xy + 14y^2 - 5 = 0$

The graph of each equation is a degenerate case. Describe the graph.

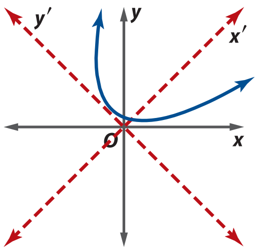
47. $y^2 - 16x^2 = 0$
48. $(x + 4)^2 - (x - 1)^2 = y + 8$
49. $(x + 3)^2 + y^2 + 6y + 9 - 6(x + y) = 18$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

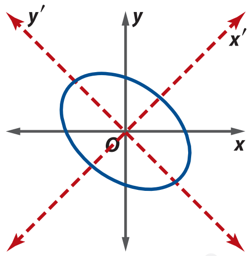
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Match the graph of each conic with its equation.

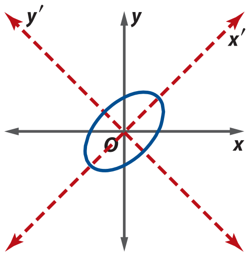
50.



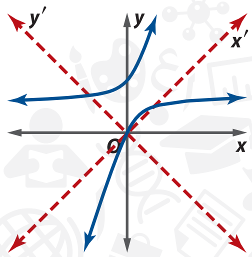
51.



52.



53.



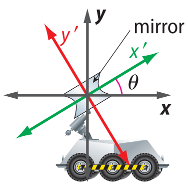
a. $x^2 - xy + y^2 = 2$

b. $145x^2 + 120xy + 180y^2 - 900 = 0$

c. $2x^2 - 72xy + 23y^2 + 100x - 50y = 0$

d. $16x^2 - 24xy + 9y^2 - 5x - 90y + 25 = 0$

54. **ROBOTICS** A hyperbolic mirror used in robotic systems is attached to the robot so that it is facing to the right. After it is rotated, the shape of its new position is represented by $51.75x^2 + 184.5\sqrt{3}xy - 132.75y^2 = 32{,}400$.



a. Solve the equation for y.

b. Use a graphing calculator to graph the equation.

c. Determine the angle θ through which the mirror has been rotated. Round to the nearest degree.

55. **INVARIANTS** When a rotation transforms an equation from the xy-plane to the $x'y'$-plane, the new equation is equivalent to the original equation. Some values are invariant under the rotation, meaning their values do not change when the axes are rotated. Use reasoning to explain how $A + C = A' + C'$ is a rotation invariant.

GRAPHING CALCULATOR **Graph each pair of equations and find any points of intersection. If the graphs have no points of intersection, write *no solution*.**

56. $x^2 + 2xy + y^2 - 8x - y = 0$
$8x^2 + 3xy - 5y^2 = 15$

57. $9x^2 + 4xy + 5y^2 - 40 = 0$
$x^2 - xy - 2y^2 - x - y + 2 = 0$

58. $x^2 + \sqrt{3}xy - 3 = 0$
$16x^2 - 20xy + 9y^2 = 40$

59. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** In this problem, you will investigate angles of rotation that produce the original graphs.

a. **TABULAR** For each equation in the table, identify the conic and find the minimum angle of rotation needed to transform the equation so that the rotated graph coincides with its original graph.

Equation	Conic	Minimum Angle of Rotation
$x^2 - 5x + 3 - y = 0$		
$6x^2 + 10y^2 = 15$		
$2xy = 9$		

b. **VERBAL** Describe the relationship between the lines of symmetry of the conics and the minimum angles of rotation needed to produce the original graphs.

c. **ANALYTICAL** A noncircular ellipse is rotated 50° about the origin. It is then rotated again so that the original graph is produced. What is the second angle of rotation?

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

60. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Mahmoud and Ahmed are describing the graph of $x^2 + 4xy + 6y^2 + 3x - 4y = 75$. Mahmoud says that it is an ellipse. Ahmed thinks it is a parabola. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

61. **CHALLENGE** Show that a circle with the equation $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ remains unchanged under any rotation θ.

62. **REASONING** *True* or *false*: Every angle of rotation θ can be described as an acute angle. Explain.

63. **PROOF** Prove $x' = x \cos \theta + y \sin \theta$ and $y' = y \cos \theta - x \sin \theta$. (*Hint:* Solve the system $x = x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta$ and $y = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$ by multiplying one equation by $\sin \theta$ and the other by $\cos \theta$.)

64. **REASONING** The angle of rotation θ can also be defined as $\tan 2\theta = \frac{B}{A - C}$, when $A \neq C$, or $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$, when $A = C$. Why does defining the angle of rotation in terms of cotangent not require an extra condition with an additional value for θ?

65. **WRITING IN MATH** The discriminant can be used to classify a conic $A'(x')^2 + C'(y')^2 + D'x' + E'y' + F' = 0$ in the $x'y'$-plane. Explain why the values of A' and C' determine the type of conic. Describe the parameters necessary for an ellipse, a circle, a parabola, and a hyperbola.

66. **REASONING** *True* or *false*: Whenever the discriminant of an equation of the form $Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$ is equal to zero, the graph of the equation is a parabola. Explain.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Graph the hyperbola given by each equation.

67. $\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{64} = 1$

68. $\frac{y^2}{25} - \frac{x^2}{49} = 1$

69. $\frac{(x-3)^2}{64} - \frac{(y-7)^2}{25} = 1$

Determine the eccentricity of the ellipse given by each equation.

70. $\frac{(x+17)^2}{39} + \frac{(y+7)^2}{30} = 1$

71. $\frac{(x-6)^2}{12} + \frac{(y+4)^2}{15} = 1$

72. $\frac{(x-10)^2}{29} + \frac{(y+2)^2}{24} = 1$

73. **INVESTING** Mansour has a total of AED 5000 in his savings account and in a certificate of deposit. His savings account earns 3.5% interest annually. The certificate of deposit pays 5% interest annually if the money is invested for one year. Mansour calculates that his interest earnings for the year will be AED 227.50.

a. Write a system of equations for the amount of money in each investment.

b. Use Cramer's Rule to determine how much money is in Mansour's savings account and in the certificate of deposit.

74. **OPTICS** The amount of light that a source provides to a surface is called the *illuminance*. The illuminance E in foot candles on a surface that is R feet from a source of light with intensity I candelas is $E = \frac{I \cos \theta}{R^2}$, where θ is the measure of the angle between the direction of the light and a line perpendicular to the surface being illuminated. Verify that $E = \frac{I \cot \theta}{R^2 \csc \theta}$ is an equivalent formula.

Solve each equation.

75. $\log_4 8n + \log_4 (n-1) = 2$

76. $\log_9 9p + \log_9 (p+8) = 2$

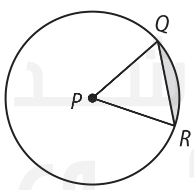
Use the Factor Theorem to determine if the binomials given are factors of $f(x)$. Use the binomials that are factors to write a factored form of $f(x)$.

77. $f(x) = x^4 - x^3 - 16x^2 + 4x + 48;\ (x-4),\ (x-2)$

78. $f(x) = 2x^4 + 9x^3 - 23x^2 - 81x + 45;\ (x+5),\ (x+3)$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

79. **SAT/ACT** P is the center of the circle and $PQ = QR$. If $\triangle PQR$ has an area of $9\sqrt{3}$ square units, what is the area of the shaded region in square units?



A $24\pi - 9\sqrt{3}$

B $9\pi - 9\sqrt{3}$

C $18\pi - 9\sqrt{3}$

D $6\pi - 9\sqrt{3}$

E $12\pi - 9\sqrt{3}$

80. **REVIEW** Which is NOT the equation of a parabola?

F $y = 2x^2 + 4x - 9$

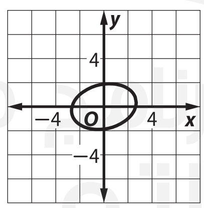
G $3x + 2y^2 + y + 1 = 0$

H $x^2 + 2y^2 + 8y = 8$

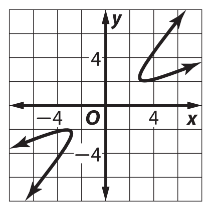
J $x = \frac{1}{2}(y-1)^2 + 5$

81. Which is the graph of the conic given by the equation $4x^2 - 2xy + 8y^2 - 7 = 0$?

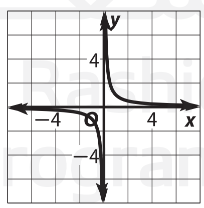
A



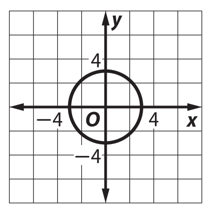
C



B



D



82. **REVIEW** How many solutions does the system $\frac{x^2}{5^2} - \frac{y^2}{3^2} = 1$ and $(x-3)^2 + y^2 = 9$ have?

F 0

G 1

H 2

J 4

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

EXTEND 6-7 Graphing Technology Lab
Systems of Nonlinear Equations and Inequalities

Objective

- Use a graphing calculator to approximate solutions to systems of nonlinear equations and inequalities.

Graphs of conic sections represent a nonlinear system. Solutions of systems of nonlinear equations can be found algebraically. However, approximations can be found by using your graphing calculator. Graphing calculators can only graph functions. To graph a conic section that is not a function, solve the equation for *y*.

Activity 1 Nonlinear System

Solve the system by graphing.

$x^2 + y^2 = 13$

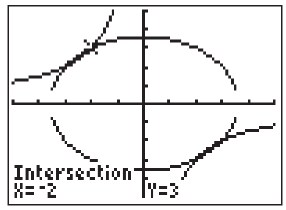
$xy + 6 = 0$

Step 1 Solve each equation for y.

$y = \sqrt{13 - x^2}$ and $y = -\sqrt{13 - x^2}$ $\qquad y = -\frac{6}{x}$

Step 2 Graph the equations in the appropriate window.

Step 3 Use the intersect feature from the CALC menu to find the four points of intersection.



[−5, 5] scl: 1 by [−5, 5] scl: 1

The solutions are $(-3, 2)$, $(-2, 3)$, $(2, -3)$, and $(3, -2)$.

Exercises

Solve each system of equations by graphing. Round to the nearest tenth.

1. $xy = 2$
$x^2 - y^2 = 3$

2. $49 = y^2 + x^2$
$x = 1$

3. $x = 2 + y$
$x^2 + y^2 = 100$

4. $25 - 4x^2 = y^2$
$2x + y + 1 = 0$

5. $y^2 = 9 - 3x^2$
$x^2 = 10 - 2y^2$

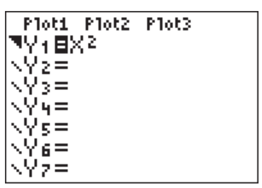
6. $y = -1 - x$
$4 + x = (y - 1)^2$

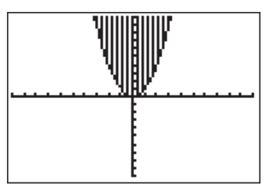
7. **CHALLENGE** A palace contains two square rooms, the family room and the den. The total area of the two rooms is 468 square meters, and the den is 180 square meters smaller than the family room.

a. Write a system of second-degree equations that models this situation.

b. Graph the system found in part **a**, and estimate the length of each room.

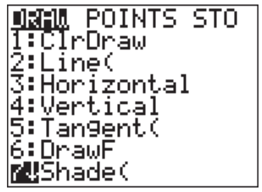
Systems of nonlinear inequalities can also be solved using a graphing calculator. Recall that inequalities can be graphed by using the *greater than* and *less than* commands from the **Y=** menu. An inequality symbol is found by scrolling to the left of the equal sign and pressing ENTER until the shaded triangles are flashing. The triangle above represents *greater than* and the triangle below represents *less than*. The graph of $y \geq x^2$ is shown below.




[−10, 10] scl: 1 by [−10, 10] scl: 1

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Inequalities with conic sections that are not functions, such as ellipses, circles, and some hyperbolas, can be graphed by using the Shade(command from the DRAW menu. The restrictive information required is Shade(*lowerfunc, upperfunc, Xleft, Xright, 3, 4*).



This command draws the lower function *lowerfunc* and the upper function *upperfunc* in terms of x. It then shades the area that is above *lowerfunc* and below *upperfunc* between the left and right boundaries *Xleft* and *Xright*. The final two entries *3* and *4* specify the type of shading and can remain constant.

TechnologyTip

Clear Screen To clear any drawings from the calculator screen, select ClrDraw from the DRAW menu.

Activity 2 Nonlinear System of Inequalities

Solve the system of inequalities by graphing.

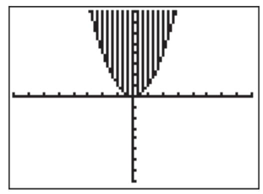
$x^2 + y^2 \leq 36$

$y - x^2 > 0$

Step 1 Solve each inequality for y.

$y \leq \sqrt{36 - x^2}$ and $y \geq -\sqrt{36 - x^2}$ $\qquad$ $y > x^2$

Step 2 Graph $y > x^2$, and shade the correct region. Make each inequality symbol by scrolling to the left of the equal sign and selecting ENTER until the shaded triangles are flashing.

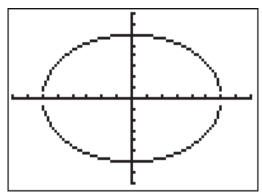


[−8, 8] scl: 1 by [−8, 8] scl: 1

StudyTip

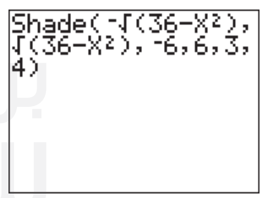
Left and Right Boundaries If the left and right boundaries are not apparent, enter window values that exceed both boundaries. For example, if the boundaries should be $x = -5$ and $x = 5$, entering −10 and 10 will still produce the correct graph.

Step 3 To graph $x^2 + y^2 \leq 36$, the lower boundary is $y = -\sqrt{36 - x^2}$ and the upper boundary is $y = \sqrt{36 - x^2}$. The two halves of the circle meet at $x = -6$ and $x = 6$ as shown.

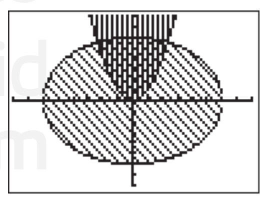


[−8, 8] scl: 1 by [−8, 8] scl: 1

Step 4 From the DRAW menu, select 7: Shade. Enter Shade($-\sqrt{36 - x^2}$, $\sqrt{36 - x}$, −6, 6, 3, 4).



The solution of the system is represented by the double-shaded area.



[−8, 8] scl: 1 by [−8, 8] scl: 1

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Solve each system of inequalities by graphing.

8. $2y^2 \leq 32 - 2x^2$
$x + 4 \geq y^2$

9. $y + 5 \geq x^2$
$9y^2 \leq 36 + x^2$

10. $x^2 + 4y^2 \leq 32$
$4x^2 + y^2 \leq 32$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 6-8 Parametric Equations

Then

- You modeled motion using quadratic functions.

Now

1. Graph parametric equations.
2. Solve problems related to the motion of projectiles.

Why?

- You have used quadratic functions to model the paths of projectiles such as a tennis ball. Parametric equations can also be used to model and evaluate the trajectory and range of projectiles.

NewVocabulary
parametric equation
parameter
orientation
parametric curve

1 Graph Parametric Equations

So far in this text, you have represented the graph of a curve in the xy-plane using a single equation involving two variables, x and y. In this lesson you represent some of these same graphs using two equations by introducing a third variable.

Consider the graphs below, each of which models different aspects of what happens when a certain object is thrown into the air. Figure 6.5.1 shows the vertical distance the object travels as a function of time, while Figure 6.5.2 shows the object's horizontal distance as a function of time. Figure 6.5.3 shows the object's vertical distance as a function of its horizontal distance.

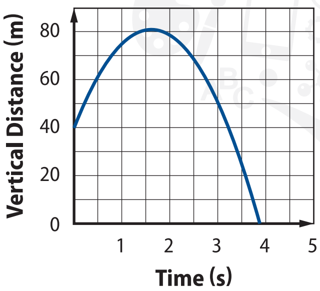


Figure 6.5.1

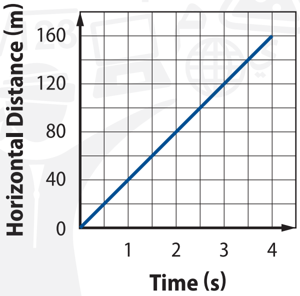


Figure 6.5.2

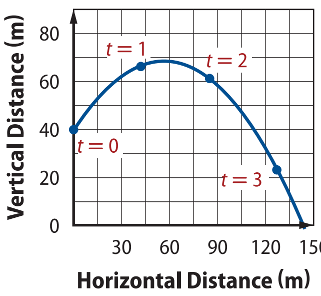


Figure 6.5.3

Each of these graphs and their equations tells part of what is happening in this situation, but not the whole story. To express the position of the object, both horizontally and vertically, as a function of time we can use **parametric equations**. The equations below both represent the graph shown in Figure 6.5.3.

Rectangular Equation

$y = -\frac{2}{225}x^2 + x + 40$

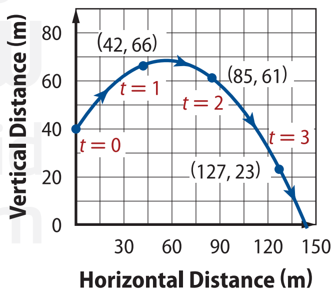
Parametric Equations

$x = 30\sqrt{2}t$ Horizontal component

$y = -16t^2 + 30\sqrt{2}t + 40$ Vertical component

From the parametric equations, we can now determine where the object was at a given time by evaluating the horizontal and vertical components for t. For example, when $t = 0$, the object was at $(0, 40)$. The variable t is called a **parameter**.

The graph shown is plotted over the time interval $0 \leq t \leq 4$. Plotting points in the order of increasing values of t traces the curve in a specific direction called the **orientation** of the curve. This orientation is indicated by arrows on the curve as shown.



KeyConcept Parametric Equations

If f and g are continuous functions of t on the interval I, then the set of ordered pairs $(f(t), g(t))$ represent a **parametric curve**. The equations

$$x = f(t) \text{ and } y = g(t)$$

are parametric equations for this curve, t is the parameter, and I is the parameter interval.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Kelly Redinger/Design Pics

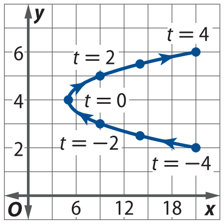
Example 1 Sketch Curves with Parametric Equations

Sketch the curve given by each pair of parametric equations over the given interval.

a. $x = t^2 + 5$ **and** $y = \frac{t}{2} + 4$; $-4 \le t \le 4$

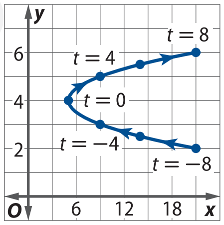
Make a table of values for $-4 \le t \le 4$. Then, plot the (x, y) coordinates for each t-value and connect the points to form a smooth curve. The arrows in the graph indicate the orientation of the curve as t moves from -4 to 4.

t	x	y	t	x	y
−4	21	2	1	6	4.5
−3	14	2.5	2	9	5
−2	9	3	3	14	5.5
−1	6	3.5	4	21	6
0	5	4			



b. $x = \frac{t^2}{4} + 5$ **and** $y = \frac{t}{4} + 4$; $-8 \le t \le 8$

t	x	y	t	x	y
−8	21	2	2	6	4.5
−6	14	2.5	4	9	5
−4	9	3	6	14	5.5
−2	6	3.5	8	21	6
0	5	4			



Guided Practice

1A. $x = 3t$ and $y = \sqrt{t} + 6$; $0 \le t \le 8$

1B. $x = t^2$ and $y = 2t + 3$; $-10 \le t \le 10$

Study Tip

Plane Curves Parametric equations can be used to represent curves that are not functions, as shown in Example 1.

Notice that the two different sets of parametric equations in Example 1 trace out the same curve. The graphs differ in their *speeds* or how rapidly each curve is traced out. If t represents time in seconds, then the curve in part **b** is traced in 16 seconds, while the curve in part **a** is traced out in 8 seconds.

Another way to determine the curve represented by a set of parametric equations is to write the set of equations in rectangular form. This can be done using substitution to eliminate the parameter.

Example 2 Write in Rectangular Form

Write $x = -3t$ and $y = t^2 + 2$ in rectangular form.

To eliminate the parameter t, solve $x = -3t$ for t. This yields $t = -\frac{1}{3}x$. Then substitute this value for t in the equation for y.

$y = t^2 + 2$ Equation for y

$= \left(-\frac{1}{3}x\right)^2 + 2$ Substitute $-\frac{1}{3}x$ for t.

$= \frac{1}{9}x^2 + 2$ Simplify.

This set of parametric equations yields the parabola $y = \frac{1}{9}x^2 + 2$.

Guided Practice

2. Write $x = t^2 - 5$ and $y = 4t$ in rectangular form.

Study Tip

Eliminating a Parameter When you are eliminating a parameter to convert to rectangular form, you can solve either of the parametric equations first.

In Example 2, notice that a parameter interval for t was not specified. When not specified, the implied parameter interval is all values for t which produce real number values for x and y.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Sometimes the domain must be restricted after converting from parametric to rectangular form.

Example 3 Rectangular Form with Domain Restrictions

Write $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}$ and $y = \frac{t+1}{t}$ in rectangular form. Then graph the equation. State any restrictions on the domain.

To eliminate t, square each side of $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}$. This yields $x^2 = \frac{1}{t}$, so $t = \frac{1}{x^2}$. Substitute this value for t in parametric equation for y.

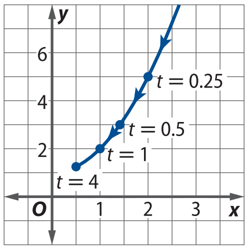
$$y = \frac{t+1}{t} \quad \text{Parametric equation for } y$$

$$= \frac{\frac{1}{x^2}+1}{\frac{1}{x^2}} \quad \text{Substitute } \frac{1}{x^2} \text{ for } t.$$

$$= \frac{\frac{x^2+1}{x^2}}{\frac{1}{x^2}} \quad \text{Simplify the numerator.}$$

$$= x^2 + 1 \quad \text{Simplify.}$$

While the rectangular equation is $y = x^2 + 1$, the curve is only defined for $t > 0$. From the parametric equation $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t}}$, the only possible values for x are values greater than zero. As shown in the graph, the domain of the rectangular equation needs to be restricted to $x > 0$.



GuidedPractice

3. Write $x = \sqrt{t+4}$ and $y = \frac{1}{t}$ in rectangular form. Graph the equation. State any restrictions on the domain.

The parameter in a parametric equation can also be an angle, θ.

Example 4 Rectangular Form with θ as Parameter

TechnologyTip

Parameters When graphing parametric equations on a calculator, θ and t are interchangeable.

Write $x = 2\cos\theta$ and $y = 4\sin\theta$ in rectangular form. Then graph the equation.

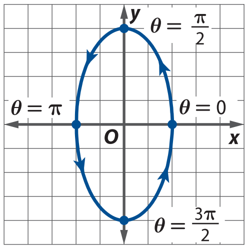
To eliminate the angular parameter θ, first solve the equations for $\cos\theta$ and $\sin\theta$ to obtain $\cos\theta = \frac{x}{2}$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{y}{4}$. Then use the Pythagorean Identity to eliminate the parameter θ.

$$\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta = 1 \quad \text{Pythagorean Identity}$$

$$\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{4}\right)^2 = 1 \quad \cos\theta = \frac{x}{2} \text{ and } \sin\theta = \frac{y}{4}$$

$$\frac{x^2}{4} + \frac{y^2}{16} = 1 \quad \text{Simplify.}$$

You should recognize this equation as that of an ellipse centered at the origin with vertices at $(0, 4)$ and $(0, -4)$ and covertices at $(2, 0)$ and $(-2, 0)$ as shown. As θ varies from 0 to 2π, the ellipse is traced out counterclockwise.



GuidedPractice

4. Write $x = 3\sin\theta$ and $y = 8\cos\theta$ in rectangular form. Then sketch the graph.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

As you saw in Example 1, parametric representations of rectangular graphs are not unique. By varying the definition for the parameter, you can obtain parametric equations that produce graphs that vary only in speed and/or orientation.

> **StudyTip**
> **Parametric Form** The easiest method of converting an equation from rectangular to parametric form is to use $x = t$. When this is done, the other parametric equation is the original equation with t replacing x.

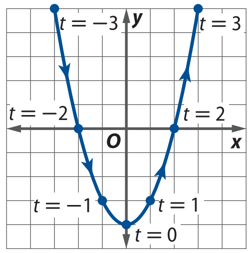
Example 5 Write Parametric Equations from Graphs

Use each parameter to write the parametric equations that can represent $y = x^2 - 4$. Then graph the equation, indicating the speed and orientation.

a. $t = x$

$y = x^2 - 4$	Original equation
$= t^2 - 4$	Substitute for x in original equation.

The parametric equations are $x = t$ and $y = t^2 - 4$. The associated speed and orientation are indicated on the graph.

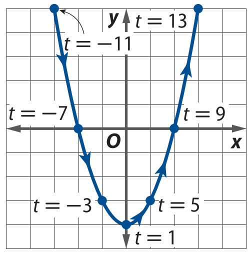


b. $t = 4x + 1$

$x = \frac{t-1}{4}$	Solve for x.
$y = \left(\frac{t-1}{4}\right)^2 - 4$	Substitute for x in original equation.
$= \frac{t^2}{16} - \frac{t}{8} - \frac{63}{16}$	Simplify.

$x = \frac{t-1}{4}$ and $y = \frac{t^2}{16} - \frac{t}{8} - \frac{63}{16}$ are the parametric equations.

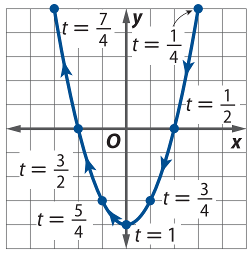
Notice that the speed is much slower than part **a**.



c. $t = 1 - \frac{x}{4}$

$4 - 4t = x$	Solve for x.
$y = (4 - 4t)^2 - 4$	Substitute for x in original equation.
$= 16t^2 - 32t + 12$	Simplify.

The parametric equations are $x = 4 - 4t$ and $y = 16t^2 - 32t + 12$. Notice that the speed is much faster than part **a**. The orientation is also reversed, as indicated by the arrows.



GuidedPractice

Use each parameter to determine the parametric equations that can represent $x = 6 - y^2$. Then graph the equation, indicating the speed and orientation.

5A. $t = x + 1$ **5B.** $t = 3x$ **5C.** $t = 4 - 2x$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

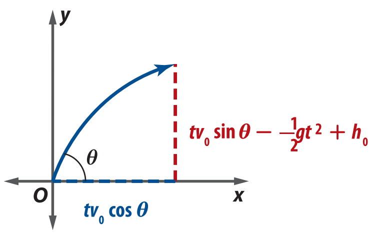
2 Projectile Motion

Projectile Motion Parametric equations are often used to simulate projectile motion. The path of a projectile launched at an angle other than 90° with the horizontal can be modeled by the following parametric equations.

KeyConcept Projectile Motion

For an object launched at an angle θ with the horizontal at an initial velocity v_0, where g is the gravitational constant, t is time, and h_0 is the initial height:

Horizontal Distance	$x = tv_0 \cos\theta$
Vertical Position	$y = tv_0 \sin\theta - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + h_0$

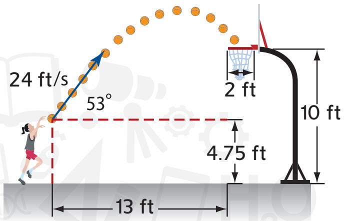


Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Real-World Example 6 Projectile Motion

BASKETBALL **Khadija is practicing free throws for an upcoming basketball game. She releases the ball with an initial velocity of 24 feet per second at an angle of 53° with the horizontal. The horizontal distance from the free throw line to the front rim of the basket is 13 feet. The vertical distance from the floor to the rim is 10 feet. The front of the rim is 2 feet from the backboard. She releases the shot 4.75 feet from the ground. Does Khadija make the basket?**

Make a diagram of the situation.

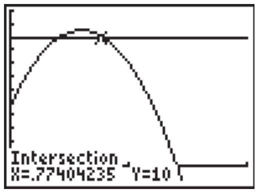


To determine whether she makes the shot, you need the horizontal distance that the ball has traveled when the height of the ball is 10 feet. First, write a parametric equation for the vertical position of the ball.

$y = tv_0 \sin\theta - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + h_0$ — Parametric equation for vertical position

$\quad = t(24)\sin 53 - \frac{1}{2}(32)t^2 + 4.75$ — $v_0 = 24$, $\theta = 53°$, $g = 32$, and $h_0 = 4.75$

Graph the equation for the vertical position and the line $y = 10$. The curve will intersect the line in two places. The second intersection represents the ball as it is moving down toward the basket. Use 5: intersect on the CALC menu to find the second point of intersection with $y = 10$. The value is about 0.77 second.



[0, 2] scl: 1 by [0, 12] scl: 1

Determine the horizontal position of the ball at 0.77 second.

$x = tv_0 \cos\theta$ — Parametric equation for horizontal position

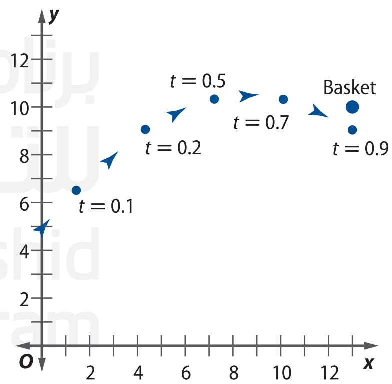
$\quad = 0.77(24)\cos 53$ — $v_0 = 24$, $\theta = 53°$, and $t \approx 0.77$

$\quad \approx 11.1$ — Use a calculator.

Because the horizontal position is less than 13 feet when the ball reaches 10 feet for the second time, the shot is short of the basket. Khadija does not make the free throw.

CHECK You can confirm the results of your calculation by graphing the parametric equations and determining the path of the ball in relation to the basket.

t	x	y	t	x	y
0	0	4.75	0.5	7.22	10.33
0.1	1.44	6.51	0.6	8.67	10.49
0.2	2.89	7.94	0.7	10.11	10.32
0.3	4.33	9.06	0.8	11.55	9.84
0.4	5.78	9.86	0.9	13.00	9.04

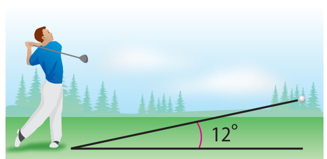


StudyTip

Gravity At the surface of Earth, the acceleration due to gravity is 9.8 meters per second squared or 32 feet per second squared. When solving problems, be sure to use the appropriate value for gravity based on the units of the velocity and position.

GuidedPractice

6. **GOLF** Saeed drives a golf ball with an initial velocity of 56 meters per second at an angle of 12° down a flat driving range. How far away will the golf ball land?



Real-WorldLink

In April 2007, Morgan Pressel became the youngest woman ever to win a major LPGA championship.

Source: *LPGA*

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Sketch the curve given by each pair of parametric equations over the given interval. (Example 1)

1. $x = t^2 + 3$ and $y = \frac{t}{4} - 5$; $-5 \le t \le 5$
2. $x = \frac{t^2}{2}$ and $y = -4t$; $-4 \le t \le 4$
3. $x = -\frac{5t}{2} + 4$ and $y = t^2 - 8$; $-6 \le t \le 6$
4. $x = 3t + 6$ and $y = \sqrt{t} + 1$; $0 \le t \le 9$
5. $x = 2t - 1$ and $y = -\frac{t^2}{2} + 7$; $-4 \le t \le 4$
6. $x = -2t^2$ and $y = \frac{t}{3} - 6$; $-6 \le t \le 6$
7. $x = \frac{t}{2}$ and $y = -\sqrt{t} + 5$; $0 \le t \le 8$
8. $x = t^2 - 4$ and $y = 3t - 8$; $-5 \le t \le 5$

Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form. Then graph the equation and state any restrictions on the domain. (Examples 2 and 3)

9. $x = 2t - 5$, $y = t^2 + 4$
10. $x = 3t + 9$, $y = t^2 - 7$
11. $x = t^2 - 2$, $y = 5t$
12. $x = t^2 + 1$, $y = -4t + 3$
13. $x = -t - 4$, $y = 3t^2$
14. $x = 5t - 1$, $y = 2t^2 + 8$
15. $x = 4t^2$, $y = \frac{6t}{5} + 9$
16. $x = \frac{t}{3} + 2$, $y = \frac{t^2}{6} - 7$

17. **MOVIE STUNTS** During the filming of a movie, a stunt double leaps off the side of a building. The pulley system connected to the stunt double allows for a vertical fall modeled by $y = -16t^2 + 15t + 100$, and a horizontal movement modeled by $x = 4t$, where x and y are measured in feet and t is measured in seconds. Write and graph an equation in rectangular form to model the stunt double's fall for $0 \le t \le 3$. (Example 3)

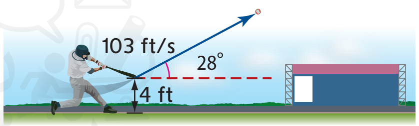
Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form. Then graph the equation. (Example 4)

18. $x = 3 \cos \theta$ and $y = 5 \sin \theta$
19. $x = 7 \sin \theta$ and $y = 2 \cos \theta$
20. $x = 6 \cos \theta$ and $y = 4 \sin \theta$
21. $x = 3 \cos \theta$ and $y = 3 \sin \theta$
22. $x = 8 \sin \theta$ and $y = \cos \theta$
23. $x = 5 \cos \theta$ and $y = 6 \sin \theta$
24. $x = 10 \sin \theta$ and $y = 9 \cos \theta$
25. $x = \sin \theta$ and $y = 7 \cos \theta$

Use each parameter to write the parametric equations that can represent each equation. Then graph the equations, indicating the speed and orientation. (Example 5)

26. $t = 3x - 2$; $y = x^2 + 9$
27. $t = 8x$; $y^2 = 9 - x^2$
28. $t = 2 - \frac{x}{3}$; $y = \frac{x^2}{12}$
29. $t = \frac{x}{5} + 4$; $y = 10 - x^2$
30. $t = 4x + 7$; $y = \frac{x^2 - 1}{2}$
31. $t = \frac{1 - x}{2}$; $y = \frac{3 - x^2}{4}$

32. **BASEBALL** A baseball player hits the ball at a 28° angle with an initial speed of 103 feet per second. The bat is 4 feet from the ground at the time of impact. Assuming that the ball is not caught, determine the distance traveled by the ball. (Example 6)



33. **PLAY BALL** Obaid attempts a 43-yard goal. He kicks the ball at a 41° angle with an initial speed of 70 feet per second. The goal is 15 feet high. Is the kick long enough to make the goal? (Example 6)

Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form. Then state the restriction on the domain.

34. $x = \sqrt{t} + 4$
    $y = 4t + 3$
35. $x = \log t$
    $y = t + 3$
36. $x = \sqrt{t - 7}$
    $y = -3t - 8$
37. $x = \log (t - 4)$
    $y = t$
38. $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{t + 3}}$
    $y = t$
39. $x = \frac{1}{\log (t + 2)}$
    $y = 2t - 4$

40. **TENNIS** Mazen hits a tennis ball 55 centimeters above the ground at an angle of 15° with the horizontal. The ball has an initial speed of 18 meters per second.
    a. Use a graphing calculator to graph the path of the tennis ball using parametric equations.
    b. How long does the ball stay in the air before hitting the ground?
    c. If Mazen is 10 meters from the net and the net is 1.5 meters above the ground, will the tennis ball clear the net? If so, by how many meters? If not, by how many meters is the ball short?

Write a set of parametric equations for the line or line segment with the given characteristics.

41. line with a slope of 3 that passes through (4, 7)
42. line with a slope of -0.5 that passes through $(3, -2)$
43. line segment with endpoints $(-2, -6)$ and $(2, 10)$
44. line segment with endpoints (7, 13) and (13, 11)

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Match each set of parametric equations with its graph.

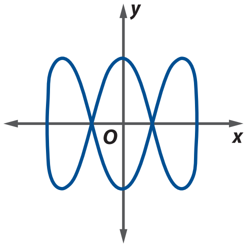
45. $x = \cos 2t$, $y = \sin 4t$

46. $x = \cos 3t$, $y = \sin t$

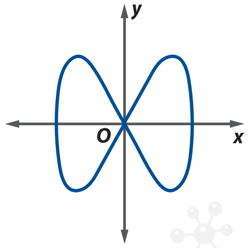
47. $x = \cos t$, $y = \sin 3t$

48. $x = \cos 4t$, $y = \sin 3t$

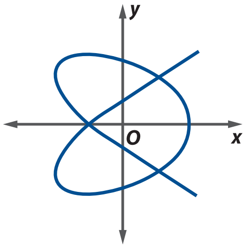
a.



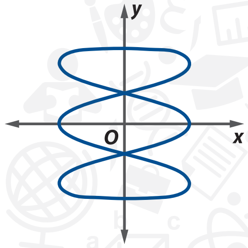
b.



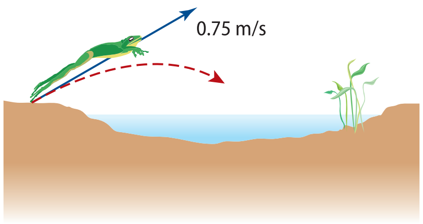
c.



d.



49. BIOLOGY A frog jumps off the bank of a creek with an initial velocity of 0.75 meter per second at an angle of 45° with the horizontal. The surface of the creek is 0.3 meter below the edge of the bank. Let g equal 9.8 meters per second squared.



a. Write the parametric equations to describe the position of the frog at time t. Assume that the surface of the water is located at the line $y = 0$.

b. If the creek is 0.5 meter wide, will the frog reach the other bank, which is level with the surface of the creek? If not, how far from the other bank will it hit the water?

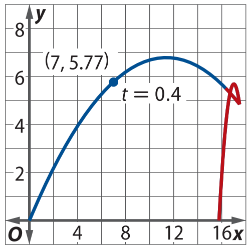
c. If the frog was able to jump on a lily pad resting on the surface of the creek 0.4 meter away and stayed in the air for 0.38 second, what was the initial speed of the frog?

50. RACE Hala and Hidaya are competing in a 100-meter dash. When the starter gun fires, Hala runs 8.0 meters per second after a 0.1 second delay from the point (0, 2) and Hidaya runs 8.1 meters per second after a 0.3 second delay from the point (0, 5).

a. Using the y-axis as the starting line and assuming that the women run parallel to the x-axis, write parametric equations to describe each runner's position after t seconds.

b. Who wins the race? If the women ran 200 meters instead of 100 meters, who would win? Explain your answer.

51. FOOTBALL The graph below models the path of a football kicked by one player and then headed back by another player. The path of the initial kick is shown in blue, and the path of the headed ball is shown in red.



a. If the ball is initially kicked at an angle of 50°, find the initial speed of the ball.

b. At what time does the ball reach the second player if the second player is standing about 17.5 feet away?

c. If the second player heads the ball at an angle of 75°, an initial speed of 8 feet per second, and at a height of 4.75 feet, approximately how long does the ball stay in the air from the time it is first kicked until it lands?

52. MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS In this problem, you will investigate a *cycloid*, the curve created by the path of a point on a circle with a radius of 1 unit as it is rolled along the x-axis.

a. GRAPHICAL Use a graphing calculator to graph the parametric equations $x = t - \sin t$ and $y = 1 - \cos t$, where t is measured in radians.

b. ANALYTICAL What is the distance between x-intercepts? Describe what the x-intercepts and the distance between them represent.

c. ANALYTICAL What is the maximum value of y? Describe what this value represents and how it would change for circles of differing radii.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

53. CHALLENGE Consider a line ℓ with parametric equations $x = 2 + 3t$ and $y = -t + 5$. Write a set of parametric equations for the line m perpendicular to ℓ containing the point (4, 10).

54. WRITING IN MATH Explain why there are infinitely many sets of parametric equations to describe one line in the xy-plane.

55. REASONING Determine whether parametric equations for projectile motion can apply to objects thrown at an angle of 90°. Explain your reasoning.

56. CHALLENGE A line in three-dimensional space contains the points $P(2, 3, -8)$ and $Q(-1, 5, -4)$. Find two sets of parametric equations for the line.

57. WRITING IN MATH Explain the advantage of using parametric equations versus rectangular equations when analyzing the horizontal/vertical components of a graph.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Graph each equation at the indicated angle.

58. $\frac{(x')^2}{9} - \frac{(y')^2}{4} = 1$ at a 60° rotation from the xy-axis

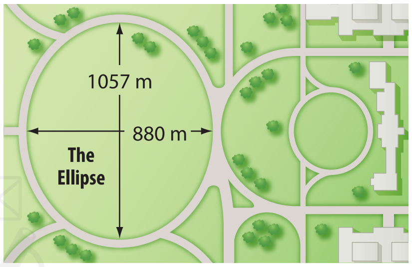
59. $(x')^2 - (y')^2 = 1$ at a 45° rotation from the xy-axis

Write an equation for the hyperbola with the given characteristics.

60. vertices (5, 4), (5, −8); conjugate axis length of 4

61. transverse axis length of 4; foci (3, 5), (3, −1)

62. **WHITE HOUSE** There is an open area known as The Ellipse. Write an equation to model The Ellipse. Assume that the origin is at its center.



Simplify each expression.

63. $\frac{\sin x}{\csc x - 1} + \frac{\sin x}{\csc x + 1}$

64. $\frac{1}{1 - \cos x} + \frac{1}{1 + \cos x}$

Use the properties of logarithms to rewrite each logarithm below in the form $a \ln 2 + b \ln 3$, where a and b are constants. Then approximate the value of each logarithm given that $\ln 2 \approx 0.69$ and $\ln 3 \approx 1.10$.

65. $\ln 54$

66. $\ln 24$

67. $\ln \frac{8}{3}$

68. $\ln \frac{9}{16}$

For each function, determine any asymptotes and intercepts. Then graph the function and state its domain.

69. $h(x) = \frac{x}{x + 6}$

70. $h(x) = \frac{x^2 + 6x + 8}{x^2 - 7x - 8}$

71. $f(x) = \frac{x^2 + 8x}{x + 5}$

72. $f(x) = \frac{x^2 + 4x + 3}{x^3 + x^2 - 6x}$

Solve each equation.

73. $\sqrt{3z - 5} - 3 = 1$

74. $\sqrt{5n - 1} = 0$

75. $\sqrt{2c + 3} - 7 = 0$

76. $\sqrt{4a + 8} + 8 = 5$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

77. **SAT/ACT** With the exception of the shaded squares, every square in the figure contains the sum of the number in the square directly above it and the number in the square directly to its left. For example, the number 4 in the unshaded square is the sum of the 2 in the square above it and the 2 in the square directly to its left. What is the value of x?

0	1	2	3	4	5
1	2	4			
2					
3			x		
4					
5					

A 7 **B** 8 **C** 15 **D** 23 **E** 30

78. Saleh and Sultan are performing a physics experiment in which they will launch a model rocket. The rocket is supposed to release a parachute 91.5 meters in the air, 7 seconds after liftoff. They are firing the rocket at a 78° angle from the horizontal. To protect other students from the falling rockets, the teacher needs to place warning signs 45.7 meters from where the parachute is released. How far should the signs be from the point where the rockets are launched?

F 111.6 meters

G 116.2 meters

H 121.6 meters

J 126.2 meters

79. **FREE RESPONSE** An object moves along a curve according to $y = \frac{10\sqrt{3t} \pm \sqrt{496 - 2304t}}{62}$, $x = \sqrt{t}$.

a. Convert the parametric equations to rectangular form.

b. Identify the conic section represented by the curve.

c. Write an equation for the curve in the $x'y'$-plane, assuming it was rotated 30°.

d. Determine the eccentricity of the conic.

e. Identify the location of the foci in the $x'y'$-plane, if they exist.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

EXTEND 6-8

Graphing Technology Lab
Modeling with Parametric Equations

Objective

- Use a graphing calculator to model functions parametrically.

As shown in Lesson 6-5, the independent variable t in parametric equations represents time. This parameter reflects the speed with which the graph is drawn. If one graph is completed for $0 \leq t \leq 5$, while an identical graph is completed for $0 \leq t \leq 10$, then the first graph is faster.

Activity Parametric Graph

PLAY BALL Standing side by side, Noura and her brother Omar throw a ball at exactly the same time. Noura throws the ball with an initial velocity of 20 meters per second at 60°. Omar throws the ball 15 meters per second at 45°. Assuming that the balls were thrown from the same initial height, simulate the throws on a graphing calculator.

Step 1 The parametric equations for each throw are as follows.

Neva: $x = 20t \cos 60 = 10t$ $\quad y = 20t \sin 60 - 4.9t^2 = 10\sqrt{3}t - 4.9t^2$

Owen: $x = 15t \cos 45 = 7.5\sqrt{2}t$ $\quad y = 15t \sin 45 - 4.9t^2 = 7.5\sqrt{2}t - 4.9t^2$

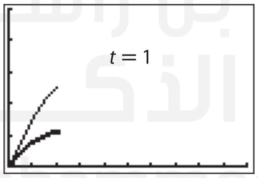
Step 2 Set the mode. In the MODE menu, select degree, par, and simul. This allows the equations to be graphed simultaneously. Enter the parametric equations. In parametric form, X,T,θ,n uses t instead of x. Set the second set of equations to shade dark to distinguish between the throws.

```
NORMAL SCI ENG
FLOAT 0123456789
RADIAN DEGREE
FUNC PAR POL SEQ
CONNECTED DOT
SEQUENTIAL SIMUL
REAL a+bi re^θi
FULL HORIZ G-T
SET CLOCK 12/04/08 3:08PM
```

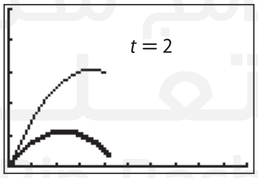
```
Plot1 Plot2 Plot3
\X1T=10T
 Y1T=10√(3)T-4.9
T²
\X2T=7.5√(2)T
 Y2T=7.5√(2)T-4.
9T²
\X3T=
```

Step 3 Set the t-values to range from 0 to 8 as an estimate for the duration of the throws. Set tstep to 0.1 in order to watch the throws in the graph.

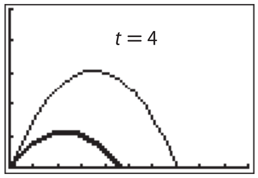
Step 4 Graph the equations.



[0, 50] scl: 5 by [0, 25] scl: 5



[0, 50] scl: 5 by [0, 25] scl: 5



[0, 50] scl: 5 by [0, 25] scl: 5

Noura's throw goes higher and at a greater distance while Omar's lands first.

Exercises

1. **PLAY BALL** Omar's next throw is 21 meters per second at 50°. A second later, Noura throws her ball 24 meters per second at 35°. Simulate the throws on a graphing calculator and interpret the results.

2. **BASEBALL** Noura throws a baseball 27 meters per second at 82°. A second later, Omar hits a ball 45 meters per second at 20°. Assuming they are still side by side and the initial height of the hit is one meter lower, simulate the situation on a graphing calculator and interpret the results.

StudyTip

Setting Parameters Use the situation in the problem as a guide for setting the range of values for x, y, and t.

1.
[0, 60] scl: 5 by [0, 25] scl: 5; t[0, 8]; tscl: 0.1

Sample answer: At $t = 2.5$ seconds, the balls are about the same height. At about $t = 3.25$ seconds, Noura's throw has traveled the same horizontal distance as Omar's. At $t = 3.5$, Omar's has already landed while Noura's is still in the air.

2.
[0, 125] scl: 5 by [0, 50] scl: 5; t[0, 8]; tscl: 0.1

Sample answer: Noura's throw goes much higher than Omar's hit. Both the throw and hit reach their maximum height near $t = 2.5$. The hit lands a full second before the throw.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Study Guide and Review

Study Guide

KeyConcepts

Midpoint and Distance Formulas (Lesson 6-1)

- $M = \left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$
- $d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$

Parabolas (Lesson 6-2)

- Standard Form: $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$
  $x = a(y - k)^2 + h$

Circles (Lesson 6-3)

- The equation of a circle with center (h, k) and radius r can be written in the form $(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 = r^2$.

Ellipses (Lesson 6-4)

- Standard Form: horizontal $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$
  vertical $\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$

Hyperbolas (Lesson 6-5)

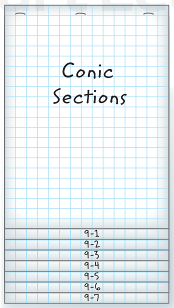
- Standard Form: horizontal $\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$
  vertical $\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$

Solving Linear-Nonlinear Systems (Lesson 6-7)

- Systems of quadratic equations can be solved using substitution and elimination.
- A system of quadratic equations can have zero, one, two, three, or four solutions.

FOLDABLES® StudyOrganizer

Be sure the Key Concepts are noted in your Foldable.



KeyVocabulary

center (of a circle)	foci (of an ellipse)
center (of an ellipse)	focus
circle	hyperbola
conjugate axis	latus rectum
constant difference	major axis
constant sum	minor axis
co-vertices (of a hyperbola)	parabola
co-vertices (of an ellipse)	radius
directrix	transverse axis
ellipse	vertices (of a hyperbola)
foci (of a hyperbola)	vertices (of an ellipse)

VocabularyCheck

State whether each sentence is *true* or *false*. If *false*, replace the underlined term to make a true sentence.

1. The set of all points in a plane that are equidistant from a given point in the plane, called the focus, forms a circle.
2. A(n) ellipse is the set of all points in a plane such that the sum of the distances from the two fixed points is constant.
3. The endpoints of the major axis of an ellipse are the foci of the ellipse.
4. The radius is the distance from the center of a circle to any point on the circle.
5. The line segment with endpoints on a parabola, through the focus of the parabola, and perpendicular to the axis of symmetry is called the latus rectum.
6. Every hyperbola has two axes of symmetry, the transverse axis and the major axis.
7. A directrix is the set of all points in a plane that are equidistant from a given point in the plane, called the center.
8. A hyperbola is the set of all points in a plane such that the absolute value of the sum of the distances from any point on the hyperbola to two given points is constant.
9. A parabola can be defined as the set of all points in a plane that are the same distance from the focus and a given line called the directrix.
10. The major axis is the longer of the two axes of symmetry of an ellipse.
11. The equation for a graph can be written using the variables x and y, or using ________ equations, generalluy using t or the angle θ.
12. The graph of $f(t) = (\sin t, \cos t)$ is a _______ with a shape that is circle traced clockwise.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Lesson-by-Lesson Review

6-1 Parabolas

Graph each equation.

13. $y = 3x^2 + 24x - 10$

14. $x = \frac{1}{2}y^2 - 4y + 3$

15. $3y - x^2 = 8x - 11$

16. $x = y^2 - 14y + 25$

Write each equation in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.

17. $y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$

18. $x - 6y = y^2 + 4$

19. $y = 4x^2 - 16x + 9$

20. $x = y^2 + 14y + 20$

21. **SPORTS** When a football is kicked, the path it travels is shaped like a parabola. Suppose a football is kicked from ground level, reaches a maximum height of 50 feet, and lands 200 feet away. Assuming the football was kicked at the origin, write an equation of the parabola that models the flight of the football.

Example 1

Write $3y - x^2 = 4x + 7$ in standard form. Identify the vertex, axis of symmetry, and direction of opening of the parabola.

Write the equation in the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ by completing the square.

$3y = x^2 + 4x + 7$ — Isolate the terms with x.

$3y = (x^2 + 4x + \blacksquare) + 7 - \blacksquare$ — Complete the square.

$3y = (x^2 + 4x + 4) + 7 - 4$ — $\left(\frac{4}{2}\right)^2 = 4$

$3y = (x + 2)^2 + 3$ — $(x^2 + 4x + 4) = (x + 2)$

$y = \frac{1}{3}(x + 2)^2 + 1$ — Divide each side by 3.

Vertex: $(-2, 1)$; axis of symmetry: $x = -2$; direction of opening: upward since $a > 0$.

6-2 Circles

Write an equation for the circle that satisfies each set of conditions.

22. center $(-1, 6)$, radius 3 units

23. endpoints of a diameter $(2, 5)$ and $(0, 0)$

24. endpoints of a diameter $(4, -2)$ and $(-2, -6)$

Find the center and radius of each circle. Then graph the circle.

25. $(x + 5)^2 + y^2 = 9$

26. $(x - 3)^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 25$

27. $(x + 2)^2 + (y - 8)^2 = 1$

28. $x^2 + 4x + y^2 - 2y - 11 = 0$

29. **SOUND** A loudspeaker in a school is located at the point (65, 40). The speaker can be heard in a circle with a radius of 30.5 meters. Write an equation to represent the possible boundary of the loudspeaker sound.

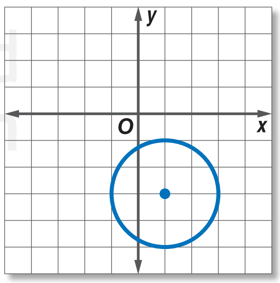
Example 2

Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $x^2 - 2x + y^2 + 6y + 6 = 0$. Then graph the circle.

Complete the squares.

$$x^2 - 2x + y^2 + 6y + 6 = 0$$
$$(x^2 - 2x + \blacksquare) + (y^2 + 6y + \blacksquare) = -6 + \blacksquare + \blacksquare$$
$$(x^2 - 2x + 1) + (y^2 + 6y + 9) = -6 + 1 + 9$$
$$(x - 1)^2 + (y + 3)^2 = 4$$

The center of the circle is at $(1, -3)$ and the radius is 2.



Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

6-3 Ellipses

Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes for the ellipse with the given equation. Then graph the ellipse.

30. $\frac{x^2}{9} + \frac{y^2}{36} = 1$

31. $\frac{y^2}{10} + \frac{x^2}{5} = 1$

32. $\frac{x^2}{36} + \frac{(y-4)^2}{4} = 1$

33. $27x^2 + 9y^2 = 81$

34. $\frac{(x+1)^2}{25} + \frac{(y-2)^2}{16} = 1$

35. $9x^2 + 4y^2 + 54x - 8y + 49 = 0$

36. $9x^2 + 25y^2 - 18x + 50y - 191 = 0$

37. $7x^2 + 3y^2 - 28x - 12y = -19$

38. **LANDSCAPING** Saeed's family has a garden in their front yard that is shaped like an ellipse. The major axis is 16 meters and the minor axis is 10 meters. Write an equation to model the garden. Assume the origin is at the center of the garden and the major axis is horizontal.

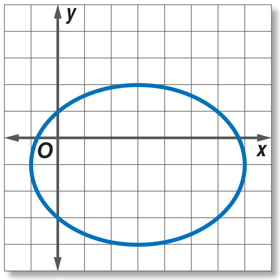
Example 3

Find the coordinates of the center and foci and the lengths of the major and minor axes for the ellipse with equation $9x^2 + 16y^2 - 54x + 32y - 47 = 0$. Then graph the ellipse.

First, convert to standard form.

$$9x^2 + 16y^2 - 54x + 32y - 47 = 0$$
$$9(x^2 - 6x + {\color{red}\blacksquare}) + 16(y^2 + 2y + {\color{blue}\blacksquare}) = 47 + 9({\color{red}\blacksquare}) + 16({\color{blue}\blacksquare})$$
$$9(x^2 - 6x + {\color{red}9}) + 16(y^2 + 2y + {\color{blue}1}) = 47 + 9({\color{red}9}) + 16({\color{blue}1})$$
$$9(x-3)^2 + 16(y+1)^2 = 144$$
$$\frac{(x-3)^2}{16} + \frac{(y+1)^2}{9} = 1$$

The center of the ellipse is $(3, -1)$. The ellipse is horizontal. $a^2 = 16$, so $a = 4$. $b^2 = 9$, so $b = 3$. The length of the major axis is $2 \cdot 4$ or 8. The length of the minor axis is $2 \cdot 3$ or 6. To find the foci: $c^2 = 16 - 9$ or 7, so $c = \sqrt{7}$. The foci are $\left(3 + \sqrt{7}, -1\right)$ and $\left(3 - \sqrt{7}, -1\right)$.



6-4 Hyperbolas

Graph each hyperbola. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.

39. $\frac{y^2}{9} - \frac{x^2}{4} = 1$

40. $\frac{(x-3)^2}{1} - \frac{(y+2)^2}{4} = 1$

41. $\frac{(y+1)^2}{16} - \frac{(x-4)^2}{9} = 1$

42. $4x^2 - 9y^2 = 36$

43. $9y^2 - x^2 - 4x + 18y + 4 = 0$

44. **MIRRORS** A hyperbolic mirror is shaped like one branch of a hyperbola. It reflects light rays directed at one focus toward the other focus. Suppose a hyperbolic mirror is modeled by the upper branch of the hyperbola $\frac{y^2}{9} - \frac{x^2}{16} = 1$. A light source is located at $(-10, 0)$. Where should the light hit the mirror so that the light will be reflected to $(0, -5)$?

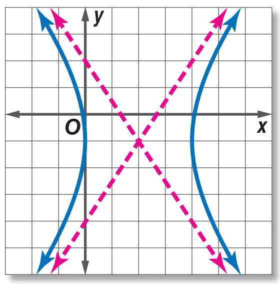
Example 4

Graph $9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36x - 8y - 4 = 0$. Identify the vertices, foci, and asymptotes.

Complete the square.

$$9x^2 - 4y^2 - 36x - 8y - 4 = 0$$
$$9(x^2 - 4x + {\color{red}\blacksquare}) - 4(y^2 + 2y + {\color{blue}\blacksquare}) = 4 + 9({\color{red}\blacksquare}) - 4({\color{blue}\blacksquare})$$
$$9(x^2 - 4x + {\color{red}4}) - 4(y^2 + 2y + {\color{blue}1}) = 4 + 9({\color{red}4}) - 4({\color{blue}1})$$
$$9(x-2)^2 - 4(y+1)^2 = 36$$
$$\frac{(x-2)^2}{4} - \frac{(y+1)^2}{9} = 1$$

The center is at $(2, -1)$. The vertices are at $(0, -1)$ and $(4, -1)$. The foci are at $\left(2 + \sqrt{13}, -1\right)$ and $\left(2 - \sqrt{13}, -1\right)$. The equations of the asymptotes are $y + 1 = \pm\frac{3}{2}(x - 2)$



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 6 Study Guide and Review *Continued*

6-5 Identifying Conic Sections

Write each equation in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola, circle, ellipse,* or *hyperbola*. Then graph.

45. $3x^2 + 12x - y + 8 = 0$

46. $9x^2 + 16y^2 = 144$

47. $x^2 + y^2 - 8x - 2y + 8 = 0$

48. $-9x^2 + y^2 + 36x - 45 = 0$

Without writing the equation in standard form, state whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola, circle, ellipse,* or *hyperbola*.

49. $7x^2 + 9y^2 = 63$

50. $5y^2 + 2y + 4x - 13x^2 = 81$

51. $x^2 - 8x + 16 = 6y$

52. $x^2 + 4x + y^2 - 285 = 0$

53. **LIGHT** Suppose the edge of a shadow can be represented by the equation $16x^2 + 25y^2 - 32x - 100y - 284 = 0$.

a. What is the shape of the shadow?

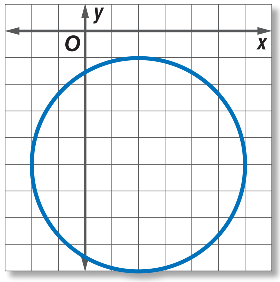
b. Graph the equation.

Example 5

Write $3x^2 + 3y^2 - 12x + 30y + 39 = 0$ in standard form. State whether the graph of the equation is a *parabola, circle, ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.

$$3x^2 + 3y^2 - 12x + 30y + 39 = 0$$
$$3(x^2 - 4x + \blacksquare) + 3(y^2 + 10y + \blacksquare) = -39 + 3(\blacksquare) + 3(\blacksquare)$$
$$3(x^2 - 4x + 4) + 3(y^2 + 10y + 25) = -39 + 3(4) + 3(25)$$
$$3(x - 2)^2 + 3(y + 5)^2 = 48$$
$$(x - 2)^2 + (y + 5)^2 = 16$$

In this equation $A = 3$ and $C = 3$. Since A and C are both positive and $A = C$, the graph is a circle. The center is at $(2, -5)$, and the radius is 4.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

6-6 Solving Linear-Nonlinear Systems

Solve each system of equations.

54. $x^2 + y^2 = 8$
$x + y = 0$

55. $x - 2y = 2$
$y^2 - x^2 = 2x + 4$

56. $y + x^2 = 4x$
$y + 4x = 16$

57. $3x^2 - y^2 = 11$
$x^2 + 4y^2 = 8$

58. $5x^2 + y^2 = 30$
$9x^2 - y^2 = -16$

59. $\frac{x^2}{30} + \frac{y^2}{6} = 1$
$x = y$

60. **PHYSICAL SCIENCE** Two balls are launched into the air at the same time. The heights they are launched from are different. The height y in feet of one is represented by $y = -16t^2 + 80t + 25$ where t is the time in seconds. The height of the other ball is represented by $y = -16t^2 + 30t + 100$.

a. After how many seconds are the balls at the same height?

b. What is this height?

61. **ARCHITECTURE** An architect is building the front entrance of a building in the shape of a parabola with the equation $y = -\frac{1}{10}(x - 10)^2 + 20$. While the entrance is being built, the construction team puts in two support beams with equations $y = -x + 10$ and $y = x - 10$. Where do the support beams meet the parabola?

Solve each system of inequalities by graphing.

62. $x^2 + y^2 < 64$
$x^2 + 16(y - 3)^2 < 16$

63. $x^2 + y^2 < 49$
$16x^2 - 9y^2 \geq 144$

64. $x + y < 4$
$9x^2 - 4y^2 \geq 36$

65. $x^2 + y^2 < 25$
$4x^2 - 9y^2 < 36$

66. $x^2 + y^2 < 36$
$4x^2 + 9y^2 > 36$

67. $y^2 < x$
$x^2 - 4y^2 < 16$

Example 6

Solve the system of equations.

$x^2 + y^2 = 100$
$3x - y = 10$

Use substitution to solve the system.

First, rewrite $3x - y = 10$ as $y = 3x - 10$.

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 &= 100 \\ x^2 + (3x - 10)^2 &= 100 \\ x^2 + 9x^2 - 60x + 100 &= 100 \\ 10x^2 - 60x + 100 &= 100 \\ 10x^2 - 60x &= 0 \\ 10x(x - 6) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$10x = 0$ or $x - 6 = 0$
$x = 0$ $\quad$ $x = 6$

Now solve for y.

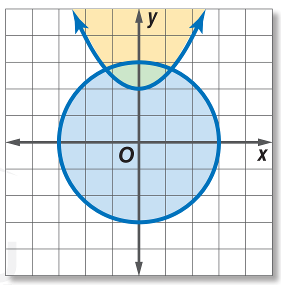
$$\begin{aligned} y &= 3x - 10 \\ &= 3(0) - 10 \\ &= -10 \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} y &= 3x - 10 \\ &= 3(6) - 10 \\ &= 8 \end{aligned}$$

The solutions of the system are $(0, -10)$ and $(6, 8)$.

Example 7

Solve the system of inequalities by graphing.

$x^2 + y^2 \leq 9$
$2y \geq x^2 + 4$



The solution is the green shaded region.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Study Guide and Review *Continued*

6-7 Rotations of Conic Sections

Use a graphing calculator to graph the conic given by each equation.

68. $x^2 - 4xy + y^2 - 2y - 2x = 0$

69. $x^2 - 3xy + y^2 - 3y - 6x + 5 = 0$

70. $2x^2 + 2y^2 - 8xy + 4 = 0$

71. $3x^2 + 9xy + y^2 = 0$

72. $4x^2 - 2xy + 8y^2 - 7 = 0$

Write each equation in the $x'y'$-plane for the given value of θ. Then identify the conic.

73. $x^2 + y^2 = 4;\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$

74. $x^2 - 2x + y = 5;\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$

75. $x^2 - 4y^2 = 4;\ \theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$

76. $9x^2 + 4y^2 = 36;\ \theta = 90°$

Example 8

Use a graphing calculator to graph $x^2 + 2xy + y^2 + 4x - 2y = 0$.

$x^2 + 2xy + y^2 + 4x - 2y = 0$ Original equation

$1y^2 + (2x - 2)y + (x^2 + 4x) = 0$ Quadratic form

Use the Quadratic Formula.

$$y = \frac{-(2x-2) \pm \sqrt{(2x-2)^2 - 4(1)(x^2+4x)}}{2(1)}$$

$$= \frac{-2x + 2 \pm \sqrt{4x^2 - 8x + 4 - 4x^2 - 16x}}{2}$$

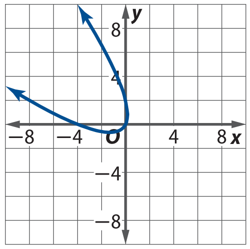
$$= \frac{-2x + 2 \pm 2\sqrt{1 - 6x}}{2}$$

$$= -x + 1 \pm \sqrt{1 - 6x}$$

Graph as

$y_1 = -x + 1 + \sqrt{1 - 6x}$ and

$y_2 = -x + 1 - \sqrt{1 - 6x}$.



6-8 Parametric Equations

Sketch the curve given by each pair of parametric equations over the given interval.

77. $x = \sqrt{t},\ y = 1 - t;\ 0 \le t \le 9$

78. $x = t + 2,\ y = t^2 - 4;\ -4 \le t \le 4$

Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form. Then graph the equation.

79. $x = t + 5$ and $y = 2t - 6$

80. $x = 2t$ and $y = t^2 - 2$

81. $x = t^2 + 3$ and $y = t^2 - 4$

82. $x = t^2 - 1$ and $y = 2t + 1$

Example 9

Write $x = 5 \cos t$ and $y = 9 \sin t$ in rectangular form. Then graph the equation.

$x = 5 \cos t \qquad y = 9 \sin t$

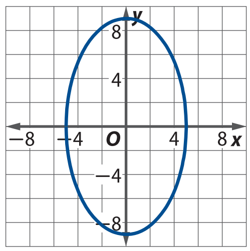
$\cos t = \frac{x}{5} \qquad \sin t = \frac{y}{9}$ Solve for $\sin t$ and $\cos t$

$\sin^2 t + \cos^2 t = 1$

$\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{y}{9}\right)^2 = 1$

$\frac{x^2}{25} + \frac{y^2}{81} = 1$

The parametric equations represent the graph of an ellipse.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

CHAPTER 6 Practice Test

Find the midpoint of the line segment with endpoints at the given coordinates.

1. $(8, 3), (-4, 9)$
2. $\left(\frac{3}{4}, 0\right), \left(\frac{1}{2}, -1\right)$
3. $(-10, 0), (-2, 6)$

Find the distance between each pair of points with the given coordinates.

4. $(-5, 8), (4, 3)$
5. $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\right), \left(-\frac{5}{6}, -\frac{11}{6}\right)$
6. $(4, -5), (4, 9)$

State whether the graph of each equation is a *parabola*, *circle*, *ellipse*, or *hyperbola*. Then graph the equation.

7. $y^2 = 64 - x^2$
8. $4x^2 + y^2 = 16$
9. $4x^2 - 9y^2 + 8x + 36y = 68$
10. $\frac{1}{2}x^2 - 3 = y$
11. $y = -2x^2 - 5$
12. $16x^2 + 25y^2 = 400$
13. $x^2 + 6x + y^2 = 16$
14. $\frac{y^2}{4} - \frac{x^2}{16} = 1$
15. $(x + 2)^2 = 3(y - 1)$
16. $4x^2 + 16y^2 + 32x + 63 = 0$

17. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** Which equation represents a hyperbola that has vertices at $(-3, -3)$ and $(5, -3)$ and a conjugate axis of length 6 units?

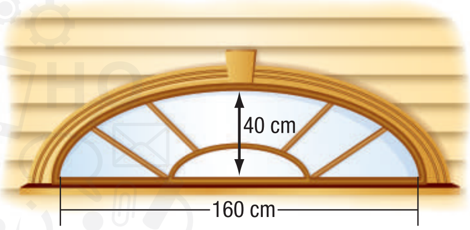
A $\frac{(y - 1)^2}{16} - \frac{(x + 3)^2}{9} = 1$

B $\frac{(x - 1)^2}{16} - \frac{(y + 3)^2}{9} = 1$

C $\frac{(y + 1)^2}{16} - \frac{(x - 3)^2}{9} = 1$

D $\frac{(x + 1)^2}{16} - \frac{(y - 3)^2}{9} = 1$

18. **CARPENTRY** Ayoub built a small window frame shaped like the top half of an ellipse. The window is 40 centimeters tall at its highest point and 160 centimeters wide at the bottom. What is the height of the window 20 centimeters from the center of the base?



Solve each system of equations.

19. $x^2 + y^2 = 100$
$y = -x - 2$

20. $x^2 + 2y^2 = 11$
$x + y = 2$

21. $x^2 + y^2 = 34$
$y^2 - x^2 = 9$

Solve each system of inequalities.

22. $x^2 + y^2 \leq 9$
$y > -x^2 + 2$

23. $\frac{(x - 2)^2}{4} - \frac{(y - 4)^2}{9} \geq 1$
$x - 4y < 8$

24. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** Which is NOT the equation of a parabola?

F $y = 3x^2 + 5x - 3$

G $2y + 3x^2 + x - 9 = 0$

H $x = 3(y + 1)^2$

J $x^2 + 2y^2 + 6x = 10$

25. **FORESTRY** A forest ranger at an outpost in the Sam Houston National Forest and another ranger at the primary station both heard an explosion. The outpost and the primary station are 6 kilometers apart.

a. If one ranger heard the explosion 6 seconds before the other, write an equation that describes all the possible locations of the explosion. Place the two ranger stations on the x-axis with the midpoint between the stations at the origin. The transverse axis is horizontal. (*Hint*: The speed of sound is about 0.35 kilometer per second.)

b. Draw a sketch of the possible locations of the explosion. Include the ranger stations in the drawing.

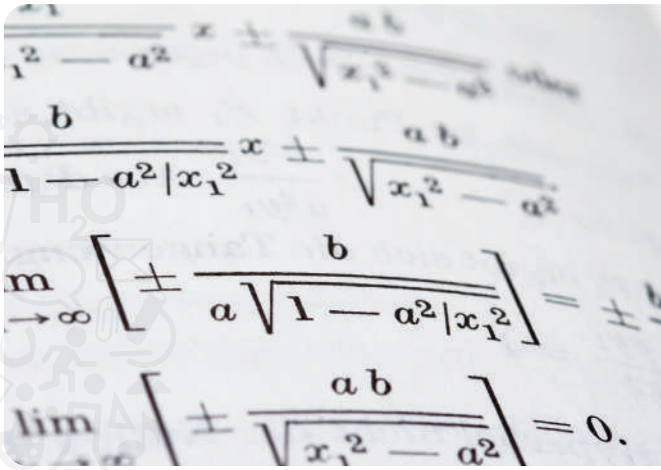
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 6 Preparing for Standardized Tests

Use a Formula

Sometimes it is necessary to use a formula to solve problems on standardized tests. In some cases you may even be given a sheet of formulas that you are permitted to reference while taking the test.



Strategies for Using a Formula

Step 1

Read the problem statement carefully.

Ask yourself:

- What am I being asked to solve?
- What information is given in the problem?
- Are there any formulas that I can use to help me solve the problem?

Step 2

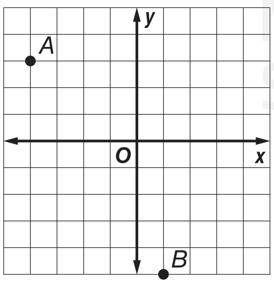
Solve the problem and check your solution.

- Substitute the known quantities that are given in the problem statement into the formula.
- Simplify to solve for the unknown values in the formula.
- Check to make sure your answer makes sense. If time permits, check your answer.

Standardized Test Example

Read the problem. Identify what you need to know. Then use the information in the problem to solve. Show your work.

What is the distance between points A and B on the coordinate plane? Round your answer to the nearest tenth if necessary.



Scoring Rubric	
Criteria	**Score**
Full Credit: The answer is correct and a full explanation is provided that shows each step.	2
Partial Credit: • The answer is correct but the explanation is incomplete. • The answer is incorrect but the explanation is correct.	1
No Credit: Either an answer is not provided or the answer does not make sense.	0

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education pm/Alamy

Read the problem statement carefully. You are given the coordinates of two points on a coordinate plane and asked to find the distance between them. To solve this problem, you must use the **Distance Formula**.

Example of a 2-point response:

Use the Distance Formula to find the distance between points $A(-4, 3)$ and $B(1, -5)$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
d &= \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{[1 - (-4)]^2 + [(-5) - 3]^2} \\
&= \sqrt{5^2 + (-8)^2} \\
&= \sqrt{25 + 64} \\
&= \sqrt{89} \text{ or about } 9.4
\end{aligned}
$$

The distance between points A and B is about 9.4 units.

The steps, calculations, and reasoning are clearly stated. The student also arrives at the correct answer. So, this response is worth the full 2 points.

Exercises

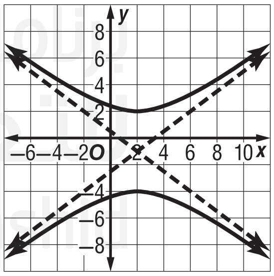
Read each problem. Identify what you need to know. Then use the information in the problem to solve. Show your work.

1. What is the midpoint of segment CD with endpoints $C(5, -12)$ and $D(-9, 4)$?

2. Huda is making a map of her hometown on a coordinate plane. She plots the school at $S(7, 3)$ and the park at $P(-4, 12)$. If the scale of the map is 1 unit = 250 meters, what is the actual distance between the school and the park? Round to the nearest meter.

3. Yousif is making a concrete table for his backyard. The tabletop will be circular with a diameter of 6 feet and a depth of 6 inches. How much concrete will Yousif need to make the top of the table? Round to the nearest cubic foot.

4. What is the equation, in standard form, of the hyperbola graphed below?



5. If the surface area of a cube is increased by a factor of 9, what is the change in the length of the sides of the cube?

   A The length is 2 times the original length.

   B The length is 3 times the original length.

   C The length is 6 times the original length.

   D The length is 9 times the original length.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Standardized Test Practice

Cumulative, Chapters 1 through 6

Multiple Choice

Read each question. Then fill in the correct answer on the answer document provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

1. Which is the first *incorrect* step in simplifying $\log_3 \frac{3}{48}$?

Step 1: $\log_3 \frac{3}{48} = \log_3 3 - \log_3 48$

Step 2: $= 1 - 16$

Step 3: $= -15$

A Step 1

B Step 2

C Step 3

D Each step is correct.

2. Which is the equation for the parabola that has vertex $(-3, -23)$ and passes through the point $(1, 9)$?

F $y = x^2 + 10x + 7$

G $y = x^2 - 6x + 19$

H $y = 2x^2 + 12x - 5$

J $y = 2x^2 - 3x + 10$

3. What are the vertices of the ellipse with equation $\frac{(x-3)^2}{36} + \frac{(y-2)^2}{144} = 1$?

A $(-3, 2)$ and $(9, 2)$

B $(-2, 3)$ and $(10, 3)$

C $(3, -10)$ and $(3, 14)$

D $(2, -11)$ and $(4, 13)$

4. Hooke's law states that the force needed to keep a spring extended x units is proportional to x. If a force of 40 N is needed to keep a spring extended 5 centimeters, what is the force needed to keep the spring extended 14 cm?

F 8 N

G 19 N

H 112 N

G 1600 N

Test-Taking Tip

Question 2 You can check your answer by submitting 1 for x and making sure that the y-value is 9.

5. Yasmin is making a map of her backyard on a coordinate grid. She plots point $G(-4, -6)$ to represent her mom's garden and point $S(3, 7)$ to represent the rope swing hanging on an oak tree. If the scale of the map is 1 unit = 5 meters, what is the approximate distance between the garden and the rope swing?

A 74 meters

B 79 meters

C 82 meters

D 90 meters

6. If $\sqrt{x+5} + 1 = 4$, what is the value of x?

F 4 **G** 10 **H** 11 **J** 20

7. The area of the base of a rectangular suitcase measures $3x^2 + 5x - 4$ square units. The height of the suitcase measures $2x$ units. Which polynomial expression represents the volume of the suitcase?

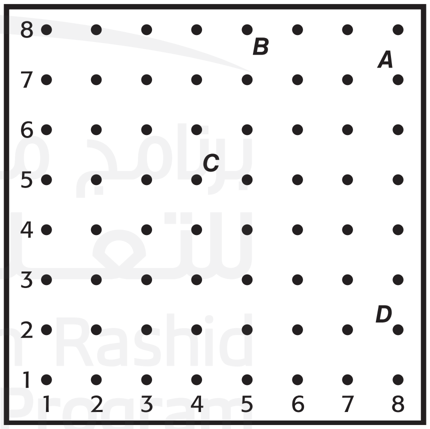
A $3x^3 + 5x^2 - 4x$

B $6x^2 + 10x - 8$

C $6x^3 + 10x^2 - 8x$

D $3x^3 + 10x^2 - 4$

8. Laila was given this geoboard to model the slope $-\frac{3}{4}$.



If the peg in the upper right-hand corner represents the origin on a coordinate plane, where could Laila place a rubber band to represent the given slope?

F from peg A to peg B

G from peg A to peg C

H from peg B to peg D

J from peg C to peg D

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Short Response/Gridded Response

Record your answers on the answer sheet provided by your teacher or on a sheet of paper.

9. A football player kicked the ball upwards at a velocity of 32 ft/s . How long will the ball take to hit the ground? Use the law $h(t) = v_0 t - 16t^2$ where $h(t)$ represents an object's height in feet, v0 the initial velocity in meters per second, and t time in seconds.

10. GRIDDED RESPONSE

11. Tarek is preparing boxes of assorted chocolates. Chocolate-covered peanuts cost AED 7 per gram. Chocolate-covered caramels cost AED 6.50 per gram. The boxes of assorted candies contain five more grams of peanut candies than caramel candies. If the total amount sold was AED 575, how many grams of each candy were needed to make the boxes?

12. Amer went shopping and bought two shirts, three pairs of pants, one belt, and two pairs of shoes. The following matrix shows the prices for each item respectively.

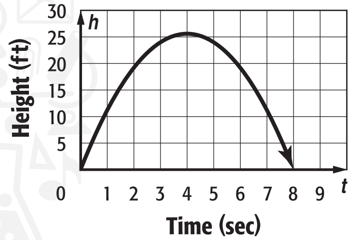
[AED 20.15 AED 32 AED 15 AED 25.99]

Use matrix multiplication to find the total amount of money Amer spent while shopping.

Extended Response

Record your answers on a sheet of paper. Show your work.

13. Zayed graphed the quadratic equation $h(t) = -16t^2 + 128t$ to model the flight of a firework. The parabola shows the height, in feet, of the firework t seconds after it was launched.



a. What is the vertex of the parabola?

b. What does the vertex of the parabola represent?

c. How long is the firework in the air before it lands?

14. The Sharjah Secondary School Yearbook Staff is selling yearbooks and chrome picture frames engraved with the year. The number of yearbooks and frames sold to members of each grade is shown in the table.

Sales for Each Class		
Grade	Yearbooks	Frames
9th	423	256
10th	464	278
11th	546	344
12th	575	497

a. Find the difference in the sales of yearbooks and frames made to the 10th and 11th grade classes.

b. Find the total number of yearbooks and frames sold.

c. A yearbook costs AED 48 and a frame costs AED 18. Find the sales of yearbooks and frames for each class.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 7

Vectors

Then

In **previous chapters,** you used trigonometry to solve triangles.

Now

In **this chapter,** you will:

- Represent and operate with vectors algebraically in the two- and three-dimensional coordinate systems.
- Find the projection of one vector onto another.
- Find cross products of vectors in space and find volumes of parallelepipeds.
- Find the dot products of and angles between vectors.

Why?

ROWING Vectors are often used to model changes in direction due to water and air currents. For example, a vector can be used to determine the resultant speed and direction of a kayak that is traveling 12.9 kilometers per hour against a 4.8 mile-per-hour river current.

PREREAD Scan the lesson titles and Key Concept boxes in Chapter 7. Use this information to predict what you will learn in this chapter.

Chapter Sourced From: 7. Vectors, from Precalculus Chapter 8 © 2014 Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Ingram Publishing/SuperStock

Get Ready for the Chapter

Take the Quick Check Below

QuickCheck

Find the distance between each given pair of points and the midpoint of the segment connecting the given points. (Prerequisite Skill)

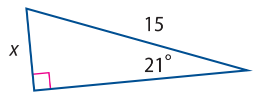
1. (1, 4), (−2, 4)

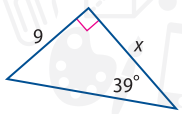
2. (−5, 3), (−5, 8)

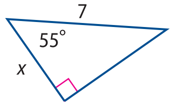
3. (2, −9), (−3, −7)

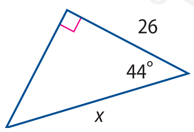
4. (−4, −1), (−6, −8)

Find the value of *x*. Round to the nearest tenth if necessary.

5.


6.


7.


8.


9. BALLOON A hot air balloon is being held in place by two people holding ropes and standing 35 meters apart. The angle formed between the ground and the rope held by each person is 40°. Determine the length of each rope to the nearest tenth of a meter.

Find all solutions for the given triangle, if possible. If no solution exists, write *no solution*. Round side lengths to the nearest tenth and angle measures to the nearest degree.

10. $a = 10, b = 7, A = 128°$

11. $a = 15, b = 16, A = 127°$

12. $a = 15, b = 18, A = 52°$

13. $a = 30, b = 19, A = 91°$

NewVocabulary

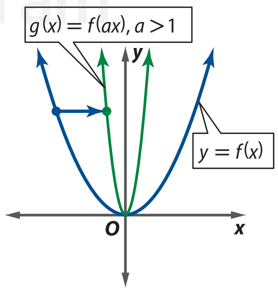
English

vector
initial point
terminal point
standard position
direction
magnitude
quadrant bearing
true bearing
parallel vectors
equivalent vectors
opposite vectors
resultant
zero vector
component form
unit vector
dot product
orthogonal
z-axis
octants
ordered triple
cross product
triple scalar product

ReviewVocabulary

scalar p. P25 a quantity with magnitude only

dilation p.49 a transformation in which the graph of a function is compressed or expanded vertically or horizontally



Horizontal dilation

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-1 Introduction to Vectors

Then

You used trigonometry to solve triangles.

Now

1. Represent and operate with vectors geometrically.
2. Solve vector problems, and resolve vectors into their rectangular components.

Why?

A successful goal attempt in football depends on several factors. While the speed of the ball after it is kicked is certainly important, the direction the ball takes is as well. We can describe both of these factors using a single quantity called a *vector*.

NewVocabulary

vector
initial point
terminal point
standard position
direction
magnitude
quadrant bearing
true bearing
parallel vectors
equivalent vectors
opposite vectors
resultant
triangle method
parallelogram method
zero vector
components
rectangular components

1 Vectors

Many physical quantities, such as speed, can be completely described by a single real number called a *scalar*. This number indicates the *magnitude* or *size* of the quantity. A **vector** is a quantity that has both magnitude and *direction*. The velocity of a ball is a vector that describes both the speed and direction of the ball .

Example 1 Identify Vector Quantities

State whether each quantity described is a *vector* quantity or a *scalar* quantity.

a. a boat traveling at 15 kilometers per hour

This quantity has a magnitude of 15 kilometers per hour, but no direction is given. Speed is a scalar quantity.

b. a hiker walking 25 paces due west

This quantity has a magnitude of 25 paces and a direction of due west. This directed distance is a vector quantity.

c. a person's weight on a bathroom scale

Weight is a vector quantity that is calculated using a person's mass and the downward pull due to gravity. (Acceleration due to gravity is a vector.)

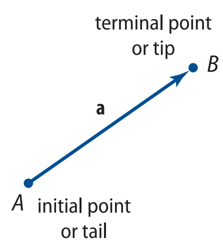
GuidedPractice

1A. a car traveling 60 kilometers per hour 15° east of south

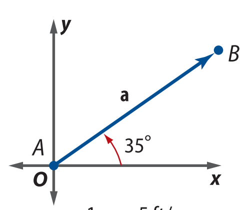
1B. a parachutist falling straight down at 20.2 kilometers per hour

1C. a child pulling a sled with a force of 40 newtons

A vector can be represented geometrically by a directed line segment, or arrow diagram, that shows both magnitude and direction. Consider the directed line segment with an **initial point** A (also known as the *tail*) and **terminal point** B (also known as the *head* or *tip*) shown. This vector is denoted by $\overrightarrow{AB}$, $\vec{a}$, or $\mathbf{a}$.



If a vector has its initial point at the origin, it is in **standard position**. The **direction** of a vector is the directed angle between the vector and the horizontal line that could be used to represent the positive x-axis. The direction of $\mathbf{a}$ is 35°.

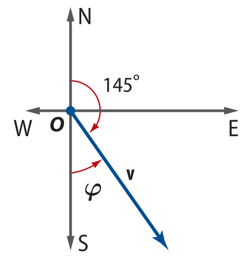


1 cm : 5 ft/s

The length of the line segment represents, and is proportional to, the **magnitude** of the vector. If the scale of the arrow diagram for $\mathbf{a}$ is 1 cm = 5 ft/s, then the magnitude of $\mathbf{a}$, denoted $|\mathbf{a}|$, is 2.6×5 or 13 feet per second.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

The direction of a vector can also be given as a bearing. A **quadrant bearing** φ, or *phi*, is a directional measurement between 0° and 90° east or west of the north-south line. The quadrant bearing of vector **v** shown is 35° east of south or southeast, written S35°E.



A **true bearing** is a directional measurement where the angle is measured clockwise from north. True bearings are always given using three digits. So, a direction that measures 25° clockwise from north would be written as a true bearing of 025°.

Study Tip

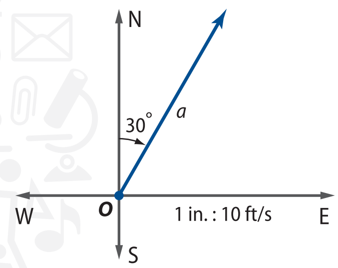
True Bearing When a degree measure is given without any additional directional components, it is assumed to be a true bearing. The true bearing of **v** is 145°.

Example 2 Represent a Vector Geometrically

Use a ruler and a protractor to draw an arrow diagram for each quantity described. Include a scale on each diagram.

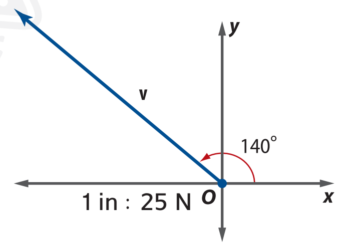
a. a = 20 feet per second at a bearing of 030°

Using a scale of 1 in: 10 ft/s, draw and label a 20 ÷ 10 or 2-inch arrow at an angle of 30° clockwise from the north.



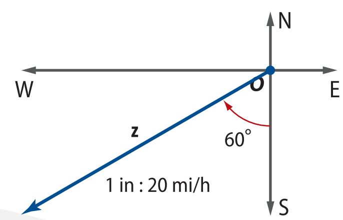
b. v = 75 Newtons of force at 140° to the horizontal

Using a scale of 1 in : 25 N, draw and label a 75 ÷ 25 or 3-inch arrow in standard position at a 140° angle to the *x*-axis.



c. z = 30 miles per hour at a bearing of S60°W

Using a scale of 1 in : 20 mi/h, draw and label a 30 ÷ 20 or 1.5-inch arrow 60° west of south.



Guided Practice

2A. **t** = 20 meters per second at a bearing of 065°

2B. **u** = 15 kilometers per hour at a bearing of S25°E

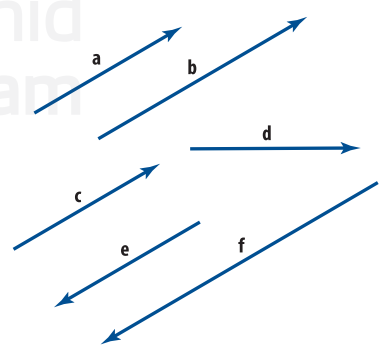
2C. **m** = 60 Newtons of force at 80° to the horizontal

Watch Out!

Magnitude The magnitude of a vector can represent distance, speed, or force. When a vector represents velocity, the length of the vector does not imply distance traveled.

In your operations with vectors, you will need to be familiar with the following vector types.

- **Parallel vectors** have the same or opposite direction but not necessarily the same magnitude. In the figure, **a** ∥ **b** ∥ **c** ∥ **e** ∥ **f**.
- **Equivalent vectors** have the same magnitude and direction. In the figure, **a** = **c** because they have the same magnitude and direction. Notice that **a** ≠ **b**, since |**a**| ≠ |**b**|, and **a** ≠ **d**, since **a** and **d** do not have the same direction.
- **Opposite vectors** have the same magnitude but opposite direction. The vector opposite **a** is written −**a**. In the figure, **e** = −**a**.



Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

When two or more vectors are added, their sum is a single vector called the **resultant**. The resultant vector has the same effect as applying one vector after the other. Geometrically, the resultant can be found using either the **triangle method** or the **parallelogram method**.

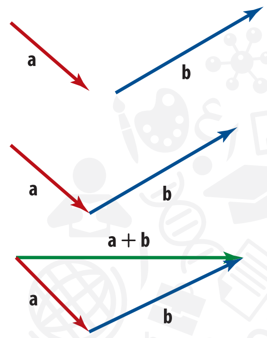
KeyConcept Finding Resultants

Triangle Method (Tip-to-Tail)

To find the resultant of **a** and **b**, follow these steps.

Step 1 Translate **b** so that the tail of **b** touches the tip of **a**.

Step 2 The resultant is the vector from the tail of **a** to the tip of **b**.



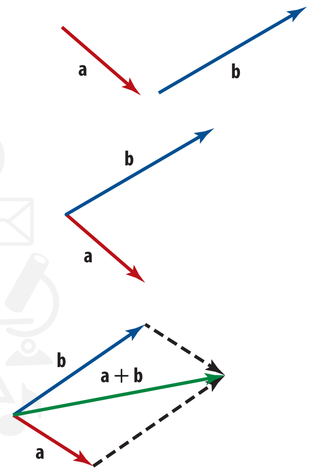
Parallelogram Method (Tail-to-Tail)

To find the resultant of **a** and **b**, follow these steps.

Step 1 Translate **b** so that the tail of **b** touches the tail of **a**.

Step 2 Complete the parallelogram that has **a** and **b** as two of its sides.

Step 3 The resultant is the vector that forms the indicated diagonal of the parallelogram.

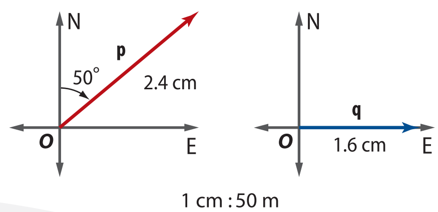


Real-World Example 3 Find the Resultant of Two Vectors

ORIENTEERING **In an orienteering competition, Amani walks N50°E for 120 meters and then walks 80 meters due east. How far and at what quadrant bearing is Amani from her starting position?**

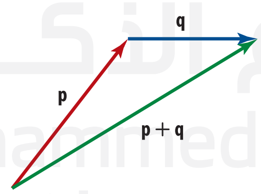
Let **p** = walking 120 meters N50°E and **q** = walking 80 meters due east. Draw a diagram to represent **p** and **q** using a scale of 1 cm : 50 m.

Use a ruler and a protractor to draw a 120 ÷ 50 or 2.4-centimeter arrow 50° east of north to represent **p** and an 80 ÷ 50 or 1.6-centimeter arrow due east to represent **q**.



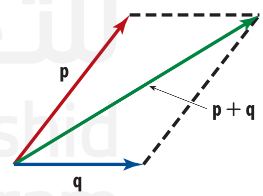
Method 1 Triangle Method

Translate **q** so that its tail touches the tip of **p**. Then draw the resultant vector **p** + **q** as shown.

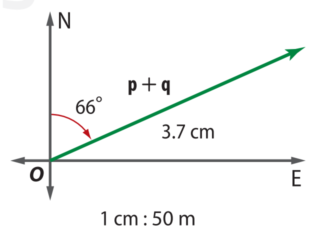


Method 2 Parallelogram Method

Translate **q** so that its tail touches the tail of **p**. Then complete the parallelogram and draw the diagonal, resultant **p** + **q**, as shown.



Both methods produce the same resultant vector **p** + **q**. Measure the length of **p** + **q** and then measure the angle this vector makes with the north-south line as shown.



The vector's length of approximately 3.7 centimeters represents 3.7 × 50 or 185 meters. Therefore, Tia is approximately 185 feet at a bearing of 66° east of north or N66°E from her starting position.

StudyTip

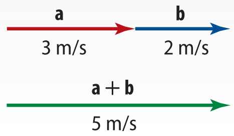
Resultants The parallelogram method must be repeated in order to find the resultant of more than two vectors. The triangle method, however, is easier to use when finding the resultant of three or more vectors. Continue to place the initial point of subsequent vectors at the terminal point of the previous vector.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

StudyTip

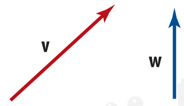
Parallel Vectors with Same Direction To add two or more parallel vectors with the *same direction*, add their magnitudes. The resultant has the same direction as the original vectors.



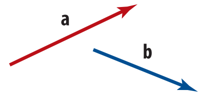
GuidedPractice

Find the resultant of each pair of vectors using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant to the nearest centimeter and its direction relative to the horizontal.

3A.

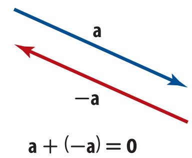


3B.



3C. **PINBALL** A pinball is struck by flipper and is sent 310° at a velocity of 7 centimeters per second. The ball then bounces off of a bumper and heads 055° at a velocity of 4 centimeters per second. Find the resulting direction and velocity of the pinball.

When you add two opposite vectors, the resultant is the **zero vector** or *null* vector, denoted by $\vec{0}$ or **0**, which has a magnitude of 0 and no specific direction. Subtracting vectors is similar to subtraction with integers. To find **p** − **q**, add the opposite of **q** to **p**. That is, **p** − **q** = **p** + (−**q**).



A vector can also be multiplied by a scalar.

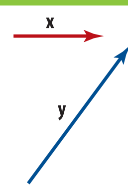
KeyConcept Multiplying Vectors by a Scalar

If a vector **v** is multiplied by a real number scalar k, the scalar multiple k **v** has a magnitude of $|k|\ |\mathbf{v}|$. Its direction is determined by the sign of k.

- If $k > 0$, k **v** has the same direction as **v**.
- If $k < 0$, k **v** has the opposite direction as **v**.

Example 4 Operations with Vectors

Draw a vector diagram of $3\mathbf{x} - \frac{3}{4}\mathbf{y}$.



Rewrite the expression as the addition of two vectors: $3\mathbf{x} - \frac{3}{4}\mathbf{y} = 3\mathbf{x} + \left(-\frac{3}{4}\mathbf{y}\right)$. To represent 3**x**, draw a vector 3 times as long as **x** in the same direction as **x** (Figure 7.1.1). To represent $-\frac{3}{4}\mathbf{y}$, draw a vector $\frac{3}{4}$ the length of **y** in the opposite direction from **y** (Figure 7.1.2). Then use the triangle method to draw the resultant vector (Figure 7.1.3).

Figure 7.1.1

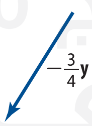


Figure 7.1.2

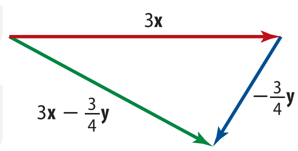
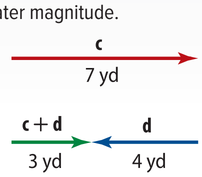


Figure 7.1.3

StudyTip

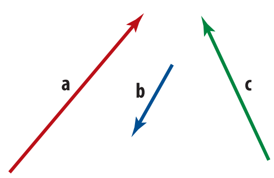
Parallel Vectors with Opposite Directions To add two parallel vectors with *opposite directions*, find the absolute value of the difference in their magnitudes. The resultant has the same direction as the vector with the greater magnitude.



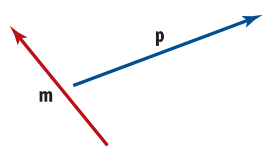
GuidedPractice

Draw a vector diagram of each expression.

4A. $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c} + 2\mathbf{b}$



4B. $\mathbf{m} - \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{p}$



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

2 Vector Applications

Vector addition and trigonometry can be used to solve vector problems involving triangles which are often oblique.

In navigation, a *heading* is the direction in which a vessel, such as an airplane or boat, is steered to overcome other forces, such as wind or current. The *relative velocity* of the vessel is the resultant when the heading velocity and other forces are combined.

Real-World Example 5 Use Vectors to Solve Navigation Problems

AVIATION An airplane is flying with an airspeed of 310 knots on a heading of 050°. If a 78-knot wind is blowing from a true heading of 125°, determine the speed and direction of the plane relative to the ground.

Step 1 Draw a diagram to represent the heading and wind velocities (Figure 7.1.4). Translate the wind vector as shown in Figure 7.1.5, and use the triangle method to obtain the resultant vector representing the plane's ground velocity **g**. In the triangle formed by these vectors (Figure 7.1.6), $\gamma = 125° - 50°$ or $75°$.

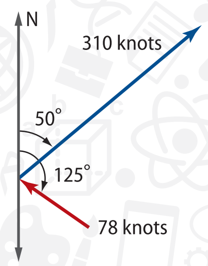


Figure 7.1.4

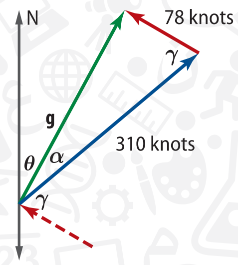


Figure 7.1.5

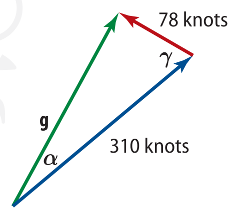


Figure 7.1.6

Step 2 Use the Law of Cosines to find $|\mathbf{g}|$, the plane's speed relative to the ground.

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos\gamma$$ Law of Cosines

$$|\mathbf{g}|^2 = 78^2 + 310^2 - 2(78)(310)\cos 75°$$ $c = |\mathbf{g}|$, $a = 78$, $b = 310$, and $\gamma = 75°$

$$|\mathbf{g}| = \sqrt{78^2 + 310^2 - 2(78)(310)\cos 75°}$$ Take the positive square root of each side.

$$\approx 299.4$$ Simplify.

The ground speed of the plane is about 299.4 knots.

Step 3 The heading of the resultant **g** is represented by angle θ, as shown in Figure 7.1.5. To find θ, first calculate α using the Law of Sines.

$$\frac{\sin\alpha}{a} = \frac{\sin\gamma}{c}$$ Law of Sines

$$\frac{\sin\alpha}{78} = \frac{\sin 75°}{299.4}$$ $c = |\mathbf{g}|$ or 299.4, $a = 78$, and $\gamma = 75°$

$$\sin\alpha = \frac{78\sin 75°}{299.4}$$ Solve for $\sin\alpha$.

$$\alpha = \sin^{-1}\frac{78\sin 75°}{299.4}$$ Apply the inverse sine function.

$$\approx 14.6°$$ Simplify.

The measure of θ is $50° - \alpha$, which is $50° - 14.6°$ or $35.4°$.

Therefore, the speed of the plane relative to the ground is about 299.4 knots at about 035°.

GuidedPractice

5. **SWIMMING** Ali rows due east at a speed of 3.5 feet per second across a river directly toward the opposite bank. At the same time, the current of the river is carrying him due south at a rate of 2 feet per second. Find Ali's speed and direction relative to the shore.

StudyTip

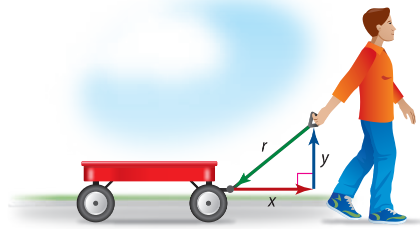
Alternate Interior Angles The translation of the tail of the wind vector to the tip of the vector representing the plane's heading produces two parallel vectors cut by a transversal. Since alternate interior angles of two parallel lines cut by a transversal are congruent, the angles made by these two vectors in both places in Figure 7.1.5 have the same measure.

WatchOut!

Wind Direction In Example 5, notice that the wind is blowing *from* a bearing of 125° and the vector is drawn so that the tip of the vector points *toward* the north-south line. Had the wind been blowing at a bearing of 125°, the vector would have pointed *away* from this line.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Two or more vectors with a sum that is a vector **r** are called **components** of **r**. While components can have any direction, it is often useful to express or *resolve* a vector into two perpendicular components. The **rectangular components** of a vector are horizontal and vertical.



In the diagram, the force **r** exerted to pull the wagon can be thought of as the sum of a horizontal component force **x** that moves the wagon forward and a vertical component force **y** that pulls the wagon upward.

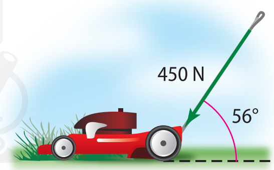
Real-WorldLink

It takes a force of about 3 newtons to flip a light switch. The force due to gravity on a person is about 600 newtons. The force exerted by a weightlifter is about 2000 newtons.

Source: *Contemporary College Physics*

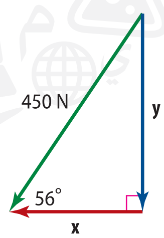
Real-World Example 6 Resolve a Force into Rectangular Components

LAWN CARE **Hala is pushing the handle of a lawn mower with a force of 450 newtons at an angle of 56° with the ground.**



a. Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of the force that Hala exerts into its rectangular components.

Hala's push can be resolved into a horizontal push **x** forward and a vertical push **y** downward as shown.



b. Find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components of the force.

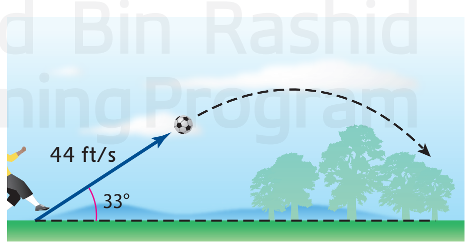
The horizontal and vertical components of the force form a right triangle. Use the sine or cosine ratios to find the magnitude of each force.

$\cos 56^\circ = \frac{\lvert\mathbf{x}\rvert}{450}$	Right triangle definitions of cosine and sine	$\sin 56^\circ = \frac{\lvert\mathbf{y}\rvert}{450}$
$\lvert\mathbf{x}\rvert = 450 \cos 56^\circ$	Solve for *x* and *y*.	$\lvert\mathbf{y}\rvert = 450 \sin 56^\circ$
$\lvert\mathbf{x}\rvert \approx 252$	Use a calculator.	$\lvert\mathbf{y}\rvert \approx 373$

The magnitude of the horizontal component is about 252 newtons, and the magnitude of the vertical component is about 373 newtons.

GuidedPractice

6. **FOOTBALL** A player kicks a football so that it leaves the ground with a velocity of 44 feet per second at an angle of 33° with the ground.



A. Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of this force into its rectangular components.

B. Find the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Tetra Images/Getty Images

Exercises

State whether each quantity described is a *vector* quantity or a *scalar* quantity. (Example 1)

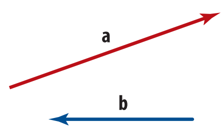
1. a box being pushed with a force of 125 newtons
2. wind blowing at 20 knots
3. a deer running 15 meters per second due west
4. a baseball thrown with a speed of 85 miles per hour
5. a 3.75-kilogram stone hanging from a rope
6. a rock thrown straight up at a velocity of 50 feet per second

Use a ruler and a protractor to draw an arrow diagram for each quantity described. Include a scale on each diagram. (Example 2)

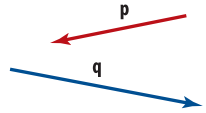
7. **h** = 13 centimeters per second at a bearing of 205°
8. **g** = 6 kilometers per hour at a bearing of N70°W
9. **j** = 5 meters per minute at 300° to the horizontal
10. **k** = 28 kilometers at 35° to the horizontal
11. **m** = 40 meters at a bearing of S55°E
12. **n** = 32 meter per second at a bearing of 030°

Find the resultant of each pair of vectors using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant to the nearest tenth of a centimeter and its direction relative to the horizontal. (Example 3)

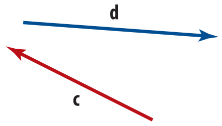
13.



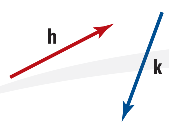
14.



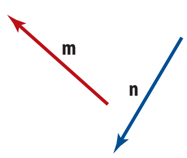
15.



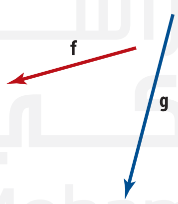
16.



17.



18.



19. **GOLF** While playing a golf video game, Omar hits a ball 35° above the horizontal at a speed of 64.4-kilometer per hour with a 8 kilometers per hour wind blowing, as shown. Find the resulting speed and direction of the ball. (Example 3)

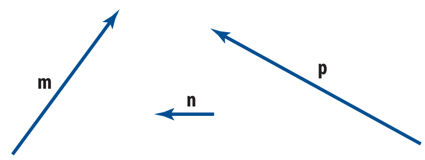
20. **BOATING** A charter boat leaves port on a heading of N60°W for 12 nautical miles. The captain changes course to a bearing of N25°E for the next 15 nautical miles. Determine the ship's distance and direction from port to its current location. (Example 3)

21. **HIKING** Mazen and Ayoub hiked 3.75 kilometers to a lake 55° east of south from their campsite. Then they hiked 33° west of north to the nature center 5.6 kilometers from the lake. Where is the nature center in relation to their campsite? (Example 3)

Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant of each vector sum. (Example 3)

22. 18 newtons directly forward and then 20 newtons directly backward
23. 100 meters due north and then 350 meters due south
24. 10 kilograms of force at a bearing of 025° and then 15 kilograms of force at a bearing of 045°
25. 17 kilometers east and then 16 kilometers south
26. 15 meters per second squared at a 60° angle to the horizontal and then 9.8 meters per second squared downward

Use the set of vectors to draw a vector diagram of each expression. (Example 4)



27. $\mathbf{m} - 2\mathbf{n}$
28. $\mathbf{n} - \frac{3}{4}\mathbf{m}$
29. $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p} + 3\mathbf{n}$
30. $4\mathbf{n} + \frac{4}{5}\mathbf{p}$
31. $\mathbf{p} + 2\mathbf{n} - \mathbf{m}$
32. $-\frac{1}{3}\mathbf{m} + \mathbf{p} - 2\mathbf{n}$
33. $3\mathbf{n} - \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{m}$
34. $\mathbf{m} - 3\mathbf{n} + \frac{1}{4}\mathbf{p}$

35. **RUNNING** A runner's resultant velocity is 8 miles per hour due west running with a wind of 3 miles per hour N28°W. What is the runner's speed, to the nearest mile per hour, without the effect of the wind? (Example 5)

36. **GLIDING** A glider is traveling at an air speed of 15 kilometers per hour due west. If the wind is blowing at 5 kilometers per hour in the direction N60°E, what is the resulting ground speed of the glider? (Example 5)

37. **CURRENT** Sally is swimming due west at a rate of 1.5 meters per second. A strong current is flowing S20°E at a rate of 1 meter per second. Find Sally's resulting speed and direction. (Example 5)

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of each vector into its rectangular components. Then find the magnitudes of the vector's horizontal and vertical components. (Example 6)

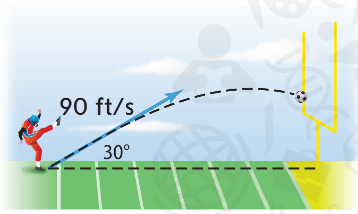
38. $2\frac{1}{8}$ centimeters at 310° to the horizontal

39. 1.5 centimeters at a bearing of N49°E

40. 3.2 centimeters per hour at a bearing of S78°W

41. $\frac{3}{4}$ centimeter per minute at a bearing of 255°

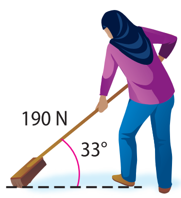
42. FOOTBALL For a goal attempt, a ball is kicked with the velocity shown in the diagram below.



a. Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of this force into its rectangular components.

b. Find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components. (Example 6)

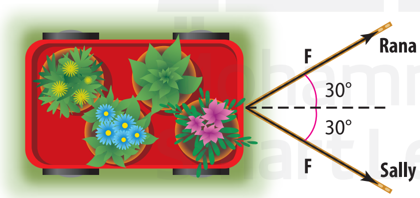
43. CLEANING A push broom is pushed with a force of 190 newtons at an angle of 33° with the ground. (Example 6)



a. Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of this force into its rectangular components.

b. Find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components.

44. GARDENING Rana and Sally are pulling a wagon full of plants. Each person pulls on the wagon with equal force at an angle of 30° with the axis of the wagon. The resultant force is 120 newtons.



a. How much force is each person exerting?

b. If each person exerts a force of 75 newtons, what is the resultant force?

c. How will the resultant force be affected if Rana and Sally move closer together?

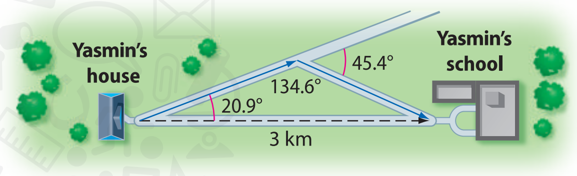
The magnitude and true bearings of three forces acting on an object are given. Find the magnitude and direction of the resultant of these forces.

45. 50 kg at 30°, 80 kg at 125°, and 100 kg at 220°

46. 8 newtons at 300°, 12 newtons at 45°, and 6 newtons at 120°

47. 18 kg at 190°, 3 kg at 20°, and 7 kg at 320°

48. DRIVING Yasmin's school is on a direct path three kilometers from her house. She drives on two different streets on her way to school. She travels at an angle of 20.9° with the path on the first street and then turns 45.4° onto the second street.



a. How far does Yasmin drive on the first street?

b. How far does she drive on the second street?

c. If it takes her 10 minutes to get to school and she averages 25 kilometers per hour on the first street, what speed does Yasmin average after she turns onto the second street?

49. SLEDDING Hamad is pulling his sister on a sled. The direction of his resultant force is 31°, and the horizontal component of the force is 86 newtons.

a. What is the vertical component of the force?

b. What is the magnitude of the resultant force?

50. MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS In this problem, you will investigate multiplication of a vector by a scalar.

a. **GRAPHICAL** On a coordinate plane, draw a vector **a** so that the tail is located at the origin. Choose a value for a scalar k. Then draw the vector that results if you multiply the original vector by k on the same coordinate plane. Repeat the process for four additional vectors **b**, **c**, **d**, and **e**. Use the same value for k each time.

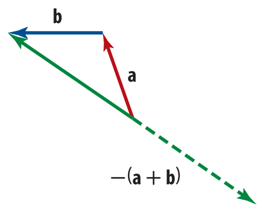
b. **TABULAR** Copy and complete the table below for each vector that you drew in part **a**.

Vector	Terminal Point of Vector	Terminal Point of Vector × k
a		
b		
c		
d		
e		

c. **ANALYTICAL** If the terminal point of a vector **a** is located at the point (a, b), what is the location of the terminal point of the vector k**a**?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

An *equilibrant* vector is the opposite of a resultant vector. It balances a combination of vectors such that the sum of the vectors and the equilibrant is the zero vector. The equilibrant vector of a + b is −(a + b).



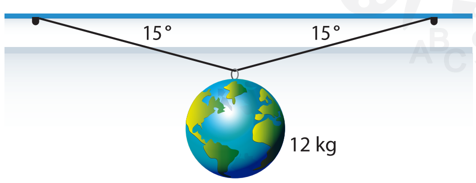
Find the magnitude and direction of the equilibrant vector for each set of vectors.

51. **a** = 15 kilometers per hour at a bearing of 125°
b = 12 kilometers per hour at a bearing of 045°

52. **a** = 4 meters at a bearing of N30W°
b = 6 meters at a bearing of N20E°

53. **a** = 23 meters per second at a bearing of 205°
b = 16 meters per second at a bearing of 345°

54. **MAGNITUDE** A round object is suspended from a ceiling by two wires of equal length as shown.

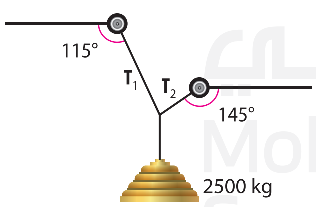


a. Draw a vector diagram of the situation that indicates that two tension vectors $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ with equal magnitude are keeping the object stationary or at equilibrium.

b. Redraw the diagram using the triangle method to find $\mathbf{T}_1 + \mathbf{T}_2$.

c. Use your diagram from part **b** and the fact that the equilibrant of the resultant $\mathbf{T}_1 + \mathbf{T}_2$ and the vector representing the weight of the object are equivalent vectors to calculate the magnitudes of $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$.

55. **CABLE SUPPORT** Two cables with tensions $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ are tied together to support a 2500-kilogram load at equilibrium.



a. Write expressions to represent the horizontal and vertical components of $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$.

b. Given that the equilibrant of the resultant $\mathbf{T}_1 + \mathbf{T}_2$ and the vector representing the weight of the load are equivalent vectors, calculate the magnitudes of $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ to the nearest tenth of a kilogram.

c. Use your answers from parts **a** and **b** to find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components of $\mathbf{T}_1$ and $\mathbf{T}_2$ to the nearest tenth of a kilogram.

Find the magnitude and direction of each vector given its vertical and horizontal components and the range of values for the angle of direction θ to the horizontal.

56. horizontal: 0.32 cm, vertical: 2.28 cm, $90° < \theta < 180°$

57. horizontal: 3.1 m, vertical: 4.2 m, $0° < \theta < 90°$

58. horizontal: 2.6 cm, vertical: 9.7 cm, $270° < \theta < 360°$

59. horizontal: 2.9 m, vertical: 1.8 m, $180° < \theta < 270°$

Draw any three vectors a, b, and c. Show geometrically that each of the following vector properties holds using these vectors.

60. Commutative Property: **a** + **b** = **b** + **a**

61. Associative Property: (**a** + **b**) + **c** = **a** + (**b** + **c**)

62. Distributive Property: $k(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = k\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b}$, for $k = 2, 0.5$, and -2

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

63. **OPEN ENDED** Consider a vector of 5 units directed along the positive *x*-axis. Resolve the vector into two perpendicular components in which no component is horizontal or vertical.

64. **REASONING** Is it *sometimes, always*, or *never* possible to find the sum of two parallel vectors using the parallelogram method? Explain your reasoning.

65. **REASONING** Why is it important to establish a common reference for measuring the direction of a vector, for example, from the positive *x*-axis?

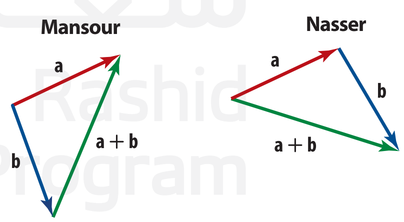
66. **CHALLENGE** The resultant of **a** + **b** is equal to the resultant of **a** − **b**. If the magnitude of **a** is $4x$, what is the magnitude of **b**?

67. **REASONING** Consider the statement $|\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}| \geq |\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|$.

a. Express this statement using words.

b. Is this statement true or false? Justify your answer.

68. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Mansour and Nasser are finding the resultant of vectors **a** and **b**. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.



69. **REASONING** Is it possible for the sum of two vectors to equal one of the vectors? Explain.

70. **WRITING IN MATH** Compare and contrast the parallelogram and triangle methods of finding the resultant of two or more vectors.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

71. **KICKBALL** Suppose a kickball player kicks a ball at a 32° angle to the horizontal with an initial speed of 20 meters per second. How far away will the ball land?

72. Graph $(x')^2 + y' - 5 = 1$ if it has been rotated 45° from its position in the xy-plane.

Write an equation for a circle that satisfies each set of conditions. Then graph the circle.

73. center at (4, 5), radius 4

74. center at (1, −4), diameter 7

Determine the equation of and graph the parabola with the given focus *F* and vertex *V*.

75. $F(2, 4)$, $V(2, 3)$

76. $F(1, 5)$, $V(-7, 5)$

77. **CRAFTS** Majed is selling wood carvings. He sells large statues for AED 60, clocks for AED 40, dollhouse furniture for AED 25, and chess pieces for AED 5. He takes the following number of items to the fair: 12 large statues, 25 clocks, 45 pieces of dollhouse furniture, and 50 chess pieces.

a. Write an inventory matrix for the number of each item and a cost matrix for the price of each item.

b. Find Majed's total income if he sells all of the items.

Solve each equation for all values of *x*.

78. $4 \sin x \cos x - 2 \sin x = 0$

79. $\sin x - 2 \cos^2 x = -1$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

80. **SAT/ACT** If town *A* is 12 kilometers from town *B* and town *C* is 18 kilometers from town *A*, then which of the following *cannot* be the distance from town *B* to town *C*?

A 5 kilometers

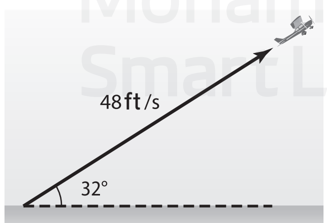
B 7 kilometers

C 10 kilometers

D 12 kilometers

E 18 kilometers

81. A remote control airplane flew along an initial path of 32° to the horizontal at a velocity of 48 feet per second as shown. Which of the following represent the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity?



F 25.4 ft/s, 40.7 ft/s

G 40.7 ft/s, 25.4 ft/s

H 56.6 ft/s, 90.6 ft/s

J 90.6 ft/s, 56.6 ft/s

82. **REVIEW** Triangle *ABC* has vertices $A(-4, 2)$, $B(-4, -3)$, and $C(3, -3)$. After a dilation, triangle $A'B'C'$ has vertices $A'(-12, 6)$, $B'(-12, -9)$, and $C'(9, -9)$. How many times as great is the area of $\triangle A'B'C'$ than the area of $\triangle ABC$?

A $\frac{1}{9}$

B $\frac{1}{3}$

C 3

D 9

83. **REVIEW** Halima is drawing a map of her neighborhood. Her house is represented by quadrilateral *ABCD* with vertices $A(2, 2)$, $B(6, 2)$, $C(6, 6)$, and $D(2, 6)$. She wants to use the same coordinate system to make another map that is one half the size of the original map. What could be the new vertices of Halima's house?

F $A'(0, 0)$, $B'(2, 1)$, $C'(3, 3)$, $D'(0, 3)$

G $A'(0, 0)$, $B'(3, 1)$, $C'(2, 3)$, $D'(0, 2)$

H $A'(1, 1)$, $B'(3, 1)$, $C'(3, 3)$, $D'(1, 3)$

J $A'(1, 2)$, $B'(3, 0)$, $C'(2, 2)$, $D'(2, 3)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-2 Vectors in the Coordinate Plane

Then

- You performed vector operations using scale drawings.

Now

1. Represent and operate with vectors in the coordinate plane.
2. Write a vector as a linear combination of unit vectors.

Why?

- Wind can impact the ground speed and direction of an airplane. While pilots can use scale drawings to determine the heading a plane should take to correct for wind, these calculations are more commonly calculated using vectors in the coordinate plane.

NewVocabulary

component form
unit vector
linear combination

1 Vectors in the Coordinate Plane

In Lesson 7-1, you found the magnitude and direction of the resultant of two or more forces geometrically by using a scale drawing. Since drawings can be inaccurate, an algebraic approach using a rectangular coordinate system is needed for situations where more accuracy is required or where the system of vectors is complex.

A vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$ in standard position on a rectangular coordinate system (as in Figure 7.2.1) can be uniquely described by the coordinates of its terminal point $P(x, y)$. We denote $\overrightarrow{OP}$ on the coordinate plane by $\langle x, y\rangle$. Notice that x and y are the rectangular components of $\overrightarrow{OP}$. For this reason, $\langle x, y\rangle$ is called the **component form** of a vector.

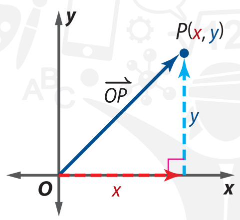


Figure 7.2.1

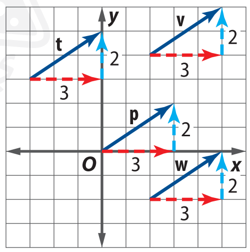


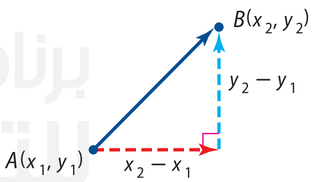
Figure 7.2.2

Since vectors with the same magnitude and direction are equivalent, many vectors can be represented by the same coordinates. For example, vectors **p**, **t**, **v**, and **w** in Figure 7.2.2 are *equivalent* because each can be denoted as $\langle 3, 2\rangle$. To find the component form of a vector that is not in standard position, you can use the coordinates of its initial and terminal points.

KeyConcept Component Form of a Vector

The component form of a vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(x_1, y_1)$ and terminal point $B(x_2, y_2)$ is given by

$$\langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1\rangle.$$



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Example 1 Express a Vector in Component Form

Find the component form of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(-4, 2)$ and terminal point $B(3, -5)$.

$\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1\rangle$ — Component form

$= \langle 3 - (-4), -5 - 2\rangle$ — $(x_1, y_1) = (-4, 2)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (3, -5)$

$= \langle 7, -7\rangle$ — Subtract.

GuidedPractice

Find the component form of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points.

1A. $A(-2, -7)$, $B(6, 1)$

1B. $A(0, 8)$, $B(-9, -3)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education A. T. Willett/Alamy

The magnitude of a vector in the coordinate plane is found by using the Distance Formula.

ReadingMath

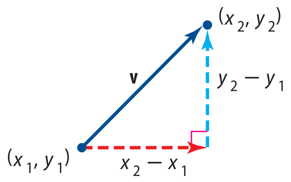
Norm The magnitude of a vector is sometimes called the *norm* of the vector.

KeyConcept Magnitude of a Vector in the Coordinate Plane

If **v** is a vector with initial point (x_1, y_1) and terminal point (x_2, y_2), then the magnitude of **v** is given by

$|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$.

If **v** has a component form of $\langle a, b \rangle$, then $|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$.



Example 2 Find the Magnitude of a Vector

Find the magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(-4, 2)$ and terminal point $B(3, -5)$.

$|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$ Distance Formula

$= \sqrt{[3 - (-4)]^2 + (-5 - 2)^2}$ $(x_1, y_1) = (-4, 2)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (3, -5)$

$= \sqrt{98}$ or about 9.9 Simplify.

CHECK From Example 1, you know that $\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle 7, -7 \rangle$. $|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{7^2 + (-7)^2}$ or $\sqrt{98}$. ✓

GuidedPractice

Find the magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points.

2A. $A(-2, -7)$, $B(6, 1)$

2B. $A(0, 8)$, $B(-9, -3)$

Addition, subtraction, and scalar multiplication of vectors in the coordinate plane is similar to the same operations with matrices.

KeyConcept Vector Operations

If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle$ are vectors and k is a scalar, then the following are true.

Vector Addition	$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2 \rangle$
Vector Subtraction	$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2 \rangle$
Scalar Multiplication	$k\mathbf{a} = \langle ka_1, ka_2 \rangle$

Example 3 Operations with Vectors

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{w} = \langle -4, 1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{y} = \langle 2, 5 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{z} = \langle -3, 0 \rangle$.

a. $\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{y}$

$\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{y} = \langle -4, 1 \rangle + \langle 2, 5 \rangle$ Substitute.

$= \langle -4 + 2, 1 + 5 \rangle$ or $\langle -2, 6 \rangle$ Vector addition

b. $\mathbf{z} - 2\mathbf{y}$

$\mathbf{z} - 2\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{z} + (-2)\mathbf{y}$ Rewrite subtraction as addition.

$= \langle -3, 0 \rangle + (-2)\langle 2, 5 \rangle$ Substitute.

$= \langle -3, 0 \rangle + \langle -4, -10 \rangle$ or $\langle -7, -10 \rangle$ Scalar multiplication and vector addition

GuidedPractice

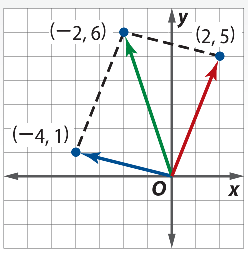
3A. $4\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{z}$

3B. $-3\mathbf{w}$

3C. $2\mathbf{w} + 4\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{z}$

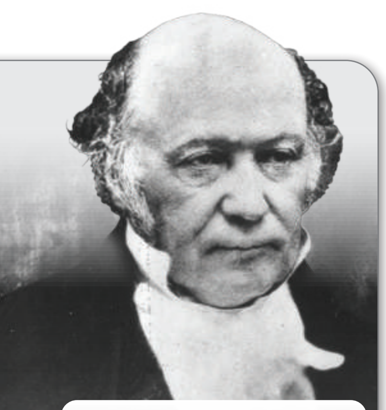
StudyTip

Check Graphically A graphical check of Example 3a using the parallelogram method is shown below.



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program



Math HistoryLink

William Rowan Hamilton
(1805–1865)
An Irish mathematician, Hamilton developed the theory of quaternions and published *Lectures on Quaternions.* Many basic concepts of vector analysis have their basis in this theory.

2 Unit Vectors

A vector that has a magnitude of 1 unit is called a **unit vector**. It is sometimes useful to describe a nonzero vector **v** as a scalar multiple of a unit vector **u** with the same direction as **v**. To find **u**, divide **v** by its magnitude $|\mathbf{v}|$.

$$\mathbf{u} = \frac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{1}{|\mathbf{v}|}\mathbf{v}$$

Example 4 Find a Unit Vector with the Same Direction as a Given Vector

Find a unit vector u with the same direction as $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 3\rangle$.

$\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{v}|}\mathbf{v}$ — Unit vector with the same direction as v

$= \frac{1}{|\langle -2, 3\rangle|}\langle -2, 3\rangle$ — Substitute.

$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{(-2)^2 + 3^2}}\langle -2, 3\rangle$ — $|\langle a, b\rangle| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$

$= \frac{1}{\sqrt{13}}\langle -2, 3\rangle$ — Simplify.

$= \left\langle -\frac{2}{\sqrt{13}}, \frac{3}{\sqrt{13}}\right\rangle$ — Scalar multiplication

$= \left\langle -\frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}, \frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}\right\rangle$ — Rationalize denominators.

CHECK Since **u** is a scalar multiple of **v**, it has the same direction as **v**. Verify that the magnitude of **u** is 1.

$|\mathbf{u}| = \sqrt{\left(-\frac{2\sqrt{13}}{13}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{3\sqrt{13}}{13}\right)^2}$ — Distance Formula

$= \sqrt{\frac{52}{169} + \frac{117}{169}}$ — Simplify.

$= \sqrt{1}$ or 1 ✓ — Simplify.

GuidedPractice

Find a unit vector with the same direction as the given vector.

4A. $\mathbf{w} = \langle 6, -2\rangle$

4B. $\mathbf{x} = \langle -4, -8\rangle$

WatchOut!

Unit Vector i Do not confuse the unit vector **i** with the imaginary number *i*. The unit vector is denoted by a bold, nonitalic letter **i**. The imaginary number is denoted by a bold italic letter ***i***.

The unit vectors in the direction of the positive x-axis and positive y-axis are denoted by $\mathbf{i} = \langle 1, 0\rangle$ and $\mathbf{j} = \langle 0, 1\rangle$, respectively (Figure 7.2.3). Vectors **i** and **j** are called *standard unit vectors*.

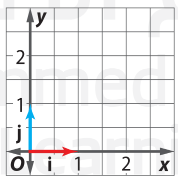


Figure 7.2.3

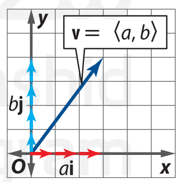


Figure 7.2.4

These vectors can be used to express any vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b\rangle$ as $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ as shown in Figure 7.2.4.

$\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b\rangle$ — Component form of v

$= \langle a, 0\rangle + \langle 0, b\rangle$ — Rewrite as the sum of two vectors.

$= a\langle 1, 0\rangle + b\langle 0, 1\rangle$ — Scalar multiplication

$= a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ — $\langle 1, 0\rangle = \mathbf{i}$ and $\langle 0, 1\rangle = \mathbf{j}$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Hulton Archive/Getty Images

The vector sum $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$ is called a **linear combination** of the vectors **i** and **j**.

Example 5 Write a Vector as a Linear Combination of Unit Vectors

Let $\overrightarrow{DE}$ be the vector with initial point $D(-2, 3)$ and terminal point $E(4, 5)$. Write $\overrightarrow{DE}$ as a linear combination of the vectors i and j.

First, find the component form of $\overrightarrow{DE}$.

$\overrightarrow{DE} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1 \rangle$ Component form

$= \langle 4 - (-2), 5 - 3 \rangle$ $(x_1, y_1) = (-2, 3)$ and $(x_2, y_2) = (4, 5)$

$= \langle 6, 2 \rangle$ Simplify.

Then rewrite the vector as a linear combination of the standard unit vectors.

$\overrightarrow{DE} = \langle 6, 2 \rangle$ Component form

$= 6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$ $\langle a, b \rangle = a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$

GuidedPractice

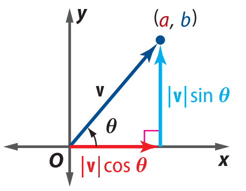
Let $\overrightarrow{DE}$ be the vector with the given initial and terminal points. Write $\overrightarrow{DE}$ as a linear combination of the vectors i and j.

5A. $D(-6, 0), E(2, 5)$ **5B.** $D(-3, -8), E(-7, 1)$

StudyTip

Unit Vector From the statement that $\mathbf{v} = \langle |\mathbf{v}| \cos\theta, |\mathbf{v}| \sin\theta \rangle$, it follows that the unit vector in the direction of **v** has the form $\mathbf{v} = |1 \cos\theta, 1 \sin\theta|$ $= \langle \cos\theta, \sin\theta \rangle$.

A way to specify the direction of a vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b \rangle$ is to state the direction angle θ that **v** makes with the positive x-axis. From Figure 7.2.5, it follows that **v** can be written in component form or as a linear combination of **i** and **j** using the magnitude and direction angle of the vector.



$\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b \rangle$ Component form

$= \langle |\mathbf{v}| \cos\theta, |\mathbf{v}| \sin\theta \rangle$ Substitution

$= |\mathbf{v}| (\cos\theta)\mathbf{i} + |\mathbf{v}| (\sin\theta)\mathbf{j}$ Linear combination of i and j

Example 6 Find Component Form

Find the component form of the vector v with magnitude 10 and direction angle 120°.

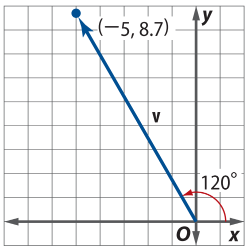
$\mathbf{v} = \langle |\mathbf{v}| \cos\theta, |\mathbf{v}| \sin\theta \rangle$ Component form of v in terms of $|\mathbf{v}|$ and θ

$= \langle 10 \cos 120°, 10 \sin 120° \rangle$ $|\mathbf{v}| = 10$ and $\theta = 120°$

$= \left\langle 10\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right), 10\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right) \right\rangle$ $\cos 120° = -\frac{1}{2}$ and $\sin 120° = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

$= \langle -5, 5\sqrt{3} \rangle$ Simplify.

CHECK Graph $\mathbf{v} = \langle -5, 5\sqrt{3} \rangle \approx \langle -5, 8.7 \rangle$. The measure of the angle **v** makes with the positive x-axis is about 120° as shown, and $|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(-5)^2 + (5\sqrt{3})^2}$ or 10. ✓



GuidedPractice

Find the component form of v with the given magnitude and direction angle.

6A. $|\mathbf{v}| = 8, \theta = 45°$ **6B.** $|\mathbf{v}| = 24, \theta = 210°$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

It also follows from Figure 7.2.5 on the previous page that the direction angle θ of vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b\rangle$ can be found by solving the trigonometric equation $\tan\theta = \frac{|\mathbf{v}|\sin\theta}{|\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta}$ or $\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}$.

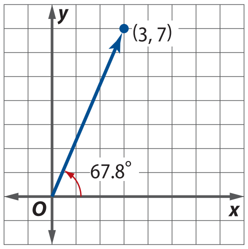


Figure 7.2.6

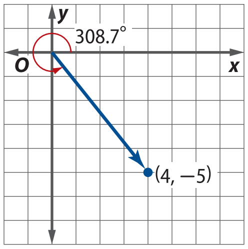


Figure 7.2.7

Example 7 Direction Angles of Vectors

Find the direction angle of each vector to the nearest tenth of a degree.

a. $\mathbf{p} = 3\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$

$\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}$ — Direction angle equation

$\tan\theta = \frac{7}{3}$ — $a = 3$ and $b = 7$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{7}{3}$ — Solve for θ.

$\theta \approx 66.8°$ — Use a calculator.

So, the direction angle of vector **p** is about 67.8° as shown in Figure 7.2.6.

b. $\mathbf{r} = \langle 4, -5\rangle$

$\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}$ — Direction angle equation

$\tan\theta = \frac{-5}{4}$ — $a = 4$ and $b = -5$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{5}{4}\right)$ — Solve for θ.

$\theta \approx -51.3°$ — Use a calculator.

Since **r** lies in Quadrant IV as shown in Figure 7.2.7, $\theta = 360 + (-51.3)$ or 308.7°.

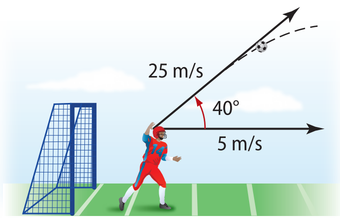
Guided Practice

7A. $-6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$

7B. $\langle -3, -8\rangle$

Real-World Example 8 Applied Vector Operations

SOCCER **A goalkeeper running forward at 5 meters per second throws a ball with a velocity of 25 meters per second at an angle of 40° with the horizontal. What is the resultant speed and direction of the pass?**



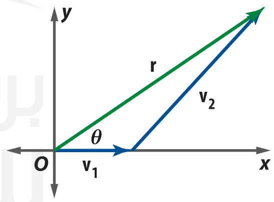
Since the goalkeeper moves straight forward, the component form of his velocity $\mathbf{v}_1$ is $\langle 5, 0\rangle$. Use the magnitude and direction of the ball's velocity $\mathbf{v}_2$ to write this vector in component form.

$\mathbf{v}_2 = \langle |\mathbf{v}_2|\cos\theta, |\mathbf{v}_2|\sin\theta\rangle$ — Component form of v_2

$= \langle 25\cos 40°, 25\sin 40°\rangle$ — $|v_2| = 25$ and $\theta = 40°$

$\approx \langle 19.2, 16.1\rangle$ — Simplify.

Add the algebraic vectors representing $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ to find the resultant velocity, vector **r**.



Note: Not drawn to scale.

$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2$ — Resultant vector

$= \langle 5, 0\rangle + \langle 19.2, 16.1\rangle$ — Substitution

$= \langle 24.2, 16.1\rangle$ — Vector Addition

The magnitude of this resultant is $|\mathbf{r}| = \sqrt{24.2^2 + 16.1^2}$ or about 29.1. Next find the resultant direction angle θ.

$\tan\theta = \frac{16.1}{24.2}$ — $\tan\theta = \frac{b}{a}$ where $\langle a, b\rangle = \langle 24.2, 16.1\rangle$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{16.1}{24.2}$ or about 33.6° — Solve for θ.

Therefore, the resultant velocity of the pass is about 29.1 meters per second at an angle of about 33.6° with the horizontal.

Guided Practice

8. **SOCCER** What would the resultant velocity of the ball be if the goalkeeper made the same pass running 5 meters per second backward?

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points. (Examples 1 and 2)

1. $A(-3, 1)$, $B(4, 5)$

2. $A(2, -7)$, $B(-6, 9)$

3. $A(10, -2)$, $B(3, -5)$

4. $A(-2, 7)$, $B(-9, -1)$

5. $A(-5, -4)$, $B(8, -2)$

6. $A(-2, 6)$, $B(1, 10)$

7. $A(2.5, -3)$, $B(-4, 1.5)$

8. $A(-4.3, 1.8)$, $B(9.4, -6.2)$

9. $A\left(\frac{1}{2}, -9\right)$, $B\left(6, \frac{5}{2}\right)$

10. $A\left(\frac{3}{5}, -\frac{2}{5}\right)$, $B(-1, 7)$

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{f} = \langle 8, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{g} = \langle -3, -5\rangle$, and $\mathbf{h} = \langle -6, 2\rangle$. (Example 3)

11. $4\mathbf{h} - \mathbf{g}$

12. $\mathbf{f} + 2\mathbf{h}$

13. $3\mathbf{g} - 5\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{h}$

14. $2\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{g} - 3\mathbf{h}$

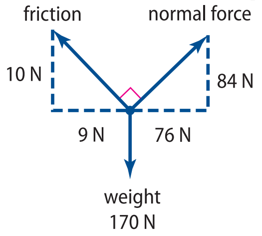
15. $\mathbf{f} - 2\mathbf{g} - 2\mathbf{h}$

16. $\mathbf{h} - 4\mathbf{f} + 5\mathbf{g}$

17. $4\mathbf{g} - 3\mathbf{f} + \mathbf{h}$

18. $6\mathbf{h} + 5\mathbf{f} - 10\mathbf{g}$

19. **PHYSICS** In physics, force diagrams are used to show the effects of all the different forces acting upon an object. The following force diagram could represent the forces acting upon a child sliding down a slide. (Example 3)



a. Using the blue dot representing the child as the origin, express each force as a vector in component form.

b. Find the component form of the resultant vector representing the force that causes the child to move down the slide.

Find a unit vector u with the same direction as v. (Example 4)

20. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 7\rangle$

21. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 9, -3\rangle$

22. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -8, -5\rangle$

23. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 6, 3\rangle$

24. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 9\rangle$

25. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -1, -5\rangle$

26. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 7\rangle$

27. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -4\rangle$

Let $\overrightarrow{DE}$ be the vector with the given initial and terminal points. Write $\overrightarrow{DE}$ as a linear combination of the vectors i and j. (Example 5)

28. $D(4, -1)$, $E(5, -7)$

29. $D(9, -6)$, $E(-7, 2)$

30. $D(3, 11)$, $E(-2, -8)$

31. $D(9.5, 1)$, $E(0, -7.3)$

32. $D(-3, -5.7)$, $E(6, -8.1)$

33. $D(-4, -6)$, $E(9, 5)$

34. $D\left(\frac{1}{8}, 3\right)$, $E\left(-4, \frac{2}{7}\right)$

35. $D(-3, 1.5)$, $E(-3, 1.5)$

36. **COMMUTE** To commute to school, Lamis leaves her house and drives north on Al Nasr Street for 2.4 kilometers. She turns left on Freedom Street for 3.1 kilometers and then turns right on Hope Street for 5.8 kilometers. Express Lamis' commute as a linear combination of unit vectors **i** and **j**. (Example 5)

37. **ROWING** Najat is rowing across a river at a speed of 5 kilometers per hour perpendicular to the shore. The river has a current of 3 kilometers per hour heading downstream. (Example 5)

a. At what speed is she traveling?

b. At what angle is she traveling with respect to the shore?

Find the component form of v with the given magnitude and direction angle. (Example 6)

38. $|\mathbf{v}| = 12$, $\theta = 60°$

39. $|\mathbf{v}| = 4$, $\theta = 135°$

40. $|\mathbf{v}| = 6$, $\theta = 240°$

41. $|\mathbf{v}| = 16$, $\theta = 330°$

42. $|\mathbf{v}| = 28$, $\theta = 273°$

43. $|\mathbf{v}| = 15$, $\theta = 125°$

Find the direction angle of each vector to the nearest tenth of a degree. (Example 7)

44. $3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}$

45. $-2\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j}$

46. $8\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$

47. $-4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$

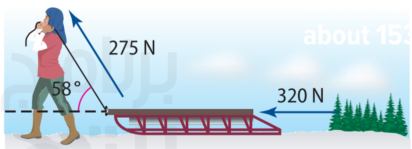
48. $\langle -5, 9\rangle$

49. $\langle 7, 7\rangle$

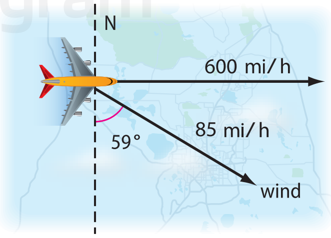
50. $\langle -6, -4\rangle$

51. $\langle 3, -8\rangle$

52. **SLEDDING** Hiyam is pulling a sled with a force of 275 newtons by holding its rope at a 58° angle. Her brother is going to help by pushing the sled with a force of 320 newtons. Determine the magnitude and direction of the total resultant force on the sled. (Example 8)



53. **NAVIGATION** An airplane is traveling due east with a speed of 600 miles per hour. The wind blows at 85 miles per hour at an angle of S59°E. (Example 8)



a. Determine the speed of the airplane's flight.

b. Determine the angle of the airplane's flight.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

54. **HEADING** A pilot needs to plot a course that will result in a velocity of 500 miles per hour in a direction of due west. If the wind is blowing 100 miles per hour from the directed angle of 192°, find the direction and the speed the pilot should set to achieve this resultant.

Determine whether $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$ with the initial and terminal points given are equivalent. If so, prove that $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{CD}$. If not, explain why not.

55. $A(3, 5), B(6, 9), C(-4, -4), D(-2, 0)$

56. $A(-4, -5), B(-8, 1), C(3, -3), D(1, 0)$

57. $A(1, -3), B(0, -10), C(11, 8), D(10, 1)$

58. **RAFTING** Hana's family is rafting across a river. Suppose that they are on a stretch of the river that is 150 meters wide, flowing south at a rate of 1.0 meter per second. In still water, their raft travels 5.0 meters per second.

a. What is the speed of the raft?

b. How far downriver will the raft land?

c. How long does it take them to travel from one bank to the other if they head directly across the river?

59. **NAVIGATION** A jet is flying with an air speed of 480 miles per hour at a bearing of N82°E. Because of the wind, the ground speed of the plane is 518 miles per hour at a bearing of N79°E.

a. Draw a diagram to represent the situation.

b. What are the speed and direction of the wind?

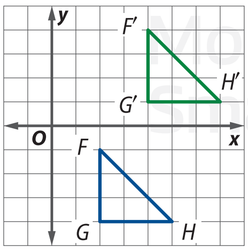
c. If the pilot increased the air speed of the plane to 500 miles per hour, what would be the resulting ground speed and direction of the plane?

60. **TRANSLATIONS** You can translate a figure along a translation vector $\langle a, b\rangle$ by adding a to each x-coordinate and b to each y-coordinate. Consider the triangles shown below.

a. Describe the translation from $\triangle FGH$ to $\triangle F'G'H'$ using a translation vector.

b. Graph $\triangle F'G'H'$ and its translated image $\triangle F''G''H''$ along $\langle -3, -6\rangle$.

c. Describe the translation from $\triangle FGH$ to $\triangle F''G''H''$ using a translation vector.

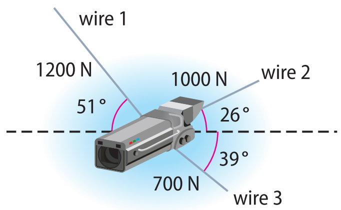


Given the initial point and magnitude of each vector, determine a possible terminal point of the vector.

61. $(-1, 4); \sqrt{37}$

62. $(-3, -7); 10$

63. **CAMERA** A video camera that follows the action at a sporting event is supported by three wires. The tension in each wire can be modeled by a vector.

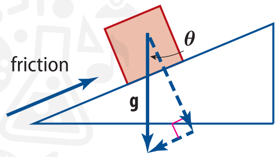


a. Find the component form of each vector.

b. Find the component form of the resultant vector acting on the camera.

c. Find the magnitude and direction of the resulting force.

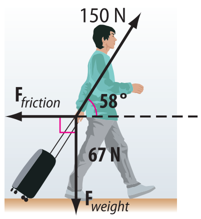
64. **FORCE** A box is stationary on a ramp. Both gravity **g** and friction are exerted on the box. The components of gravity are shown in the diagram. What must be true of the force of friction for this scenario to be possible?



H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

65. **REASONING** If vectors **a** and **b** are parallel, write a vector equation relating **a** and **b**.

66. **CHALLENGE** To pull luggage, Ahmed exerts a force of 150 newtons at an angle of 58° with the horizontal. If the resultant force on the luggage is 72 newtons at an angle of 56.7° with the horizontal, what is the magnitude of the resultant of $\mathbf{F}_{friction}$ and $\mathbf{F}_{weight}$?



67. **REASONING** If given the initial point of a vector and its magnitude, describe the locus of points that represent possible locations for the terminal point.

68. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain how to find the direction angle of a vector in the fourth quadrant.

69. **CHALLENGE** The direction angle of $\langle x, y\rangle$ is $(4y)°$. Find x in terms of y.

PROOF **Prove each vector property. Let $\mathbf{a} = \langle x_1, y_1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle x_2, y_2\rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle x_3, y_3\rangle$.**

70. $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}$

71. $(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{a} + (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$

72. $k(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = k\mathbf{a} + k\mathbf{b}$, where k is a scalar

73. $|k\mathbf{a}| = |k|\,|\mathbf{a}|$, where k is a scalar

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Spiral Review

74. TOYS Fahd is pulling a toy by exerting a force of 1.5 newtons on a string attached to the toy.

a. The string makes an angle of 52° with the floor. Find the horizontal and vertical components of the force.

b. If Fahd raises the string so that it makes a 78° angle with the floor, what are the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components of the force?

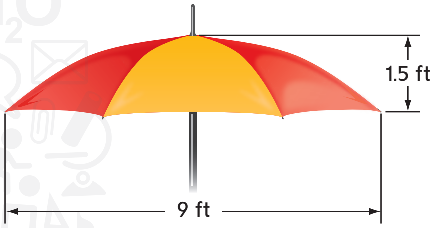
Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form.

75. $y = t^2 + 2,\ x = 3t - 6$

76. $y = t^2 - 5,\ x = 2t + 8$

77. $y = 7t,\ x = t^2 - 1$

78. UMBRELLAS A beach umbrella has an arch in the shape of a parabola. Write an equation to model the arch, assuming that the origin and the vertex are at the point where the pole and the canopy of the umbrella meet. Express y in terms of x.



Decompose each expression into partial fractions.

79. $\dfrac{5z - 11}{2z^2 + z - 6}$

80. $\dfrac{7x^2 + 18x - 1}{(x^2 - 1)(x + 2)}$

81. $\dfrac{9 - 9x}{x^2 - 9}$

Verify each identity.

82. $\sin(\theta + 180°) = -\sin\theta$

83. $\sin(60° + \theta) + \sin(60° - \theta) = \sqrt{3}\cos\theta$

Express each logarithm in terms of ln 3 and ln 7.

84. $\ln 189$

85. $\ln 5.\overline{4}$

86. $\ln 441$

87. $\ln \dfrac{9}{343}$

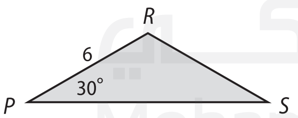
Find each $f(c)$ using synthetic substitution.

88. $f(x) = 6x^6 - 9x^4 + 12x^3 - 16x^2 + 8x + 24;\ c = 6$

89. $f(x) = 8x^5 - 12x^4 + 18x^3 - 24x^2 + 36x - 48,\ c = 4$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

90. SAT/ACT If $PR = RS$, what is the area of triangle PRS?



A $9\sqrt{2}$
B $9\sqrt{3}$
C $18\sqrt{2}$
D $18\sqrt{3}$
E $36\sqrt{3}$

91. REVIEW Faleh has made a game for his younger sister's graduation celebration. The playing board is a circle divided evenly into 8 sectors. If the circle has a radius of 18 centimeters, what is the approximate area of one of the sectors?

F 4 cm^2
G 32 cm^2
H 127 cm^2
J 254 cm^2

92. Paramedics Ibrahim and Ismail are moving a person on a stretcher. Ibrahim is pushing the stretcher from behind with a force of 135 newtons at 58° with the horizontal, while Ismail is pulling the stretcher from the front with a force of 214 newtons at 43° with the horizontal. What is the magnitude of the horizontal force exerted on the stretcher?

A 228 newtons
B 260 newtons
C 299 newtons
D 346 newtons

93. REVIEW Find the center and radius of the circle with equation $(x - 4)^2 + y^2 - 16 = 0$.

F $C(-4, 0);\ r = 4$ units
G $C(-4, 0);\ r = 16$ units
H $C(4, 0);\ r = 4$ units
J $C(4, 0);\ r = 16$ units

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-3 Dot Products and Vector Projections

Then

- You found the magnitudes of and operated with algebraic vectors.

Now

- **1** Find the dot product of two vectors, and use the dot product to find the angle between them.
- **2** Find the projection of one vector onto another.

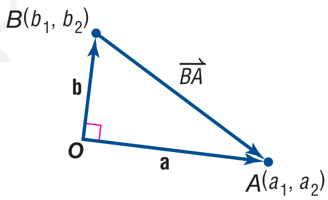
Why?

- The word *work* can have different meanings in everyday life; but in physics, its definition is very specific. Work is the magnitude of a force applied to an object multiplied by the distance through which the object moves parallel to this applied force. Work, such as that done to push a car a specific distance, can also be calculated using a vector operation called a *dot product*.

NewVocabulary
dot product
orthogonal
vector projection
work

1 Dot Product

In Lesson 7-2, you studied the vector operations of vector addition and scalar multiplication. In this lesson, you will use a third vector operation. Consider two perpendicular vectors in standard position **a** and **b**. Let $\overrightarrow{BA}$ be the vector between their terminal points as shown in the figure. By the Pythagorean Theorem, we know that



$$|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2.$$

Using the definition of the magnitude of a vector, we can find $|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2$.

$$|\overrightarrow{BA}| = \sqrt{(a_1 - b_1)^2 + (a_2 - b_2)^2} \qquad \text{Definition of vector magnitude}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2 = (a_1 - b_1)^2 + (a_2 - b_2)^2 \qquad \text{Square each side.}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2 = a_1^2 - 2a_1b_1 + b_1^2 + a_2^2 - 2a_2b_2 + b_2^2 \qquad \text{Expand each binomial square.}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2 = (a_1^2 + a_2^2) + (b_1^2 + b_2^2) - 2(a_1b_1 + a_2b_2) \qquad \text{Group the squared terms.}$$

$$|\overrightarrow{BA}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2(a_1b_1 + a_2b_2) \qquad |\mathbf{a}| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2} \text{ so } |\mathbf{a}|^2 = a_1^2 + a_2^2 \text{ and } |\mathbf{b}| = \sqrt{b_1^2 + b_2^2}, \text{ so } |\mathbf{b}|^2 = b_1^2 + b_2^2.$$

Notice that the expressions $|\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2$ and $|\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2(a_1b_1 + a_2b_2)$ are equivalent if and only if $a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 = 0$. The expression $a_1b_1 + a_2b_2$ is called the **dot product** of **a** and **b**, denoted $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ and read as *a dot b*.

KeyConcept Dot Product of Vectors in a Plane

The dot product of $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2 \rangle$ is defined as $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2$.

Notice that unlike vector addition and scalar multiplication, the dot product of two vectors yields a scalar, not a vector. As demonstrated above, two nonzero vectors are perpendicular if and only if their dot product is 0. Two vectors with a dot product of 0 are said to be **orthogonal**.

KeyConcept Orthogonal Vectors

The vectors **a** and **b** are orthogonal if and only if $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$.

The terms *perpendicular* and *orthogonal* have essentially the same meaning, except when **a** or **b** is the zero vector. The zero vector is orthogonal to any vector **a**, since $\langle 0, 0 \rangle \cdot \langle a_1, a_2 \rangle = 0a_1 + 0a_2$ or 0. However, since the zero vector has no magnitude or direction, it cannot be perpendicular to **a**.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education   Vuk Vukmirovic/123RF

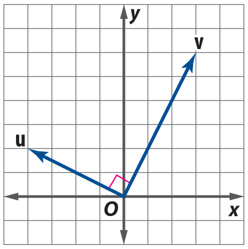


Figure 7.3.1

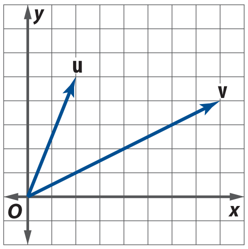


Figure 7.3.2

Example 1 Find the Dot Product to Determine Orthogonal Vectors

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal.

a. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 6 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 2 \rangle$

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 3(-4) + 6(2)$$
$$= 0$$

Since $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$, **u** and **v** are orthogonal, as illustrated in Figure 7.3.1.

b. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 5 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 8, 4 \rangle$

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 2(8) + 5(4)$$
$$= 36$$

Since $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} \neq 0$, **u** and **v** are not orthogonal, as illustrated in Figure 7.3.2.

GuidedPractice

1A. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -5, 1 \rangle$

1B. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, -3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 9, -6 \rangle$

Dot products have the following properties.

KeyConcept Properties of the Dot Product

If **u**, **v**, and **w** are vectors and k is a scalar, then the following properties hold.

Commutative Property	$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$
Distributive Property	$\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$
Scalar Multiplication Property	$k(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) = k\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot k\mathbf{v}$
Zero Vector Dot Product Property	$\mathbf{0} \cdot \mathbf{u} = 0$
Dot Product and Vector Magnitude Relationship	$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = \lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert^2$

Proof

Proof $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = \lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert^2$

Let $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2 \rangle$.

$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = {u_1}^2 + {u_2}^2$ — Dot product

$= \left(\sqrt{({u_1}^2 + {u_2}^2)}\right)^2$ — Write as the square of the square root of $u_1^2 + u_2^2$.

$= \lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert^2$ — $\sqrt{u_1^2 + u_2^2} = \lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert$

You will prove the first three properties in Exercises 70–72.

ReadingMath

Inner and Scalar Products
The dot product is also called the *inner product* or the *scalar product*.

Example 2 Use the Dot Product to Find Magnitude

Use the dot product to find the magnitude of $\mathbf{a} = \langle -5, 12 \rangle$.

Since $\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}$, then $\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert = \sqrt{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}}$.

$\lvert\langle -5, 12 \rangle\rvert = \sqrt{\langle -5, 12 \rangle \cdot \langle -5, 12 \rangle}$ — $\mathbf{a} = \langle -5, 12 \rangle$

$= \sqrt{(-5)^2 + 12^2}$ or 13 — Simplify.

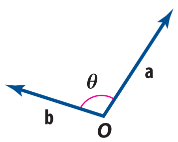
GuidedPractice

Use the dot product to find the magnitude of the given vector.

2A. $\mathbf{b} = \langle 12, 16 \rangle$

2B. $\mathbf{c} = \langle -1, -7 \rangle$

The angle θ between any two nonzero vectors **a** and **b** is the corresponding angle between these vectors when placed in standard position, as shown. This angle is always measured such that $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$ or $0^\circ \leq \theta \leq 180^\circ$. The dot product can be used to find the angle between two nonzero vectors.



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

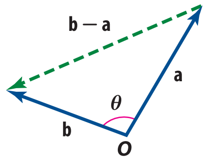
StudyTip

Parallel and Perpendicular Vectors Two vectors are perpendicular if the angle between them is 90°. Two vectors are parallel if the angle between them is 0° or 180°.

KeyConcept Angle Between Two Vectors

If θ is the angle between nonzero vectors **a** and **b**, then

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|}.$$



Proof

Consider the triangle determined by **a**, **b**, and **b** − **a** in the figure above.

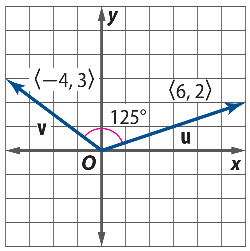
$\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 + \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2 - 2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert\cos\theta = \lvert\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a}\rvert^2$	Law of Cosines
$\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 + \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2 - 2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert\cos\theta = (\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a})\cdot(\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{a})$	$\lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert^2 = \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u}$
$\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 + \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2 - 2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert\cos\theta = \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a}$	Distributive Property for Dot Products
$\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 + \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2 - 2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert\cos\theta = \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2 - 2\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} + \lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2$	$\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = \lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert^2$
$-2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert\cos\theta = -2\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$	Subtract $\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert^2 + \lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert^2$ from each side.
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert}$	Divide each side by $-2\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert$.

Example 3 Find the Angle Between Two Vectors

Find the angle θ between vectors u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree.

a. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, 2\rangle$ **and** $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 3\rangle$

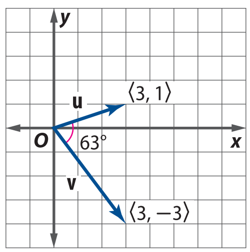
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert\,\lvert\mathbf{v}\rvert}$	Angle between two vectors
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\langle 6, 2\rangle\cdot\langle -4, 3\rangle}{\lvert\langle 6, 2\rangle\rvert\,\lvert\langle -4, 3\rangle\rvert}$	$\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, 2\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 3\rangle$
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{-24 + 6}{\sqrt{40}\,\sqrt{25}}$	Evaluate.
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{-9}{5\sqrt{10}}$	Simplify.
$\theta = \cos^{-1}\dfrac{-9}{5\sqrt{10}}$ or about 124.7°	Solve for θ.



The measure of the angle between **u** and **v** is about 124.7°.

b. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 1\rangle$ **and** $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -3\rangle$

$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\lvert\mathbf{u}\rvert\,\lvert\mathbf{v}\rvert}$	Angle between two vectors
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\langle 3, 1\rangle\cdot\langle 3, -3\rangle}{\lvert\langle 3, 1\rangle\rvert\,\lvert\langle 3, -3\rangle\rvert}$	$\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 1\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -3\rangle$
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{9 + (-3)}{\sqrt{10}\,\sqrt{18}}$	Evaluate.
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$	Simplify.
$\theta = \cos^{-1}\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{5}}$ or about 63.4°	Solve for θ.



The measure of the angle between **u** and **v** is about 63.4°.

GuidedPractice

3A. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -5, -2\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 4\rangle$

3B. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 9, 5\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -6, 7\rangle$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

2 Vector Projection

In Lesson 7-1, you learned that a vector can be resolved or decomposed into two perpendicular components. While these components are often horizontal and vertical, it is sometimes useful instead for one component to be parallel to another vector.

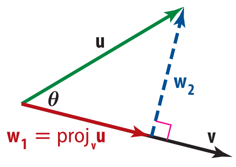
StudyTip

Perpendicular Component The vector $\mathbf{w}_2$ is called the *component of* **u** *perpendicular to* **v**.

KeyConcept Projection of u onto v

Let **u** and **v** be nonzero vectors, and let $\mathbf{w}_1$ and $\mathbf{w}_2$ be vector components of **u** such that $\mathbf{w}_1$ is parallel to **v** as shown. Then vector $\mathbf{w}_1$ is called the **vector projection** of **u** onto **v**, denoted $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u}$, and

$$\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}.$$



Proof

Since $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u}$ is parallel to **v**, it can be written as a scalar multiple of **v**. As a scalar multiple of a unit vector $\mathbf{v}_x$ with the same direction as **v**, $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{w}_1|\,\mathbf{v}_x$. Use the right triangle formed by $\mathbf{w}_1$, $\mathbf{w}_2$, and **u** and the cosine ratio to find an expression for $|\mathbf{w}_1|$.

$\cos\theta = \dfrac{|\mathbf{w}_1|}{|\mathbf{u}|}$ — Cosine ratio

$|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = \cancel{|\mathbf{u}|}\,|\mathbf{v}|\,\dfrac{|\mathbf{w}_1|}{\cancel{|\mathbf{u}|}}$ — Multiply each side by the scalar quantity $|\mathbf{u}|\ |\mathbf{v}|$.

$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = |\mathbf{v}|\,|\mathbf{w}_1|$ — $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|}$, so $|\mathbf{u}|\ |\mathbf{v}|\cos\theta = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.

$|\mathbf{w}_1| = \dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ — Solve for $|\mathbf{w}_1|$.

Now use $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{w}_1|\,\mathbf{v}_x$ to find $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u}$ as a scalar multiple of **v**.

$\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u} = |\mathbf{w}_1|\,\mathbf{v}_x$

$= \dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|} \cdot \dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ — $|\mathbf{w}_1| = \dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$ and $\mathbf{v}_x = \dfrac{\mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|}$

$= \left(\dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}$ — Multiply magnitudes.

Example 4 Find the Projection of u onto v

Find the projection of u = ⟨3, 2⟩ onto v = ⟨5, −5⟩. Then write u as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of u onto v.

Step 1 Find the projection of **u** onto **v**.

$$\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}$$
$$= \frac{\langle 3, 2\rangle \cdot \langle 5, -5\rangle}{|\langle 5, -5\rangle|^2}\langle 5, -5\rangle$$
$$= \frac{5}{50}\langle 5, -5\rangle$$
$$= \left\langle \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle$$

Step 2 Find $\mathbf{w}_2$.

Since $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2$, $\mathbf{w}_2 = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}_1$.

$$\mathbf{w}_2 = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}_1$$
$$= \mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u}$$
$$= \langle 3, 2\rangle - \left\langle \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle$$
$$= \left\langle \frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\right\rangle$$

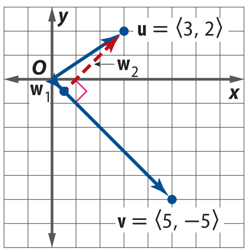


Figure 7.3.5

Therefore, $\text{proj}_\mathbf{v}\mathbf{u}$ is $\mathbf{w}_1 = \left\langle \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle$ as shown in Figure 7.3.5, and $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle \frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}\right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{5}{2}, \frac{5}{2}\right\rangle$.

GuidedPractice

4. Find the projection of **u** = ⟨1, 2⟩ onto **v** = ⟨8, 5⟩. Then write **u** as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of **u** onto **v**.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

While the projection of **u** onto **v** is a vector parallel to **v**, this vector will not necessarily have the same direction as **v**, as illustrated in the next example.

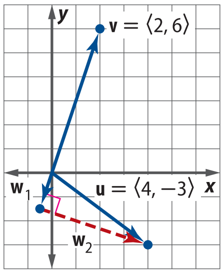


Figure 7.3.6

Example 5 Projection with Direction Opposite v

Find the projection of u = ⟨4, −3⟩ onto v = ⟨2, 6⟩. Then write u as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of u onto v.

Notice that the angle between **u** and **v** is obtuse, so the projection of **u** onto **v** lies on the vector opposite **v** or −**v**, as shown in Figure 7.3.6.

Step 1 Find the projection of **u** onto **v**.

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v}$$

$$= \frac{\langle 4, -3\rangle \cdot \langle 2, 6\rangle}{|\langle 2, 6\rangle|^2}\langle 2, 6\rangle$$

$$= \frac{-10}{40}\langle 2, 6\rangle \text{ or } \left\langle -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle$$

Step 2 Find $\mathbf{w}_2$.

Since $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{w}_1 + \mathbf{w}_2$, $\mathbf{w}_2 = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}_1$ or $\mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u}$.

$$\mathbf{u} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -3\rangle - \left\langle -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle$$

$$= \left\langle \frac{9}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle$$

Therefore, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{w}_1 = \left\langle -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle$ and $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle -\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{9}{2}, -\frac{3}{2}\right\rangle$.

GuidedPractice

5. Find the projection of u = ⟨−3, 4⟩ onto **v** = ⟨6, 1⟩. Then write **u** as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of **u** onto **v**.

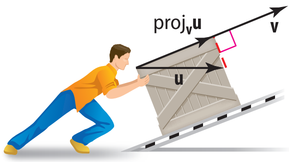
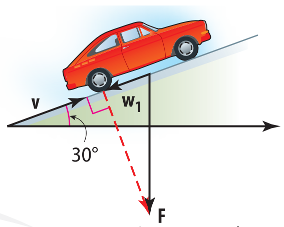


Figure 7.3.7

If the vector **u** represents a force, then $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u}$ represents the effect of that force acting in the direction of **v**. For example, if you push a box uphill (in the direction **v**) with a force **u** (Figure 7.3.7), the effective force is a component push in the direction of **v**, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u}$.

Real-World Example 6 Use a Vector Projection to Find a Force

CARS **A 3000- pounds car sits on a hill inclined at 30° as shown. Ignoring the force of friction, what force is required to keep the car from rolling down the hill?**



Note: Not drawn to scale

The weight of the car is the force exerted due to gravity, **F** = ⟨0, −3000⟩. To find the force $-\mathbf{w}_1$ required to keep the car from rolling down the hill, project **F** onto a unit vector **v** in the direction of the side of the hill.

Step 1 Find a unit vector **v** in the direction of the hill.

$$\mathbf{v} = \langle |\mathbf{v}|\,(\cos\theta), |\mathbf{v}|\,(\sin\theta)\rangle \qquad \text{Component form of v in terms of } |\mathbf{v}| \text{ and } \theta$$

$$= \langle 1(\cos 30°), 1(\sin 30°)\rangle \text{ or } \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right\rangle \qquad |\mathbf{v}| = 1 \text{ and } \theta = 30°$$

Step 2 Find $\mathbf{w}_1$, the projection of **F** onto unit vector **v**, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{F}$.

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{F} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{v}|^2}\right)\mathbf{v} \qquad \text{Projection of F onto v}$$

$$= (\mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{v} \qquad \text{Since v is a unit vector, } |\mathbf{v}| = 1\text{. Simplify.}$$

$$= \left(\langle 0, -3000\rangle \cdot \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right\rangle\right)\mathbf{v} \qquad \mathbf{F} = \langle 0, -3000\rangle \text{ and } \mathbf{v} = \left\langle \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right\rangle$$

$$= -1500\mathbf{v} \qquad \text{Find the dot product.}$$

The force required is $-\mathbf{w}_1 = -(-1500\ \mathbf{v})$ or 1500**v**. Since **v** is a unit vector, this means that this force has a magnitude of 1500 pounds and is in the direction of the side of the hill.

GuidedPractice

6. **SLEDDING** Nisreen sits on a sled on the side of a hill inclined at 60°. What force is required to keep the sled from sliding down the hill if the weight of Nisreen and the sled is 125 kilograms?

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Another application of vector projection is the calculation of the work done by a force. Consider a constant force **F** acting on an object to move it from point A to point B as shown in Figure 7.3.8. If **F** is parallel to $\overrightarrow{AB}$, then the **work** W done by **F** is the magnitude of the force times the distance from A to B or $W = |\mathbf{F}||\overrightarrow{AB}|$.

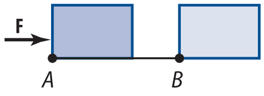


Figure 7.3.8

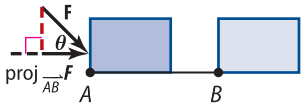


Figure 7.3.9

To calculate the work done by a constant force **F** in *any* direction to move an object from point A to B, as shown in Figure 7.3.9 you can use the vector projection of **F** onto $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

$W = |\text{proj}_{\overrightarrow{AB}}\mathbf{F}|\,|\overrightarrow{AB}|$ — Projection formula for work

$= |\mathbf{F}|\,(\cos\theta)\,|\overrightarrow{AB}|$ — $\cos\theta = \dfrac{|\text{proj}_{\overrightarrow{AB}}\mathbf{F}|}{|\mathbf{F}|}$, so $|\text{proj}_{\overrightarrow{AB}}\mathbf{F}| = |\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta$.

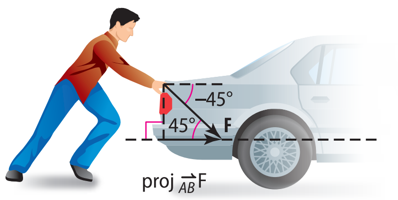
$= \mathbf{F} \cdot \overrightarrow{AB}$ — $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{F}\cdot\overrightarrow{AB}}{|\mathbf{F}|\,|\overrightarrow{AB}|}$, so $|\mathbf{F}|\,|\overrightarrow{AB}|\cos\theta = \mathbf{F}\cdot\overrightarrow{AB}$.

Therefore, this work can be calculated by finding the dot product of the constant force **F** and the directed distance $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

> **Study Tip**
>
> **Units for Work** Work is measured in foot-pounds in the customary system of measurement and in newton-meters (N·m) or joules (J) in the metric system.

Real-World Example 7 Calculate Work

ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE **A person pushes a car with a constant force of 120 newtons at a constant angle of 45° as shown. Find the work done in joules moving the car 10 meters.**



Method 1 Use the projection formula for work.

The magnitude of the projection of **F** onto $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is $|\mathbf{F}|\cos\theta = 120\cos 45°$. The magnitude of the directed distance $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is 10.

$W = |\text{proj}_{\overrightarrow{AB}}\mathbf{F}||\overrightarrow{AB}|$ — Projection formula for work

$= (120\cos 45°)(10)$ or about 848.5 — Substitution

Method 2 Use the dot product formula for work.

The component form of the force vector **F** in terms of magnitude and direction angle given is $\langle 120\cos(-45°), 120\sin(-45°)\rangle$. The component form of the directed distance the car is moved is $\langle 10, 0\rangle$.

$W = \mathbf{F}\cdot\overrightarrow{AB}$ — Dot product formula for work

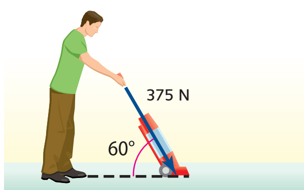
$= \langle 120\cos(-45°), 120\sin(-45°)\rangle \cdot \langle 10, 0\rangle$ — Substitution

$= [120\cos(-45°)](10)$ or about 848.5 — Dot product

Therefore, the person does about 848.5 joules of work pushing the car.

Guided Practice

7. **CLEANING** Faris is pushing a vacuum cleaner with a force of 375 Newtons. The handle of the vacuum cleaner makes a 60° angle with the floor. How much work in Newton-meters does he do if he pushes the vacuum cleaner 2 meters?



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal. (Example 1)

1. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -5\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 6, 2\rangle$
2. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -10, -16\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -8, 5\rangle$
3. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 9, -3\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 3\rangle$
4. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 7, 5\rangle$
5. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, -4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 8\rangle$
6. $\mathbf{u} = 11\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}; \mathbf{v} = -7\mathbf{i} + 11\mathbf{j}$
7. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -4, 6\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -5, -2\rangle$
8. $\mathbf{u} = 8\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}; \mathbf{v} = -\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$

9. **SPORTING GOODS** The vector $\mathbf{u} = \langle 406, 297\rangle$ gives the numbers of men's basketballs and women's basketballs, respectively, in stock at a sporting goods store. The vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle 27.5, 15\rangle$ gives the prices in dirhams of the two types of basketballs, respectively. (Example 1)
   a. Find the dot product $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$.
   b. Interpret the result in the context of the problem.

Use the dot product to find the magnitude of the given vector. (Example 2)

10. $\mathbf{m} = \langle -3, 11\rangle$
11. $\mathbf{r} = \langle -9, -4\rangle$
12. $\mathbf{n} = \langle 6, 12\rangle$
13. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, -18\rangle$
14. $\mathbf{p} = \langle -7, -2\rangle$
15. $\mathbf{t} = \langle 23, -16\rangle$

Find the angle θ between u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree. (Example 3)

16. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 0, -5\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 1, -4\rangle$
17. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 7, 10\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 4, -4\rangle$
18. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, 4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, -10\rangle$
19. $\mathbf{u} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = -4\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$
20. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -9, 0\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -1, -1\rangle$
21. $\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = -7\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$
22. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, 0\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -10, 8\rangle$
23. $\mathbf{u} = -10\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = 10\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j}$

24. **CAMPING** Omar and Ali set off from their campsite to search for firewood. The path that Omar takes can be represented by $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -5\rangle$. The path that Ali takes can be represented by $\mathbf{v} = \langle -7, 6\rangle$. Find the angle between the pair of vectors. (Example 3)

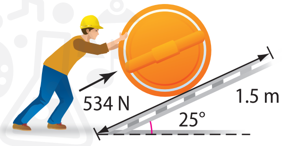
Find the projection of u onto v. Then write u as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of u onto v. (Examples 4 and 5)

25. $\mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = -5\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$
26. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 7\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 4\rangle$
27. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 8, 2\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 1\rangle$
28. $\mathbf{u} = 6\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = -3\mathbf{i} + 9\mathbf{j}$
29. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -3, 8\rangle$
30. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -5, 9\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 6, 4\rangle$
31. $\mathbf{u} = 5\mathbf{i} - 8\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = 6\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j}$
32. $\mathbf{u} = -2\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = 9\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j}$

33. **WAGON** Eissa is pulling his sister in a wagon up a small slope at an incline of 15°. If the combined weight of Eissa's sister and the wagon is 344 Newtons, what force is required to keep her from rolling down the slope? (Example 6)

34. **SLIDE** Najla is going down a slide but stops herself when she notices that another student is lying hurt at the bottom of the slide. What force is required to keep her from sliding down the slide if the incline is 53° and she weighs 273 N? (Example 6)

35. **PHYSICS** Ali is pushing a construction barrel up a ramp 1.5 meters long into the back of a truck. She is using a force of 534 newtons and the ramp is 25° from the horizontal. How much work in joules is Ali doing? (Example 7)

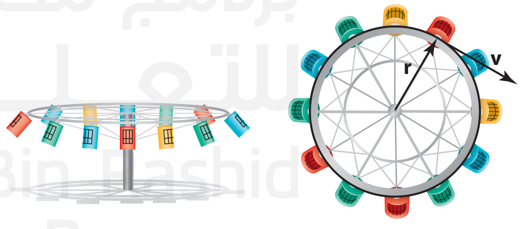


36. **SHOPPING** Suha is pushing a shopping cart with a force of 125 newtons at a downward angle, or angle of depression, of 52°. How much work in joules would Suha do if she pushed the shopping cart 200 meters? (Example 7)

Find a vector orthogonal to each vector.

37. $\langle -2, -8\rangle$
38. $\langle 3, 5\rangle$
39. $\langle 7, -4\rangle$
40. $\langle -1, 6\rangle$

41. **RIDES** For a circular amusement park ride, the position vector $\mathbf{r}$ is perpendicular to the tangent velocity vector $\mathbf{v}$ at any point on the circle, as shown below.



   a. If the radius of the ride is 20 feet and the speed of the ride is constant at 40 feet per second, write the component forms of the position vector $\mathbf{r}$ and the tangent velocity vector $\mathbf{v}$ when $\mathbf{r}$ is at a directed angle of 35°.
   b. What method can be used to prove that the position vector and the velocity vector that you developed in part **a** are perpendicular? Show that the two vectors are perpendicular.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Given v and u • v, find u.

42. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -6\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 33$

43. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 6\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 38$

44. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -5, -1\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -8$

45. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 7\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -43$

46. **SCHOOL** A student rolls her backpack from her Chemistry classroom to her English classroom using a force of 175 newtons.

a. If she exerts 3060 joules to pull her backpack 31 meters, what is the angle of her force?

b. If she exerts 1315 joules at an angle of 60°, how far did she pull her backpack?

Determine whether each pair of vectors are *parallel*, *perpendicular*, or *neither*. Explain your reasoning.

47. $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle -\frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{4}\right\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 9, 8\rangle$

48. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, -4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 6\rangle$

49. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 7\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -15, -21\rangle$

50. $\mathbf{u} = \langle \sec\theta, \csc\theta\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle \csc\theta, -\sec\theta\rangle$

Find the angle between the two vectors in radians.

51. $\mathbf{u} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = \cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{j}$

52. $\mathbf{u} = \cos\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = \cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{j}$

53. $\mathbf{u} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)\mathbf{j}$

54. $\mathbf{u} = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{v} = \cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{i} + \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)\mathbf{j}$

55. **WORK** Adnan lifts his nephew, who weighs 16 kilograms, a distance of 0.9 meter. The force of weight in newtons can be calculated using $F = mg$, where m is the mass in kilograms and g is 9.8 meters per second squared. How much work did Adnan do to lift his nephew?

The vertices of a triangle on the coordinate plane are given. Find the measures of the angles of each triangle using vectors. Round to the nearest tenth of a degree.

56. (2, 3), (4, 7), (8, 1)

57. (−3, −2), (−3, −7), (3, −7)

58. (−4, −3), (−8, −2), (2, 1)

59. (1, 5), (4, −3), (−4, 0)

Given u, |v|, and *θ*, the angle between u and v, find possible values of v. Round to the nearest hundredth.

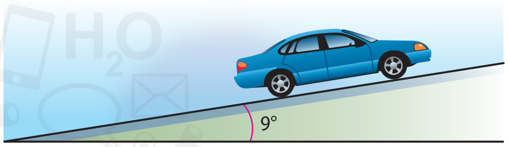
60. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -2\rangle$, $|\mathbf{v}| = 10$, 45°

61. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 4\rangle$, $|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{29}$, 121°

62. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, -6\rangle$, $|\mathbf{v}| = 7$, 96°

63. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, 5\rangle$, $|\mathbf{v}| = 12$, 27°

64. **CARS** A car is stationary on a 9° incline. Assuming that the only forces acting on the car are gravity and the 275 newton force applied by the brakes, about how much does the car weigh?



H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

65. **REASONING** Determine whether the statement below is *true* or *false*. Explain.

If $|\mathbf{d}|$, $|\mathbf{e}|$, and $|\mathbf{f}|$ form a Pythagorean triple, and the angles between **d** and **e** and between **e** and **f** are acute, then the angle between **d** and **f** must be a right angle. Explain your reasoning.

66. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Mahmoud and Mohammad are studying the properties of the dot product. Mahmoud concludes that the dot product is associative because it is commutative; that is, $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w})$. Mohammad disagrees. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

67. **REASONING** Determine whether the statement below is *true* or *false*.

If **a** and **b** are both orthogonal to **v** in the plane, then **a** and **b** are parallel. Explain your reasoning.

68. **CHALLENGE** If **u** and **v** are perpendicular, what is the projection of **u** onto **v**?

69. **PROOF** Show that if the angle between vectors **u** and **v** is 90°, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$ using the formula for the angle between two nonzero vectors.

PROOF Prove each dot product property. Let $\mathbf{u} = \langle u_1, u_2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2\rangle$, and $\mathbf{w} = \langle w_1, w_2\rangle$.

70. $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$

71. $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$

72. $k(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) = k\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot k\mathbf{v}$

73. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain how to find the dot product of two nonzero vectors.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{a} = \langle 10, 1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -5, 2.8 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \left\langle \frac{3}{4}, -9 \right\rangle$.

74. $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a} + 4\mathbf{c}$

75. $\mathbf{c} - 3\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$

76. $2\mathbf{a} - 4\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$

77. **GOLF** Yousif drives a golf ball with a velocity of 62.5 meters per second at an angle of 32° with the ground. On the same hole, Saeed drives a golf ball with a velocity of 57.9 meters per second at an angle of 41°. Find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components for each force.

Graph the hyperbola given by each equation.

78. $\frac{(x-5)^2}{48} - \frac{y^2}{5} = 1$

79. $\frac{x^2}{81} - \frac{y^2}{49} = 1$

80. $\frac{y^2}{36} - \frac{x^2}{4} = 1$

Find the exact value of each expression, if it exists.

81. $\arcsin\left(\sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

82. $\arctan\left(\tan \frac{1}{2}\right)$

83. $\sin\left(\cos^{-1} \frac{3}{4}\right)$

Solve each equation.

84. $\log_{12}(x^3 + 2) = \log_{12} 127$

85. $\log_2 x = \log_2 6 + \log_2 (x - 5)$

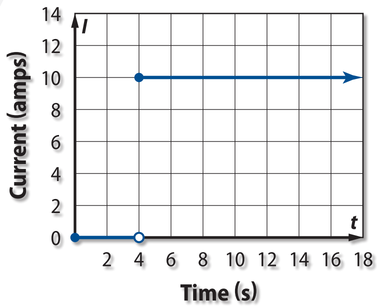
86. $e^{5x-4} = 70$

87. **ELECTRICITY** A simple electric circuit contains only a power supply and a resistor. When the power supply is off, there is no current in the circuit. When the power supply is turned on, the current almost instantly becomes a constant value. This situation can be modeled by a graph like the one shown at the right. I represents current in amps, and t represents time in seconds.

a. At what t-value is this function discontinuous?

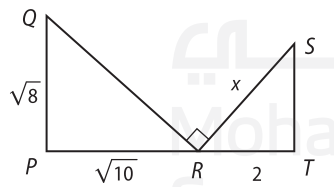
b. When was the power supply turned on?

c. If the person who turned on the power supply left and came back hours later, what would he or she measure the current in the circuit to be?



Skills Review for Standardized Tests

88. **SAT/ACT** In the figure below, $\triangle PQR \sim \triangle TRS$. What is the value of x?



A $\sqrt{2}$

B $\sqrt{5}$

C 3

D $3\sqrt{2}$

E 6

89. **REVIEW** Consider $C(-9, 2)$ and $D(-4, -3)$. Which of the following is the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{CD}$?

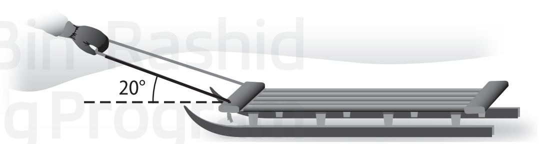
F $\langle 5, -5 \rangle, 5\sqrt{2}$

G $\langle 5, -5 \rangle, 6\sqrt{2}$

H $\langle 6, -5 \rangle, 5\sqrt{2}$

J $\langle 6, -6 \rangle, 6\sqrt{2}$

90. A snow sled is pulled by exerting a force of 25 Newtons on a rope that makes a 20° angle with the horizontal, as shown in the figure. What is the approximate work done in pulling the sled 50 meters?



A 428 N-m

B 1093 N-m

C 1175 N-m

D 1250 N-m

91. **REVIEW** If $\mathbf{s} = \langle 4, -3 \rangle$ $\mathbf{t} = \langle -6, 2 \rangle$, which of the following represents $\mathbf{t} - 2\mathbf{s}$?

F $\langle 14, 8 \rangle$

G $\langle 14, 6 \rangle$

H $\langle -14, 8 \rangle$

J $\langle -14, -8 \rangle$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

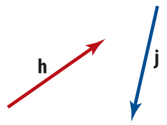
CHAPTER 7

Mid-Chapter Quiz

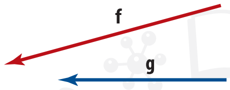
Lessons 7-1 through 7-3

Find the resultant of each pair of vectors using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant in centimeters and its direction relative to the horizontal. (Lesson 7-1)

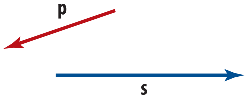
1.



2.



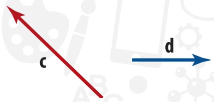
3.



4.

5. **SLEDDING** Ali pulls a sled through the snow with a force of 50 newtons at an angle of 35° with the horizontal. Find the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical components of the force. (Lesson 7-1)

6. Draw a vector diagram of $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{c} - 3\mathbf{d}$. (Lesson 7-1)



Let $\overrightarrow{BC}$ be the vector with the given initial and terminal points. Write $\overrightarrow{BC}$ as a linear combination of the vectors i and j. (Lesson 7-2)

7. $B(3, -1)$, $C(4, -7)$

8. $B(10, -6)$, $C(-8, 2)$

9. $B(1, 12)$, $C(-2, -9)$

10. $B(4, -10)$, $C(4, -10)$

11. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** Which of the following is the component form of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(-5, 3)$ and terminal point $B(2, -1)$? (Lesson 7-2)

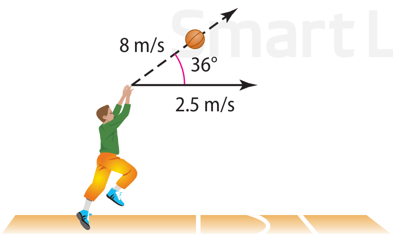
A $\langle 4, -1\rangle$

B $\langle 7, -4\rangle$

C $\langle 7, 4\rangle$

D $\langle -6, 4\rangle$

12. **BASKETBALL** With time running out in a game, Maysoun runs towards the basket at a speed of 2.5 meters per second and from half-court, launches a shot at a speed of 8 meters per second at an angle of 36° to the horizontal. (Lesson 7-2)



a. Write the component form of the vectors representing Maysoun's velocity and the path of the ball.

b. What is the resultant speed and direction of the shot?

Find the component form and magnitude of the vector with each initial and terminal point. (Lesson 7-2)

13. $A(-4, 2)$, $B(3, 6)$

14. $Q(1, -5)$, $R(-7, 8)$

15. $X(-3, -5)$, $Y(2, 5)$

16. $P(9, -2)$, $S(2, -5)$

Find the angle θ between u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree. (Lesson 7-3)

17. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 9, -4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -1, -2\rangle$

18. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 10\rangle$

19. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 8, 4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 4\rangle$

20. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 8\rangle$

21. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** If $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -1, 4\rangle$, and $\mathbf{w} = \langle 8, -5\rangle$, find $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) + (\mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{v})$. (Lesson 7-3)

F −18

G −2

H 15

J 38

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal. (Lesson 7-3)

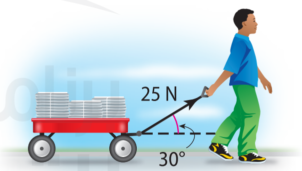
22. $\langle 2, -5\rangle \cdot \langle 4, 2\rangle$

23. $\langle 4, -3\rangle \cdot \langle 7, 4\rangle$

24. $\langle 1, -6\rangle \cdot \langle 5, 8\rangle$

25. $\langle 3, -6\rangle \cdot \langle 10, 5\rangle$

26. **WAGON** Hamad uses a wagon to carry newspapers for his paper route. He is pulling the wagon with a force of 25 newtons at an angle of 30° with the horizontal. (Lesson 7-3)



a. How much work in joules is Hamad doing when he pulls the wagon 150 meters?

b. If the handle makes an angle of 40° with the ground and he pulls the wagon with the same distance and force, is Hamad doing more or less work? Explain your answer.

Find the projection of u onto v. Then write u as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of u onto v. (Lesson 7-3)

27. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 7, -3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 5\rangle$

28. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 3\rangle$

29. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 8\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -9, 2\rangle$

30. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -6, 1\rangle$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-4 Vectors in Three-Dimensional Space

Then

- You represented vectors both geometrically and algebraically in two-dimensions.

Now

1. Plot points and vectors in the three-dimensional coordinate system.
2. Express algebraically and operate with vectors in space.

Why?

- The direction of a rocket after takeoff is given in terms of both a two-dimensional bearing and a third-dimensional angle relative to the horizontal. Since directed distance, velocities, and forces are not restricted to the plane, the concept of vectors must extend from two- to three-dimensional space.

NewVocabulary

three-dimensional coordinate system
z-axis
octant
ordered triple

1 Coordinates in Three Dimensions

The Cartesian plane is a two-dimensional coordinate system made up of the *x*- and *y*-axes that allows you to identify and locate points in a plane. We need a **three-dimensional coordinate system** to represent a point in space.

Start with the *xy*-plane and position it so that it gives the appearance of depth (Figure 7.4.1). Then add a third axis called the ***z*-axis** that passes through the origin and is perpendicular to both the *x*- and *y*-axes (Figure 7.4.2). The additional axis divides space into eight regions called **octants**. To help visualize the first octant, look at the corner of a room (Figure 7.4.3). The floor represents the *xy*-plane, and the walls represent the *xz*- and *yz*-planes.

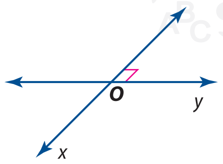


Figure 7.4.1

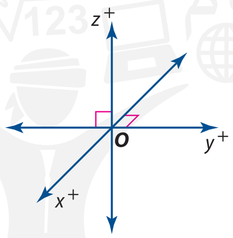


Figure 7.4.2

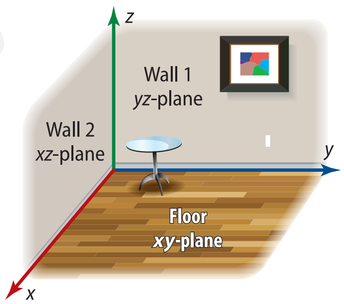


Figure 7.4.3

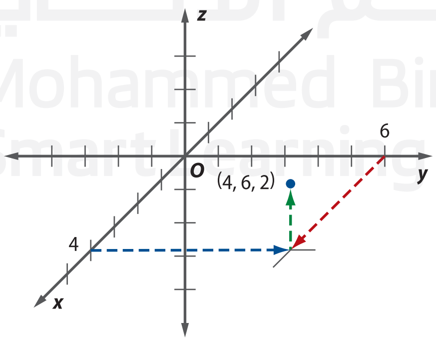
A point in space is represented by an **ordered triple** of real numbers (x, y, z). To plot such a point, first locate the point (x, y) in the *xy*-plane and move up or down parallel to the *z*-axis according to the directed distance given by z.

Example 1 Locate a Point in Space

Plot each point in a three-dimensional coordinate system.

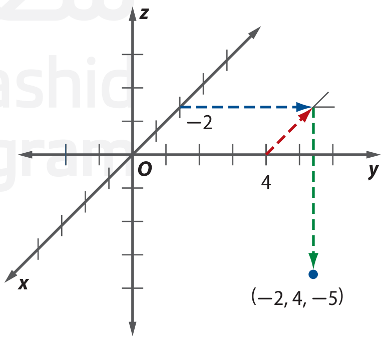
a. **(4, 6, 2)**

Locate (4, 6) in the *xy*-plane and mark it with a cross. Then plot a point **2** units up from this location parallel to the *z*-axis.



b. **(−2, 4, −5)**

Locate (−2, 4) in the *xy*-plane and mark it with a cross. Then plot a point **5** units down from this location parallel to the *z*-axis.



GuidedPractice

1A. $(-3, -4, 2)$ **1B.** $(3, 2, -3)$ **1C.** $(5, -4, -1)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Stocktrek/age fotostock

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Finding the distance between points and the midpoint of a segment in space is similar to finding distance and a midpoint in the coordinate plane.

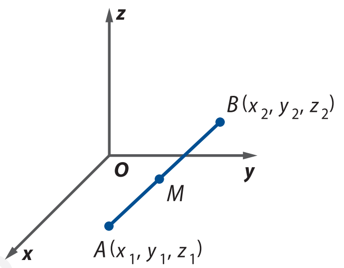
KeyConcept Distance and Midpoint Formulas in Space

The distance between points $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is given by

$$AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}.$$

The midpoint M of $\overline{AB}$ is given by

$$M\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \frac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right).$$



You will prove these formulas in Exercise 66.

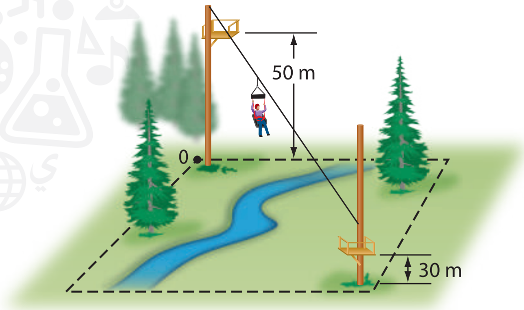
Real-WorldLink

A tour at Monteverde, Costa Rica, allows visitors to view nature from a system of trails, suspension bridges, and zip-lines. The zip-lines allow the guests to view the surroundings from as much as 456 feet above the ground.

Source: Monteverde Info

Real-World Example 2 Distance and Midpoint of Points in Space

ZIP-LINE **A tour of the Sierra Madre Mountains lets guests experience nature by zip-lining feet from one platform to another over the scenic surroundings. Two platforms that are connected by a zip-line are represented by the coordinates (10, 12, 50) and (70, 92, 30), where the coordinates are given in meters.**



a. Find the length of the zip-line needed to connect the two platforms.

Use the Distance Formula for points in space.

$AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$ — Distance Formula

$= \sqrt{(70 - 10)^2 + (92 - 12)^2 + (30 - 50)^2}$ — $(x_1, y_1, z_1) = (10, 12, 50)$ and $(x_2, y_2, z_2) = (70, 92, 30)$

≈ 101.98 — Simplify.

The zip-line needs to be about 102 meters long to connect the two towers.

b. An additional platform is to be built halfway between the existing platforms. Find the coordinates of the new platform.

Use the Midpoint Formula for points in space.

$\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \frac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right)$ — Midpoint Formula

$= \left(\frac{10 + 70}{2}, \frac{12 + 92}{2}, \frac{50 + 30}{2}\right)$ or $(40, 52, 40)$ — $(x_1, y_1, z_1) = (10, 12, 50)$ and $(x_2, y_2, z_2) = (70, 92, 30)$

The coordinates of the new platform will be (40, 52, 40).

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

GuidedPractice

2. **AIRPLANES** Safety regulations require airplanes to be at least a half a kilometer apart when in the sky. Two planes are flying above Cleveland with the coordinates (300, 150, 30000) and (450, −250, 28000), where the coordinates are given in meters.

A. Are the two planes in violation of the safety regulations? Explain.

B. If a firework was launched and exploded directly in between the two planes, what are the coordinates of the firework explosion?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Ammit Jack/Shutterstock.com

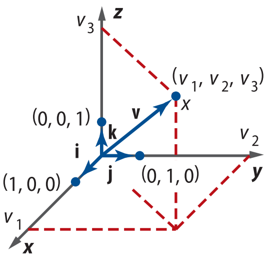


Figure 7.4.4

2 Vectors in Space

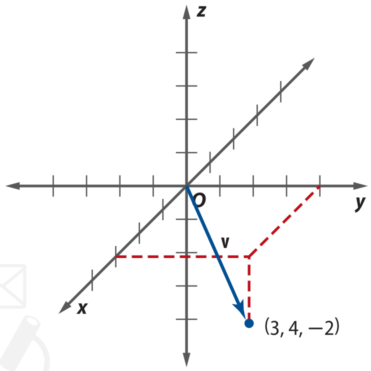
In space, a vector **v** in standard position with a terminal point located at (v_1, v_2, v_3) is denoted by $\langle v_1, v_2, v_3\rangle$. The zero vector is $\mathbf{0} = \langle 0, 0, 0\rangle$, and the standard unit vectors are $\mathbf{i} = \langle 1, 0, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{j} = \langle 0, 1, 0\rangle$, and $\mathbf{k} = \langle 0, 0, 1\rangle$ as shown in Figure 7.4.4. The component form of **v** can be expressed as a linear combination of these unit vectors, $\langle v_1, v_2, v_3\rangle = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$.

Example 3 Locate a Vector in Space

Locate and graph $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 4, -2\rangle$.

Plot the point $(3, 4, -2)$.

Draw **v** with terminal point at $(3, 4, -2)$.



GuidedPractice

Locate and graph each vector in space.

3A. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -4, 2, -3\rangle$

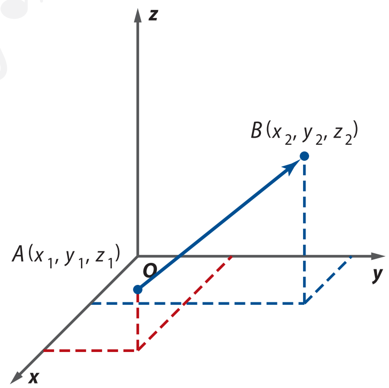
3B. $\mathbf{w} = -\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$

As with two-dimensional vectors, to find the component form of the directed line segment from $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ to $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$, you subtract the coordinates of its initial point from its terminal point.

$$\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1, z_2 - z_1\rangle$$

Then $|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$ or if $\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$, then $|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2}$.

A unit vector **u** in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is still $\mathbf{u} = \dfrac{\overrightarrow{AB}}{|\overrightarrow{AB}|}$.



Example 4 Express Vectors in Space Algebraically

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(-4, -2, 1)$ and terminal point $B(3, 6, -6)$. Then find a unit vector in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

$\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1, z_2 - z_1\rangle$ — Component form of vector

$= \langle 3 - (-4), 6 - (-2), -6 - 1\rangle$ or $\langle 7, 8, -7\rangle$ — $(x_1, y_1, z_1) = (-4, -2, 1)$ and $(x_2, y_2, z_2) = (3, 6, -6)$

Using the component form, the magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is

$|\overrightarrow{AB}| = \sqrt{7^2 + 8^2 + (-7)^2}$ or $9\sqrt{2}$. — $\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle 7, 8, -7\rangle$

Using this magnitude and component form, find a unit vector **u** in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

$\mathbf{u} = \dfrac{\overrightarrow{AB}}{|\overrightarrow{AB}|}$ — Unit vector in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$

$= \dfrac{\langle 7, 8, -7\rangle}{9\sqrt{2}}$ or $\left\langle \dfrac{7\sqrt{2}}{18}, \dfrac{4\sqrt{2}}{9}, -\dfrac{7\sqrt{2}}{18}\right\rangle$ — $\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle 7, 8, -7\rangle$ and $|\overrightarrow{AB}| = 9\sqrt{2}$

GuidedPractice

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points. Then find a unit vector in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$.

4A. $A(-2, -5, -5)$, $B(-1, 4, -2)$

4B. $A(-1, 4, 6)$, $B(3, 3, 8)$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

As with vectors in the plane, when vectors in space are in component form or expressed as a linear combination of unit vectors, they can be added, subtracted, or multiplied by a scalar.

KeyConcept Vector Operations in Space

If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, and any scalar k, then

Vector Addition	$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3 \rangle$
Vector Subtraction	$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{b}) = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3 \rangle$
Scalar Multiplication	$k\mathbf{a} = \langle ka_1, ka_2, ka_3 \rangle$

StudyTip

Vector Operations The properties for vector operations in space are the same as those for operations in the plane.

Example 5 Operations with Vectors in Space

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{y} = \langle 3, -6, 2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{w} = \langle -1, 4, -4 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{z} = \langle -2, 0, 5 \rangle$.

a. $4\mathbf{y} + 2\mathbf{z}$

$4\mathbf{y} + 2\mathbf{z} = 4\langle 3, -6, 2 \rangle + 2\langle -2, 0, 5 \rangle$ — Substitute.

$= \langle 12, -24, 8 \rangle + \langle -4, 0, 10 \rangle$ or $\langle 8, -24, 18 \rangle$ — Scalar multiplication and vector addition

b. $2\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{z} + 3\mathbf{y}$

$2\mathbf{w} - \mathbf{z} + 3\mathbf{y} = 2\langle -1, 4, -4 \rangle - \langle -2, 0, 5 \rangle + 3\langle 3, -6, 2 \rangle$ — Substitute.

$= \langle -2, 8, -8 \rangle + \langle 2, 0, -5 \rangle + \langle 9, -18, 6 \rangle$ — Scalar multiplication

$= \langle 9, -10, -7 \rangle$ — Vector addition

GuidedPractice

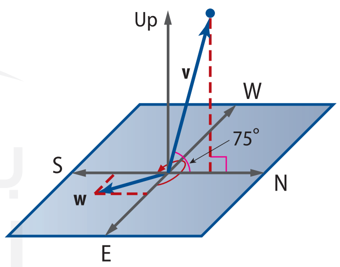
5A. $4\mathbf{w} - 8\mathbf{z}$

5B. $3\mathbf{y} + 3\mathbf{z} - 6\mathbf{w}$

Real-World Example 6 Use Vectors in Space

ROCKETS After liftoff, a model rocket is headed due north and climbing at an angle of 75° relative to the horizontal at 200 kilometers per hour. If the wind blows from the northwest at 5 kilometers per hour, find a vector for the resultant velocity of the rocket relative to the point of liftoff.

Let **i** point east, **j** point north, and **k** point up. Vector **v** representing the rocket's velocity and vector **w** representing the wind's velocity are shown. Notice that **w** points toward the southeast, since the wind is blowing *from* the northwest.



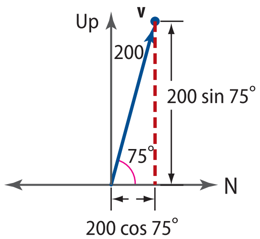


Figure 7.4.5

Since **v** has a magnitude of 200 and a direction angle of 75°, we can find the component form of **v**, as shown in Figure 7.4.5.

$\mathbf{v} = \langle 0, 200 \cos 75°, 200 \sin 75° \rangle$ or about $\langle 0, 51.8, 193.2 \rangle$

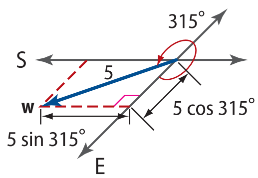


Figure 7.4.6

With east as the positive x-axis, **w** has direction angle of 315°. Since $|\mathbf{w}| = 5$, the component form of this vector is $\mathbf{w} = \langle 5 \cos 315°, 5 \sin 315°, 0 \rangle$ or about $\langle 3.5, -3.5, 0 \rangle$, as shown in Figure 7.4.6.

The resultant velocity of the rocket is $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$.

$\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} = \langle 0, 51.8, 193.2 \rangle + \langle 3.5, -3.5, 0 \rangle$

$= \langle 3.5, 48.3, 193.2 \rangle$ or $3.5\mathbf{i} + 48.3\mathbf{j} + 193.2\mathbf{k}$

GuidedPractice

6. AVIATION After takeoff, an airplane is headed east and is climbing at an angle of 18° relative to the horizontal. Its air speed is 250 kilometers per hour. If the wind blows from the northeast at 10 kilometers per hour, find a vector that represents the resultant velocity of the plane relative to the point of takeoff. Let **i** point east, **j** point north, and **k** point up.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Plot each point in a three-dimensional coordinate system. (Example 1)

1. (1, −2, −4)
2. (3, 2, 1)
3. (−5, −4, −2)
4. (−2, −5, 3)
5. (−5, 3, 1)
6. (2, −2, 3)
7. (4, −10, −2)
8. (−16, 12, −13)

Find the length and midpoint of the segment with the given endpoints. (Example 2)

9. (−4, 10, 4), (1, 0, 9)
10. (−6, 6, 3), (−9, −2, −2)
11. (6, 1, 10), (−9, −10, −4)
12. (8, 3, 4), (−4, −7, 5)
13. (−3, 2, 8), (9, 6, 0)
14. (−7, 2, −5), (−2, −5, −8)

15. **VACATION** A family from Wichita, Kansas, is using a GPS device to plan a vacation to Castle Rock, Colorado. According to the device, the coordinates for the family's home are (37.7°, 97.2°, 433 m), and the coordinates to Castle Rock are (39.4°, 104.8°, 1981 m). Determine the longitude, latitude, and altitude of the halfway point between Wichita and Castle Rock. (Example 2)

16. **FIGHTER PILOTS** During a training session, the location of two F-18 fighter jets are represented by the coordinates (675, −121, 19,300) and (−289, 715, 16,100), where the coordinates are given in feet. (Example 2)

a. Determine the distance between the two jets.

b. To what location would one of the fighter pilots have to fly the F-18 in order to reduce the distance between the two jets by half?

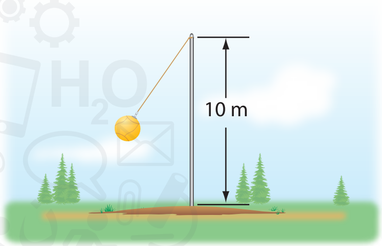
Locate and graph each vector in space. (Example 3)

17. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 0, -4, 4\rangle$
18. $\mathbf{b} = \langle -3, -3, -2\rangle$
19. $\mathbf{c} = \langle -1, 3, -4\rangle$
20. $\mathbf{d} = \langle 4, -2, -3\rangle$
21. $\mathbf{v} = 6\mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$
22. $\mathbf{w} = -10\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{k}$
23. $\mathbf{m} = 7\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$
24. $\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} - 8\mathbf{k}$

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points. Then find a unit vector in the direction of $\overrightarrow{AB}$. (Example 4)

25. $A(-5, -5, -9)$, $B(11, -3, -1)$
26. $A(-4, 0, -3)$, $B(-4, -8, 9)$
27. $A(3, 5, 1)$, $B(0, 0, -9)$
28. $A(-3, -7, -12)$, $B(-7, 1, 8)$
29. $A(2, -5, 4)$, $B(1, 3, -6)$
30. $A(8, 12, 7)$, $B(2, -3, 11)$
31. $A(3, 14, -5)$, $B(7, -1, 0)$
32. $A(1, -18, -13)$, $B(21, 14, 29)$
33. $A(-5, 12, 17)$, $B(6, -11, 4)$
34. $A(9, 3, 7)$, $B(-5, -7, 2)$

35. **TETHERBALL** In the game of tetherball, a ball is attached to a 3-meter pole by a length of rope. Two players hit the ball in opposing directions in an attempt to wind the entire length of rope around the pole. To serve, a certain player holds the ball so that its coordinates are (5, 3.6, 4.7) and the coordinates of the end of the rope connected to the pole are (0, 0, 9.8), where the coordinates are given in feet. Determine the magnitude of the vector representing the length of the rope. (Example 4)



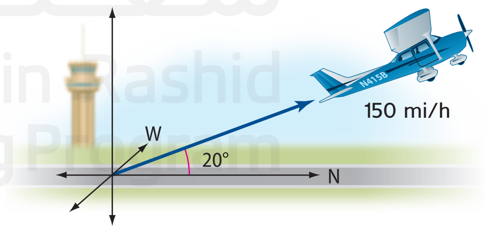
Find each of the following for $\mathbf{a} = \langle -5, -4, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 6, -2, -7\rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle -2, 2, 4\rangle$. (Example 5)

36. $6\mathbf{a} - 7\mathbf{b} + 8\mathbf{c}$
37. $7\mathbf{a} - 5\mathbf{b}$
38. $2\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b} - 9\mathbf{c}$
39. $6\mathbf{b} + 4\mathbf{c} - 4\mathbf{a}$
40. $8\mathbf{a} - 5\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c}$
41. $-6\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + 7\mathbf{c}$

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{x} = -9\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{y} = 6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 7\mathbf{k}$, and $\mathbf{z} = -2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$. (Example 5)

42. $7\mathbf{x} + 6\mathbf{y}$
43. $3\mathbf{x} - 5\mathbf{y} + 3\mathbf{z}$
44. $4\mathbf{x} + 3\mathbf{y} + 2\mathbf{z}$
45. $-8\mathbf{x} - 2\mathbf{y} + 5\mathbf{z}$
46. $-6\mathbf{y} - 9\mathbf{z}$
47. $-\mathbf{x} - 4\mathbf{y} - \mathbf{z}$

48. **AIRPLANES** An airplane is taking off headed due north with an air speed of 150 miles per hour at an angle of 20° relative to the horizontal. The wind is blowing with a velocity of 8 miles per hour from the southwest. Find a vector that represents the resultant velocity of the plane relative to the point of takeoff. Let **i** point east, **j** point north, and **k** point up. (Example 6)



49. **TRACK AND FIELD** Maysa throws a javelin due south at a speed of 18 miles per hour and at an angle of 48° relative to the horizontal. If the wind is blowing with a velocity of 12 miles per hour at an angle of S15°E, find a vector that represents the resultant velocity of the javelin. Let **i** point east, **j** point north, and **k** point up. (Example 6)

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

50. **SUBMARINE** A submarine heading due west dives at a speed of 25 knots and an angle of decline of 55°. The current is moving with a velocity of 4 knots at an angle of S20°W. Find a vector that represents the resultant velocity of the submarine relative to the initial point of the dive. Let **i** point east, **j** point north, and **k** point up. (Example 6)

If N is the midpoint of $\overline{MP}$, find P.

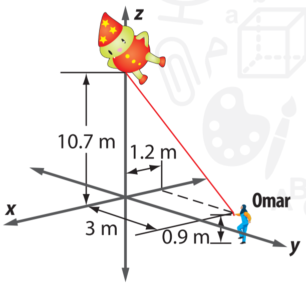
51. $M(3, 4, 5)$; $N\left(\frac{7}{2}, 1, 2\right)$

52. $M(-1, -4, -9)$; $N(-2, 1, -5)$

53. $M(7, 1, 5)$; $N\left(5, -\frac{1}{2}, 6\right)$

54. $M\left(\frac{3}{2}, -5, 9\right)$; $N\left(-2, -\frac{13}{2}, \frac{11}{2}\right)$

55. **VOLUNTEERING** Omar is volunteering to help guide a balloon in a parade. If the balloon is 10.7 meters high and he is holding the tether 0.9 meters above the ground as shown, how long is the tether to the nearest foot?



Determine whether the triangle with the given vertices is *isosceles* or *scalene*.

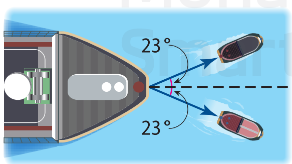
56. $A(3, 1, 2)$, $B(5, -1, 1)$, $C(1, 3, 1)$

57. $A(4, 3, 4)$, $B(4, 6, 4)$, $C(4, 3, 6)$

58. $A(-1, 4, 3)$, $B(2, 5, 1)$, $C(0, -6, 6)$

59. $A(-2.2, 4.3, 5.6)$, $B(0.7, 9.3, 15.6)$, $C(3.6, 14.3, 5.6)$

60. **TUGBOATS** Two tugboats are pulling a disabled supertanker. One of the tow lines makes an angle 23° west of north and the other makes an angle 23° east of north. Each tug exerts a constant force of 2.5×10^6 newtons depressed 15° below the point where the lines attach to the supertanker. They pull the supertanker two miles due north.



a. Write a three-dimensional vector to describe the force from each tugboat.

b. Find the vector that describes the total force on the supertanker.

c. If each tow line is 300 feet long, about how far apart are the tugboats?

61. **SPHERES** Use the distance formula for two points in space to prove that the standard form of the equation of a sphere with center (h, k, ℓ) and radius r is $r^2 = (x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + (z - \ell)^2$.

Use the formula from Exercise 61 to write an equation for the sphere with the given center and radius.

62. center $= (-4, -2, 3)$; radius $= 4$

63. center $= (6, 0, -1)$; radius $= \frac{1}{2}$

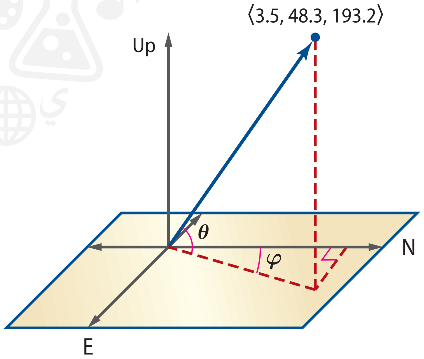
64. center $= (5, -3, 4)$; radius $= \sqrt{3}$

65. center $= (0, 7, -1)$; radius $= 12$

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

66. **REASONING** Prove the Distance Formula in Space. (*Hint*: Use the Pythagorean Theorem twice.)

67. **CHALLENGE** Refer to Example 6.

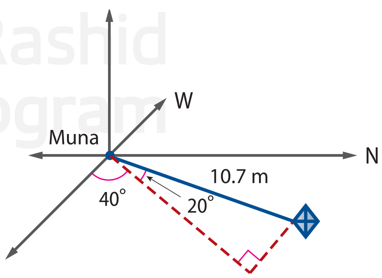


a. Calculate the resultant speed of the rocket.

b. Find the quadrant bearing φ of the rocket.

c. Calculate the resultant angle of incline θ of the rocket relative to the horizontal.

68. **CHALLENGE** Muna is standing in an open field facing N50°E. She is holding a kite on a 10.7-meter string that is flying at a 20° angle with the field. Find the components of the vector from Muna to the kite. (*Hint*: Use trigonometric ratios and two right triangles to find **x**, **y**, and **z**.)



69. **WRITING IN MATH** Describe a situation where it is more reasonable to use a two-dimensional coordinate system and one where it is more reasonable to use a three-dimensional coordinate system.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Spiral Review

Find the projection of u onto v. Then write u as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which is the projection of u onto v.

70. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, 8 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, -1 \rangle$

71. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 4 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 1 \rangle$

72. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 4 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 4, -2 \rangle$

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points.

73. $A(6, -4), B(-7, -7)$

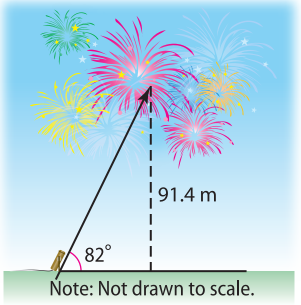
74. $A(-4, -8), B(1, 6)$

75. $A(-5, -12), B(1, 6)$

76. **ENTERTAINMENT** The UAE National Day fireworks at Burj Khalifa are fired at an angle of 82° with the horizontal. The technician firing the shells expects them to explode about 91.4 meters in the air 4.8 seconds after they are fired.

a. Find the initial speed of a shell fired from ground level.

b. Safety barriers will be placed around the launch area to protect spectators. If the barriers are placed 91.4 meters from the point directly below the explosion of the shells, how far should the barriers be from the point where the fireworks are launched?



77. **CONSTRUCTION** A stone door that was designed as an arch in the shape of a semi-ellipse will have an opening with a height of 3 meters at the center and a width of 8 meters along the base. To sketch an outline of the door, a contractor uses a string tied to two thumbtacks.

a. At what locations should the thumbtacks be placed?

b. What length of string needs to be used? Explain your reasoning.

Solve each equation for all values of θ.

78. $\csc \theta + 2 \cot \theta = 0$

79. $\sec^2 \theta - 9 = 0$

80. $2 \csc \theta - 3 = 5 \sin \theta$

Sketch the graph of each function.

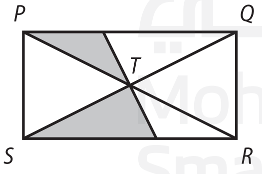
81. $y = \cos^{-1}(x - 2)$

82. $y = \arccos x + 3$

83. $y = \sin^{-1} 3x$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

84. **SAT/ACT** What percent of the area of rectangle $PQRS$ is shaded?



A 22% **C** 30% **E** 35%

B 25% **D** $33\frac{1}{3}\%$

85. **REVIEW** A ship leaving port sails for 75 kilometers in a direction of 35° north of east. At that point, how far north of its starting point is the ship?

F 43 kilometers **H** 61 kilometers

G 55 kilometers **J** 72 kilometers

86. During a storm, the force of the wind blowing against a skyscraper can be expressed by the vector $\langle 132, 3454, -76 \rangle$, where the force of the wind is measured in newtons. What is the approximate magnitude of this force?

A 3457 N **C** 3692 N

B 3568 N **D** 3717 N

87. **REVIEW** An airplane is flying due west at a velocity of 100 meters a second. The wind is blowing from the south at 30 meters a second. What is the approximate magnitude of the airplane's resultant velocity?

F 4 m/s **H** 100 m/s

G 95.4 m/s **J** 104.4 m/s

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

EXTEND 7-4

Graphing Technology Lab

Vector Transformations with Matrices

Objective

- Use a graphing calculator to transform vectors using matrices.

In Lesson 7-4, you learned that a vector in space can be transformed when written in component form or when expressed as a linear combination. A vector in space can also be transformed when written as a 3×1 or 1×3 matrix.

$$x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } [x \;\; y \;\; z]$$

Once in matrix form, a vector can be transformed using matrix-vector multiplication.

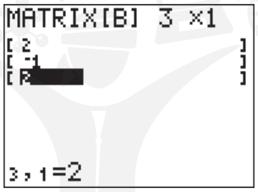
Activity Matrix-Vector Multiplication

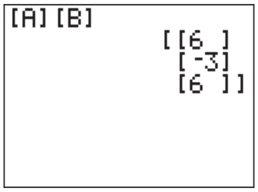
Multiply the vector $\mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$ by the transformation matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, and graph both vectors.

Step 1 Write **B** as a matrix.

$$\mathbf{B} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Step 2 Enter **B** and A in a graphing calculator and find $A\mathbf{B}$. Convert to vector form.

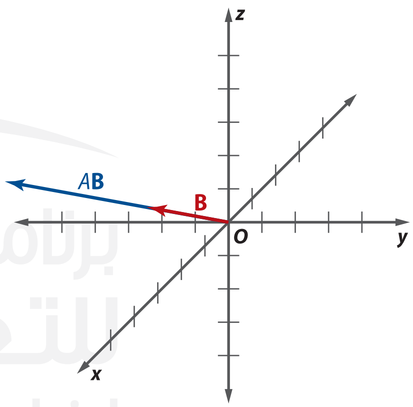




$A\mathbf{B} = 6\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$

Step 3 Graph **B** and $A\mathbf{B}$ on a coordinate plane.

$A\mathbf{B}$ is a dilation of **B** by a factor of 3.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Multiply each vector by the transformation matrix. Graph both vectors.

1. $\mathbf{h} = 4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 0.25 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.25 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. $\mathbf{e} = 5\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 9\mathbf{k}$

$$V = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

3. $\mathbf{f} = \mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$

$$W = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

4. REASONING Multiply $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$ by the transformation matrix $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, and graph both vectors. Explain the type of transformation that was performed.

4. $4\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$; $B\mathbf{v}$ is a rotation of $\mathbf{v}$ about the y-axis.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-5 Dot and Cross Products of Vectors in Space

Then

- You found the dot product of two vectors in the plane.

Now

1. Find dot products of and angles between vectors in space.
2. Find cross products of vectors in space, and use cross products to find area and volume.

Why?

- The tendency of a hinged door to rotate when pushed is affected by the distance between the location of the push and the hinge, the magnitude of the push, and the direction of the push.

A quantity called *torque* measures how effectively a force applied to a lever causes rotation about an axis.

NewVocabulary
cross product
torque
parallelepiped
triple scalar product

1 Dot Products in Space

Calculating the dot product of two vectors in space is similar to calculating the dot product of two vectors in a plane. As with vectors in a plane, nonzero vectors in space are perpendicular if and only if their dot product equals zero.

KeyConcept Dot Product and Orthogonal Vectors in Space

The dot product of $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3\rangle$ is defined as $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3$. The vectors **a** and **b** are orthogonal if and only if $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$.

Example 1 Find the Dot Product to Determine Orthogonal Vectors in Space

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal.

a. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -7, 3, -3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 17, 5\rangle$

$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -7(5) + 3(17) + (-3)(5)$

$= -35 + 51 + (-15)$ or 1

Since $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} \neq 0$, **u** and **v** are not orthogonal.

b. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -3, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 7, 3\rangle$

$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 3(4) + (-3)(7) + 3(3)$

$= 12 + (-21) + 9$ or 0

Since $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$, **u** and **v** are orthogonal.

GuidedPractice

1A. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -5, 4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 7, 5\rangle$

1B. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -2, -3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 3, -2\rangle$

As with vectors in a plane, if θ is the angle between nonzero vectors **a** and **b**, then $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|}$.

Example 2 Angle Between Two Vectors in Space

Find the angle θ between u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree if $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 2, -1\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 3, -2\rangle$.

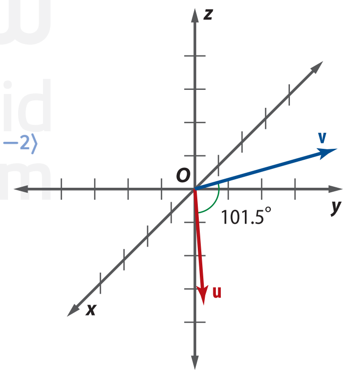
$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{|\mathbf{u}|\,|\mathbf{v}|}$ — Angle between two vectors

$\cos\theta = \dfrac{\langle 3, 2, -1\rangle \cdot \langle -4, 3, -2\rangle}{|\langle 3, 2, -1\rangle|\,|\langle -4, 3, -2\rangle|}$ — $u = \langle 3, 2, -1\rangle$ and $v = \langle -4, 3, -2\rangle$

$\cos\theta = \dfrac{-4}{\sqrt{14}\,\sqrt{29}}$ — Evaluate the dot product and magnitudes.

$\theta = \cos^{-1}\dfrac{-4}{\sqrt{406}}$ or about $101.5°$ — Simplify and solve for θ.

The measure of the angle between **u** and **v** is about 101.5°.



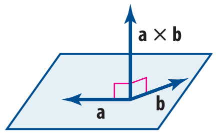
GuidedPractice

2. Find the angle between $\mathbf{u} = -4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{k}$ to the nearest tenth of a degree.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Dave and Les Jacobs/Blend Images LLC

2 Cross Products

Cross Products Another important product involving vectors in space is the cross product. Unlike the dot product, the **cross product** of two vectors **a** and **b** in space, denoted **a** × **b** and read *a cross b*, is a vector, not a scalar. The vector **a** × **b** is perpendicular to the plane containing vectors **a** and **b**.



KeyConcept Cross Product of Vectors in Space

If $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k}$, the cross product of **a** and **b** is the vector

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)\mathbf{i} - (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)\mathbf{j} + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)\mathbf{k}.$$

ReviewVocabulary

2 × 2 Determinant The determinant of the 2 × 2 matrix $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ is $\begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - cb$.

If we apply the formula for calculating the determinant of a 3 × 3 matrix to the following *determinant form* involving **i**, **j**, **k**, and the components of **a** and **b**, we arrive at the same formula for **a** × **b**.

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}$$

Put the unit vectors i, j, and k in Row 1.
Put the components of a in Row 2.
Put the components of b in Row 3.

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$ Apply the formula for a 3 × 3 determinant.

$$= (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)\mathbf{i} - (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)\mathbf{j} + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)\mathbf{k}$$ Compute each 2 × 2 determinant.

WatchOut!

Cross Product The cross product definition applies only to vectors in three-dimensional space. The cross product is not defined for vectors in the two-dimensional coordinate system.

Example 3 Find the Cross Product of Two Vectors

Find the cross product of u = ⟨3, −2, 1⟩ and v = ⟨−3, 3, 1⟩. Then show that u × v is orthogonal to both u and v.

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \\ -3 & 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$ $\mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = -3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

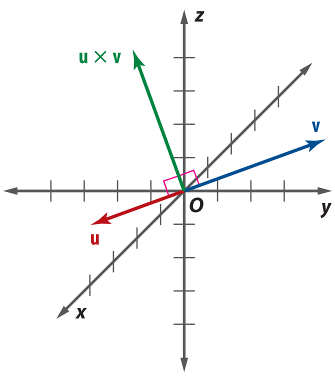
$$= \begin{vmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ -3 & 3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$ Determinant of a 3 × 3 matrix

$= (-2 - 3)\mathbf{i} - [3 - (-3)]\mathbf{j} + (9 - 6)\mathbf{k}$ Determinants of 2 × 2 matrices

$= -5\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ Simplify.

$= \langle -5, -6, 3 \rangle$ Component form

In the graph of **u**, **v**, and **u** × **v**, **u** × **v** is orthogonal to **u** and **u** × **v** is orthogonal to **v**.



To show that **u** × **v** is orthogonal to both **u** and **v**, find the dot product of **u** × **v** with **u** and **u** × **v** with **v**.

$(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{u}$
$= \langle -5, -6, 3 \rangle \cdot \langle 3, -2, 1 \rangle$
$= -5(3) + (-6)(-2) + 3(1)$
$= -15 + 12 + 3$ or 0 ✓

$(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{v}$
$= \langle -5, -6, 3 \rangle \cdot \langle -3, 3, 1 \rangle$
$= -5(-3) + (-6)(3) + 3(1)$
$= 15 + (-18) + 3$ or 0 ✓

Because both dot products are zero, the vectors are orthogonal.

GuidedPractice

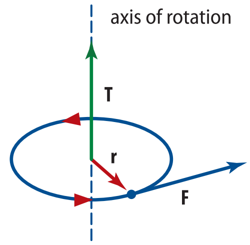
Find the cross product of u and v. Then show that u × v is orthogonal to both u and v.

3A. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 2, -1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 1, 4 \rangle$

3B. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, -1, -3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 1, 4 \rangle$

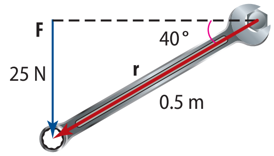
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

You can use the cross product to find a vector quantity called **torque**. Torque measures how effectively a force applied to a lever causes rotation along the axis of rotation. The torque vector **T** is perpendicular to the plane containing the directed distance **r** from the axis of rotation to the point of the applied force and the applied force **F** as shown. Therefore, the torque vector is $\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ and is measured in newton-meters (N • m).



Real-World Example 4 Torque Using Cross Product

AUTO REPAIR **Abdulkarim uses a lug wrench to tighten a lug nut. The wrench he uses is 50 centimeters or 0.5 meter long. Find the magnitude and direction of the torque about the lug nut if he applies a force of 25 newtons straight down to the end of the handle when it is 40° below the positive *x*-axis as shown.**



Step 1 Graph each vector in standard position (Figure 7.5.1).

Step 2 Determine the component form of each vector.

The component form of the vector representing the directed distance from the axis of rotation to the end of the handle can be found using the triangle in Figure 7.5.2 and trigonometry. Vector **r** is therefore $\langle 0.5 \cos 40°, 0, -0.5 \sin 40° \rangle$ or about $\langle 0.38, 0, -0.32 \rangle$. The vector representing the force applied to the end of the handle is 25 newtons straight down, so $\mathbf{F} = \langle 0, 0, -25 \rangle$.

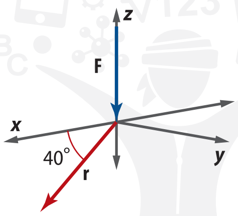


Figure 7.5.1

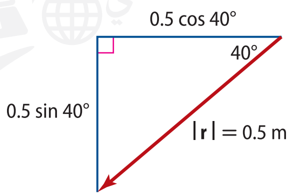


Figure 7.5.2

Step 3 Use the cross product of these vectors to find the vector representing the torque about the lug nut.

$\mathbf{T} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ — Torque Cross Product Formula

$= \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 0.38 & 0 & -0.32 \\ 0 & 0 & -25 \end{vmatrix}$ — Cross product of r and F

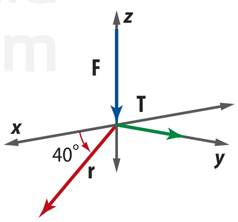
$= \begin{vmatrix} 0 & -0.32 \\ 0 & -25 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 0.38 & -0.32 \\ 0 & -25 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 0.38 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$ — Determinant of a 3 × 3 matrix

$= 0\mathbf{i} - (-9.5)\mathbf{j} + 0\mathbf{k}$ — Determinants of 2 × 2 matrices

$= \langle 0, 9.5, 0 \rangle$ — Component form

Step 4 Find the magnitude and direction of the torque vector.

The component form of the torque vector $\langle 0, 9.5, 0 \rangle$ tells us that the magnitude of the vector is about 9.5 newton-meters parallel to the positive *y*-axis as shown.



Guided Practice

4. **AUTO REPAIR** Find the magnitude of the torque if Abdulkarim applied the same amount of force to the end of the handle straight down when the handle makes a 40° angle above the positive *x*-axis as shown in Figure 7.5.3.

Real-World Career

Automotive Mechanic

Automotive mechanics perform repairs ranging from simple mechanical problems to high-level, technology–related repairs. They should have good problem-solving skills, mechanical aptitude, and knowledge of electronics and mathematics. Most mechanics complete a vocational training program in automotive service technology.

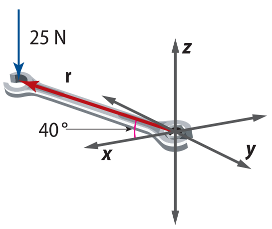


Figure 7.5.3

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©ColorBlind Images/Blend Images LLC

The cross product of two vectors has several geometric applications. One is that the magnitude of $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ represents the area of the parallelogram that has $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as its adjacent sides (Figure 7.5.4).

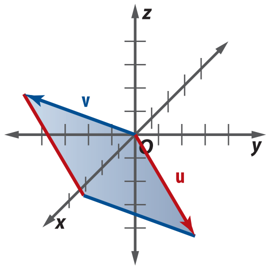


Figure 7.5.4

Example 5 Area of a Parallelogram in Space

Find the area of the parallelogram with adjacent sides $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$.

Step 1 Find $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$.

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 2 & 4 & -3 \\ 1 & -5 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k} \text{ and } \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ -5 & 3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -5 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{Determinant of a } 3 \times 3 \text{ matrix}$$

$$= -3\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} - 14\mathbf{k} \qquad \text{Determinants of } 2 \times 2 \text{ matrices}$$

Step 2 Find the magnitude of $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$.

$$|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(-3)^2 + (-9)^2 + (-14)^2} \qquad \text{Magnitude of a vector in space}$$

$$= \sqrt{286} \text{ or about } 16.9 \qquad \text{Simplify.}$$

The area of the parallelogram shown in Figure 7.5.4 is about 16.9 square units.

GuidedPractice

5. Find the area of the parallelogram with adjacent sides $\mathbf{u} = -6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

Three vectors that lie in different planes but share the same initial point determine the adjacent edges of a **parallelepiped**, a polyhedron with faces that are all parallelograms (Figure 7.5.5). The absolute value of the **triple scalar product** of these vectors represents the volume of the parallelepiped.

StudyTip

Triple Scalar Product Notice that to find the triple scalar product of $\mathbf{t}$, $\mathbf{u}$, and $\mathbf{v}$, you write the determinant representing $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ and replace the top row with the values for the vector $\mathbf{t}$.

KeyConcept Triple Scalar Product

If $\mathbf{t} = t_1\mathbf{i} + t_2\mathbf{j} + t_3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = u_1\mathbf{i} + u_2\mathbf{j} + u_3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = v_1\mathbf{i} + v_2\mathbf{j} + v_3\mathbf{k}$, the triple scalar product is given

by $\mathbf{t} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = \begin{vmatrix} t_1 & t_2 & t_3 \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix}$.

Example 6 Volume of a Parallelepiped

Find the volume of the parallelepiped with adjacent edges $\mathbf{t} = 4\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, and $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$.

$$\mathbf{t} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -2 & -2 \\ 2 & 4 & -3 \\ 1 & -5 & 3 \end{vmatrix} \qquad \mathbf{t} = 4\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}, \ \mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k} \text{ and } \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ -5 & 3 \end{vmatrix}(4) - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix}(-2) + \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -5 \end{vmatrix}(-2) \qquad \text{Determinant of a } 3 \times 3 \text{ matrix}$$

$$= -12 + 18 + 28 \text{ or } 34 \qquad \text{Simplify.}$$

The volume of the parallelepiped shown in Figure 7.5.5 is $|\mathbf{t} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})|$ or 34 cubic units.

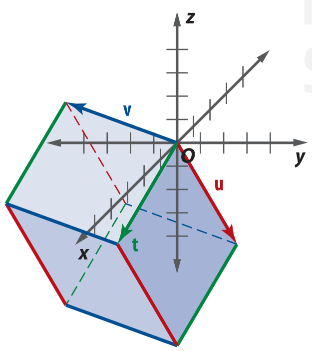


Figure 7.5.5

GuidedPractice

6. Find the volume of the parallelepiped with adjacent edges $\mathbf{t} = 2\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = -6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{v} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal. (Example 1)

1. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -9, 6\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -8, 2, 7\rangle$
2. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 0, -4\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 6, -1, 4\rangle$
3. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, -8, -7\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 9, -7\rangle$
4. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -7, -3, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 5, -13\rangle$
5. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 11, 4, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -1, 3, 8\rangle$
6. $\mathbf{u} = 6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$
7. $\mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{i} - 10\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 7\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
8. $\mathbf{u} = 9\mathbf{i} - 9\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 6\mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$

9. **CHEMISTRY** A water molecule, in which the oxygen atom is centered at the origin, has one hydrogen atom centered at $\langle 55.5, 55.5, -55.5\rangle$ and the second hydrogen atom centered at $\langle -55.5, -55.5, -55.5\rangle$. Determine the bond angle between the vectors formed by the oxygen-hydrogen bonds. (Example 2)

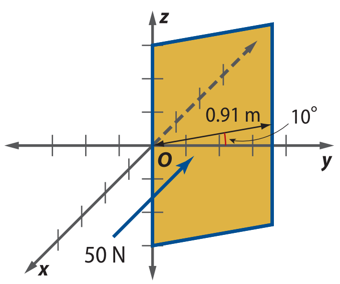
Find the angle θ between vectors u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree. (Example 2)

10. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -2, 2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 4, -7\rangle$
11. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, -5, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -8, -9, 5\rangle$
12. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -8, 1, 12\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -6, 4, 2\rangle$
13. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 10, 0, -8\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -1, -12\rangle$
14. $\mathbf{u} = -3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 9\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 4\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 10\mathbf{k}$
15. $\mathbf{u} = -6\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = -4\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$

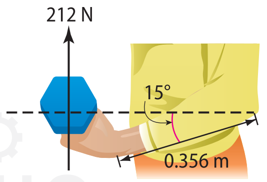
Find the cross product of u and v. Then show that u × v is orthogonal to both u and v. (Example 3)

16. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 3, 5\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 2, -6, -3\rangle$
17. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 7, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -5, 9, 1\rangle$
18. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, -6, 2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 5, -8\rangle$
19. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, -8, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, -2, 7\rangle$
20. $\mathbf{u} = -2\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 7\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$
21. $\mathbf{u} = -4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$

22. **RESTAURANTS** A restaurant server applies 50 newtons of force to open a door. Find the magnitude and direction of the torque about the door's hinge. (Example 4)



23. **WEIGHTLIFTING** A weightlifter doing bicep curls applies 212 newtons of force to lift the dumbbell. The weightlifter's forearm is 0.356 meters long and she begins the bicep curl with her elbow bent at a 15° angle below the horizontal in the direction of the positive x-axis. (Example 4)



   a. Find the vector representing the torque about the weightlifter's elbow in component form.
   b. Find the magnitude and direction of the torque.

Find the area of the parallelogram with adjacent sides u and v. (Example 5)

24. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, -5, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 6, -1\rangle$
25. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -9, 1, 2\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 6, -5, 3\rangle$
26. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 3, -1\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 7, 2, -2\rangle$
27. $\mathbf{u} = 6\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} - 8\mathbf{k}$
28. $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{i} + 4\mathbf{j} - 8\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 7\mathbf{k}$
29. $\mathbf{u} = -3\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 4\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$

Find the volume of the parallelepiped having t, u, and v as adjacent edges. (Example 6)

30. $\mathbf{t} = \langle -1, -9, 2\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -7, -5\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -2, 6\rangle$
31. $\mathbf{t} = \langle -6, 4, -8\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} = \langle -3, -1, 6\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 5, -7\rangle$
32. $\mathbf{t} = \langle 2, -3, -1\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -6, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{v} = \langle -9, 5, -4\rangle$
33. $\mathbf{t} = -4\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = 5\mathbf{i} + 7\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} - 5\mathbf{k}$
34. $\mathbf{t} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = -3\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{i} - 6\mathbf{j} + 8\mathbf{k}$
35. $\mathbf{t} = 5\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j} + 6\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{u} = 3\mathbf{i} - 5\mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{v} = 8\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j} + 4\mathbf{k}$

Find a vector that is orthogonal to each vector.

36. $\langle 3, -8, 4\rangle$
37. $\langle -1, -2, 5\rangle$
38. $\left\langle 6, -\frac{1}{3}, -3\right\rangle$
39. $\langle 7, 0, 8\rangle$

Given v and u · v, find u.

40. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 2, -4, -6\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -22$
41. $\mathbf{v} = \left\langle \frac{1}{2}, 0, 4\right\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{31}{2}$
42. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, -6, -5\rangle$, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 35$

Determine whether the points are collinear.

43. $(-1, 7, 7)$, $(-3, 9, 11)$, $(-5, 11, 13)$
44. $(11, 8, -1)$, $(17, 5, -7)$, $(8, 11, 5)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Determine whether each pair of vectors are parallel.

45. $\mathbf{m} = \langle 2, -10, 6 \rangle$, $\mathbf{n} = \langle 3, -15, 9 \rangle$

46. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 6, 3, -7 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -4, -2, 3 \rangle$

47. $\mathbf{w} = \left\langle -\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, -\frac{9}{8} \right\rangle$, $\mathbf{z} = \langle -4, 2, -3 \rangle$

Write the component form of each vector.

48. $\mathbf{u}$ lies in the yz-plane, has a magnitude of 8, and makes a 60° angle above the positive y-axis.

49. $\mathbf{v}$ lies in the xy-plane, has a magnitude of 11, and makes a 30° angle to the left of the negative x-axis.

Given the four vertices, determine whether quadrilateral *ABCD* is a parallelogram. If it is, find its area, and determine whether it is a rectangle.

50. $A(3, 0, -2)$, $B(0, 4, -1)$, $C(0, 2, 5)$, $D(3, 2, 4)$

51. $A(7, 5, 5)$, $B(4, 4, 4)$, $C(4, 6, 2)$, $D(7, 7, 3)$

52. **AIR SHOWS** In an air show, two airplanes take off simultaneously. The first plane starts at the position $(0, -2, 0)$ and is at the position $(6, -10, 15)$ after three seconds. The second plane starts at the position $(0, 2, 0)$ and is at the position $(6, 10, 15)$ after three seconds. Are the paths of the two planes parallel? Explain.

For $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 2, -2 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 4, 5 \rangle$, find each of the following, if possible.

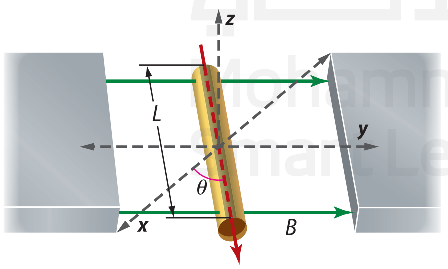
53. $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

54. $\mathbf{v} \times (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})$

55. $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$

56. $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$

57. **ELECTRICITY** When a wire carrying an electric current is placed in a magnetic field, the force on the wire in newtons is given by $\vec{F} = I\,\vec{L} \times \vec{B}$, where I represents the current flowing through the wire in amps, $\vec{L}$ represents the vector length of the wire pointing in the direction of the current in meters, and $\vec{B}$ is the force of the magnetic field in teslas. In the figure below, the wire is rotated through an angle θ in the xy-plane.

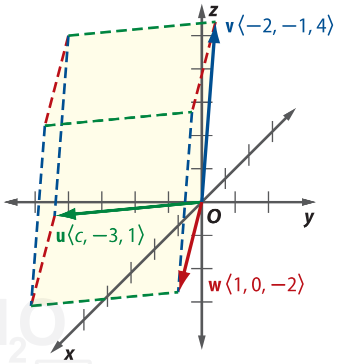


a. If the force of a magnetic field is 1.1 teslas, find the magnitude of the force on a wire in the xy-plane that is 0.15 meter in length carrying a current of 25 amps at an angle of 60°.

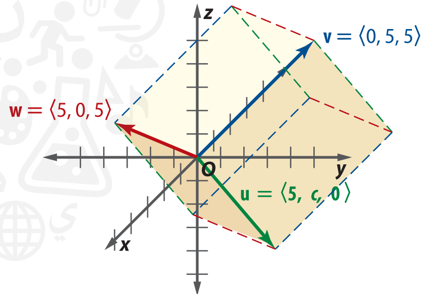
b. If the force on the wire is $\vec{F} = \langle 0, 0, -0.63 \rangle$, what is the angle of the wire?

Given v, w, and the volume of the parallelepiped having adjacent edges u, v, and w, find *c*.

58. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -2, -1, 4 \rangle$, $\mathbf{w} = \langle 1, 0, -2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{u} = \langle c, -3, 1 \rangle$, and $V = 7$ cubic units

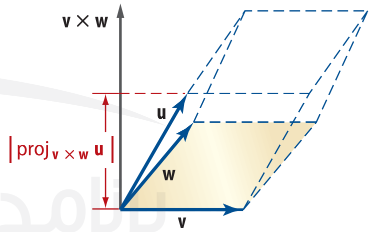


59. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 0, 5, 5 \rangle$, $\mathbf{w} = \langle 5, 0, 5 \rangle$, $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, c, 0 \rangle$, and $V = 250$ cubic units



H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

60. **PROOF** Verify the formula for the volume of a parallelepiped. (*Hint*: Use the projection of $\mathbf{u}$ onto $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}$.)



61. **REASONING** Determine whether the following statement is *sometimes*, *always*, or *never* true. Explain.

For any two nonzero, nonparallel vectors in space, there is a vector that is perpendicular to both.

62. **REASONING** If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are parallel in space, then how many vectors are perpendicular to both? Explain.

63. **CHALLENGE** Given $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 6, c \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -3, -2, 5 \rangle$, find the value of c for which $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = 34\mathbf{i} - 26\mathbf{j} + 10\mathbf{k}$.

64. **REASONING** Explain why the cross product is not defined for vectors in the two-dimensional coordinate system.

65. **WRITING IN MATH** Compare and contrast the methods for determining whether vectors in space are parallel or perpendicular.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Spiral Review

Find the length and midpoint of the segment with the given endpoints.

66. (1, 10, 13), (−2, 22, −6)

67. (12, −1, −14), (21, 19, −23)

68. (−22, 24, −9), (10, 10, 2)

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal.

69. $\langle -8, -7\rangle \cdot \langle 1, 2\rangle$

70. $\langle -4, -6\rangle \cdot \langle 7, 5\rangle$

71. $\langle 6, -3\rangle \cdot \langle -3, 5\rangle$

72. **BAKERY** Abdulaziz's bakery has racks that can hold up to 900 bagels and muffins. Due to costs, the number of bagels produced must be less than or equal to 300 plus twice the number of muffins produced. The demand for bagels is at least three times that of muffins. Abdulaziz makes a profit of AED 3 per muffin sold and AED 1.25 per bagel sold. How many of each item should he make to maximize profit?

73. Decompose $\frac{2m + 16}{m^2 - 16}$ into partial fractions.

Verify each identity.

74. $\tan^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = \sec^2 \theta$

75. $\sec^2 \theta \cot^2 \theta - \cot^2 \theta = 1$

76. $\tan^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta = \tan^2 \theta \sin^2 \theta$

Solve each triangle. Round side lengths to the nearest tenth and angle measures to the nearest degree.

77. $a = 20$, $c = 24$, $B = 47°$

78. $A = 25°$, $B = 78°$, $a = 13.7$

79. $a = 21.5$, $b = 16.7$, $c = 10.3$

Write each decimal degree measure in DMS form and each DMS measure in decimal degree form to the nearest thousandth.

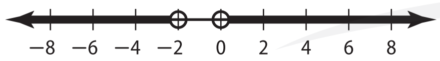
80. −72.775°

81. 29° 6′ 6″

82. 132° 18′ 31″

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

83. **SAT/ACT** The graph represents the set of all possible solutions to which of the following statements?



A $|x - 1| > 1$

B $|x - 1| < 1$

C $|x + 1| < 1$

D $|x + 1| > 1$

84. What is the cross product of $\mathbf{u} = \langle 3, 8, 0\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 2, 6\rangle$?

F $48\mathbf{i} - 18\mathbf{j} + 38\mathbf{k}$

G $48\mathbf{i} - 22\mathbf{j} + 38\mathbf{k}$

H $46\mathbf{i} - 22\mathbf{j} + 38\mathbf{k}$

J $46\mathbf{i} - 18\mathbf{j} + 38\mathbf{k}$

85. **FREE RESPONSE** A batter hits a ball at a 30° angle with the ground at an initial speed of 90 feet per second.

a. Find the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical components of the velocity.

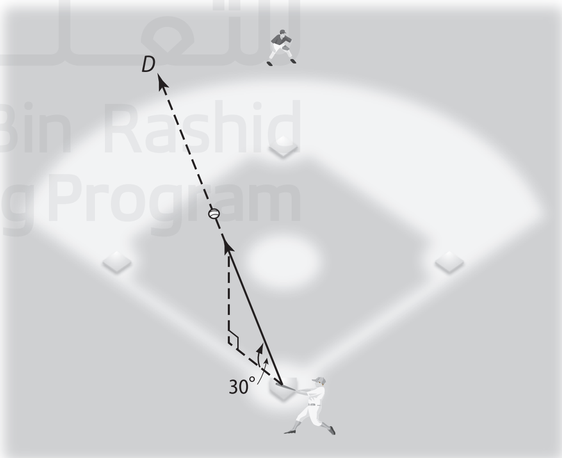
b. Are the values in part **a** vectors or scalars?

c. Assume that the ball is not caught and the player hit it one yard off the ground. How far will it travel in the air?

d. Assume that home plate is at the origin and second base lies due north. If the ball is hit at a bearing of N20°W and lands at point D, find the component form of $\overrightarrow{CD}$.

e. Determine the unit vector of $\overrightarrow{CD}$.

f. The fielder is standing at (0, 150) when the ball is hit. At what quadrant bearing should the fielder run in order to meet the ball where it will hit the ground?



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 7-6

Properties of the Dot and Cross Products of Vectors

Before

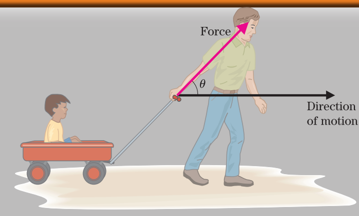
- Getting to know dot products.

Now

1. Identify multiplication properties of dot products.
2. Learning characteristic of vectors.

Why?

- Compare the measurement of vectors in space and the relationship between especially the possibility that they could be parallel or perpendicular.



In sections 7-1 and 7-2, we defined vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ and examined many of the properties of vectors, including how to add and subtract two vectors. It turns out that two different kinds of products involving vectors have proved to be useful: the dot product (or scalar product) and the cross product (or vector product). We introduce the first of these two products in this section.

Definition 7-1

The **dot product** of two vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3\rangle$ in V_3 is defined by

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle \cdot \langle b_1, b_2, b_3\rangle = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3. \tag{7-1}$$

Likewise, the dot product of two vectors in V_2 is defined by

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \langle a_1, a_2\rangle \cdot \langle b_1, b_2\rangle = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2.$$

Be sure to notice that the dot product of two vectors is a *scalar* (i.e., a number, not a vector). For this reason, the dot product is also called the **scalar product**.

Example 7-1 Computing a Dot Product in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Compute the dot product $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}$ for $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 5, -3, 4\rangle$.

Solution We have

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 2, 3\rangle \cdot \langle 5, -3, 4\rangle = (1)(5) + (2)(-3) + (3)(4) = 11.$$

Certainly, dot products are very simple to compute, whether a vector is written in component form or written in terms of the standard basis vectors, as in example 7-2.

Example 7-2 Computing a Dot Product in $\mathbb{R}^2$

Find the dot product of the two vectors $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathrm{i} - 5\mathrm{j}$ and $\mathbf{b} = 3\mathrm{i} + 6\mathrm{j}$.

Solution We have

$$\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = (2)(3) + (-5)(6) = 6 - 30 = -24.$$

The dot product in V_2 or V_3 satisfies the following simple properties.

Theorem 7-1

For vectors **a**, **b** and **c** and any scalar d, the following hold:

(i) $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b}\cdot\mathbf{a}$ (commutativity)
(ii) $\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c}) = \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c}$ (distributive law)
(iii) $(d\mathbf{a})\cdot\mathbf{b} = d(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a}\cdot(d\mathbf{b})$
(iv) $\mathbf{0}\cdot\mathbf{a} = 0$ and
(v) $\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{a} = |\mathbf{a}|^2$.

Remark 7-1

Since vectors in V_2 can be thought of as special cases of vectors in V_3 (where the third component is zero), all of the results we prove for vectors in V_3 hold equally for vectors in V_2.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Proof

We prove (i) and (v) for $\mathbf{a},\mathbf{b} \in V_3$. The remaining parts are left as exercises.

(i) For $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, we have from (7-1) that

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle \cdot \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3$$
$$= b_1 a_1 + b_2 a_2 + b_3 a_3 = \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a},$$

Since multiplication of real numbers is commutative.

(v) For $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$, we have

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle \cdot \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle = a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2.$$

Notice that properties (i)–(iv) of Theorem 7-1 are also properties of multiplication of real numbers. This is why we use the word *product* in dot product. However, there are some properties of multiplication of real numbers not shared by the dot product. For instance, we will see that $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ does not imply that either $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{0}$ or $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$.

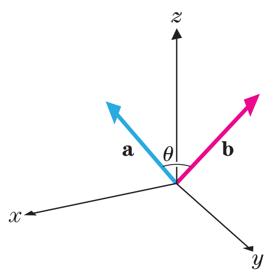


Figure 7.2.3a
The angle between two vectors

For two *nonzero* vectors **a** and **b** in V_3, we define the **angle** θ $(0 \le \theta \le \pi)$ **between the vectors** to be the smaller angle between **a** and **b**, formed by placing their initial points at the same point, as illustrated in Figure 7.2.3a.

Notice that if **a** and **b** have the *same* direction, then $\theta = 0$. If **a** and **b** have *opposite* directions, then $\theta = \pi$. We say that **a** and **b** are **orthogonal** (or **perpendicular**) if $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. We consider the zero vector **0** to be orthogonal to every vector. The general case is stated in Theorem 7-2.

Theorem 7-2

Let θ be the angle between nonzero vectors **a** and **b**. Then,

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}| \cos\theta. \qquad (7\text{-}2)$$

Proof

We must prove the theorem for three separate cases.

(i) If **a** and **b** have the *same direction*, then $\mathbf{b} = c\mathbf{a}$, for some scalar $c > 0$ and the angle between **a** and **b** is $\theta = 0$. This says that

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot (c\mathbf{a}) = c\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} = c|\mathbf{a}|^2.$$

Further,

$$|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta = |\mathbf{a}||c||\mathbf{a}|\cos 0 = c|\mathbf{a}|^2 = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b},$$

since for $c > 0$, we have $|c| = c$.

(ii) If **a** and **b** have the opposite direction, the proof is nearly identical to case (i) above and we leave the details as an exercise.

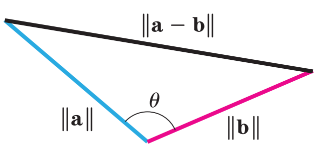


Figure 7.23b
The angle between two vectors

(iii) If **a** and **b** are not parallel, then we have that $0 < \theta < \pi$, as shown in Figure 7.23b. Recall that the Law of Cosines allows us to relate the lengths of the sides of triangles like the one in Figure 7.23b. We have

$$|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta. \qquad (7\text{-}3)$$

Now, observe that

$$\begin{aligned}
|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 &= |\langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3 \rangle|^2 \\
&= (a_1 - b_1)^2 + (a_2 - b_2)^2 + (a_3 - b_3)^2 \\
&= (a_1^2 - 2a_1 b_1 + b_1^2) + (a_2^2 - 2a_2 b_2 + b_2^2) + (a_3^2 - 2a_3 b_3 + b_3^2) \\
&= (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2) + (b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2) - 2(a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + a_3 b_3) \\
&= |\mathbf{a}|^2 + |\mathbf{b}|^2 - 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} \qquad (7\text{-}4)
\end{aligned}$$

Equating the right-hand sides of (7-3) and (7-4), we get (7-2), as desired.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

We can use (7-2) to find the angle between two vectors, as in example 7-3.

Example 7-3 Finding the Angle between Two Vectors

Find the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 1, -3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 5, 6 \rangle$.

Solution From (7-2), we have

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|} = \frac{-11}{\sqrt{14}\sqrt{62}}.$$

It follows that $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{-11}{\sqrt{14}\sqrt{62}}\right) \approx 1.953$ (radians) (or about $112°$), since $0 \le \theta \le \pi$ and the inverse cosine function returns an angle in this range.

The following result is an immediate and important consequence of Theorem 7-2.

Corollary 7-1

Two vectors **a** and **b** are orthogonal if and only if $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$.

Proof

First, observe that if either **a** or **b** is the zero vector, then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$ and **a** and **b** are orthogonal, as the zero vector is considered orthogonal to every vector. If **a** and **b** are nonzero vectors and if θ is the angle between **a** and **b**, we have from Theorem 7-2 that

$$|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 0$$

if and only if $\cos\theta = 0$ (since neither **a** nor **b** is the zero vector). This occurs if and only if $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, which is equivalent to having **a** and **b** orthogonal and so, the result follows.

Example 7-4 Determining Whether Two Vectors Are Orthogonal

Determine whether the following pairs of vectors are orthogonal: (a) $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 3, -5 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 3, 10 \rangle$ and (b) $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 2, -1 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 3, 14 \rangle$.

Solution For (a), we have:

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 2 + 9 - 50 = -39 \neq 0,$$

so that **a** and **b** are *not* orthogonal.

For (b), we have

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = 8 + 6 - 14 = 0,$$

so that **a** and **b** are orthogonal, in this case.

The following two results provide us with some powerful tools for comparing the magnitudes of vectors.

Theorem 7-3 (Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality)

For any vectors **a** and **b**,

$$|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \le |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|.$$

Proof

If either **a** or **b** is the zero vector, notice that (7-5) simply says that $0 \le 0$, which is certainly true. On the other hand, if neither **a** nor **b** is the zero vector, we have from (7-2) that

$$|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta \le |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|,$$

since $|\cos\theta| \le 1$ for all values of θ.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

One benefit of the Cauchy−Schwartz Inequality is that it allows us to prove the following very useful result. If you were going to learn only one inequality in your lifetime, this is probably the one you would want to learn.

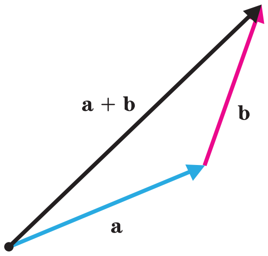


FIGURE 7.24
The Triangle Inequality

Theorem 7-4 (The Triangle Inequality)

For any vectors **a** and **b**,

$$|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| \le |\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}|. \tag{7-6}$$

Before we prove the theorem, consider the triangle formed by the vectors **a**, **b** and **a** + **b**, shown in Figure 7.24. Notice that the Triangle Inequality says that the length of the vector **a** + **b** never exceeds the sum of the individual lengths of **a** and **b**.

Proof

From Theorem 7-1 (i), (ii) and (v), we have

$$|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|^2 = (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{b}$$
$$= |\mathbf{a}|^2 + 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + |\mathbf{b}|^2.$$

From the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality (7-5), we have $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} \le |\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \le |\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|$ and so, we have

$$|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2 + 2\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} + |\mathbf{b}|^2$$
$$\le |\mathbf{a}|^2 + 2|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| + |\mathbf{b}|^2 = (|\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}|)^2.$$

Taking square roots gives us (7-6).

Components and Projections Think about the case where a vector represents a force. Often, it's impractical to exert a force in the direction you'd like. For instance, in pulling a child'swagon,we exert a force in the direction determined by the position of the handle, instead of in the direction of motion. (See Figure 7.25) An important question is whether there is a force of smaller magnitude that can be exerted in a different direction and still produce the same effect on the wagon. Notice that it is the horizontal portion of the force that most directly contributes to the motion of the wagon. (The vertical portion of the force only acts to reduce friction.) We now consider how to compute such a component of a force.

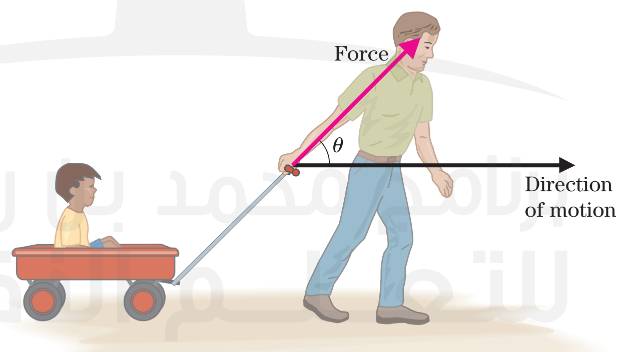


FIGURE 7.25
Pulling a wagon

For any two nonzero position vectors **a** and **b**, let θ be the angle between the vectors. If we drop a perpendicular line segment from the terminal point of **a** to the line containing the vector **b**, then from elementary trigonometry, the base of the triangle (in the case where $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$) has length given by $|\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta$. (See Figure 7.26a.)

Today in mathematics

Lene Hau (1959–)
A Danish mathematician and physicist known for her experiments to slow down and stop light. Although neither of her parents had a background in science or mathematics, she says that as a student, "I loved mathematics. I would rather do mathematics than go to the movies in those days. But after awhile, I discovered quantum mechanics and I've been hooked ever since." Hau credits a culture of scientific achievement with her success. "I was lucky to be a Dane. Denmark has a long scientific tradition that included the great Niels Bohr . . . . In Denmark, physics is widely respected by laymen as well as scientists and laymen contribute to physics."

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

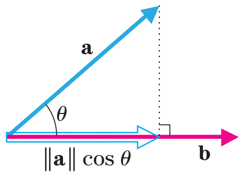


FIGURE 7.26a
$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$, for $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$

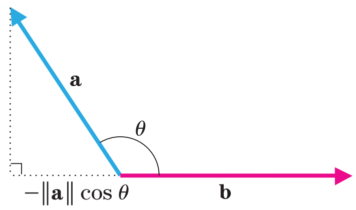


FIGURE 7.26b
$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$, for $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$

On the other hand, notice that if $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$, the length of the base is given by $-|\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta$. (See Figure 7.26b) In either case, we refer to $|\mathbf{a}| \cos \theta$ as the **component** of **a** along **b**, denoted $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$. Using (7-2), observe that we can rewrite this as

$$\begin{aligned}\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} &= |\mathbf{a}|\cos\theta = \frac{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|}{|\mathbf{b}|}\cos\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{|\mathbf{b}|}|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|\cos\theta = \frac{1}{|\mathbf{b}|}\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}\end{aligned}$$

or Component of a along b

$$\boxed{\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}.} \tag{7-7}$$

Notice that $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$ is a scalar and that we divide the dot product in (7-7) by $|\mathbf{b}|$ and not by $|\mathbf{a}|$. One way to keep this straight is to recognize that the components in Figures 7.26a and 7.26b depend on how long **a** is but not on how long **b** is. We can view (7-7) as the dot product of the vector **a** and a unit vector in the direction of **b**, given by $\frac{\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}$.

Once again, consider the case where the vector **a** represents a force. Rather than the component of **a** along **b**, we are often interested in finding a force vector parallel to **b** having the same component along **b** as **a**.We call this vector the **projection** of **a** onto **b**, denoted $\textbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$, as indicated in Figures 7.27a and 7.27b. Since the projection has magnitude $|\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}|$ and points in the direction of **b**, for $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ and opposite **b**, for $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$, we have from (6.7) that

$$\textbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} = (\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a})\frac{\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}\right)\frac{\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|},$$

or Projection of a onto b

$$\boxed{\textbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|^2}\mathbf{b},} \tag{7-8}$$

where $\frac{\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}$ represents a unit vector in the direction of **b**.

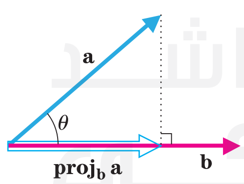


FIGURE 7.27a
$\textbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$, for $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$

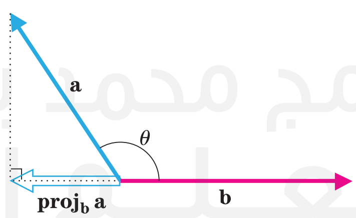


FIGURE 7.27b
$\textbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$, for $\frac{\pi}{2} < \theta < \pi$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Caution

Be careful to distinguish between the *projection* of **a** onto **b** (a vector) and the *component* of **a** along **b** (a scalar). It is very common to confuse the two.

In example 7-5, we illustrate the process of finding components and projections.

Example 7-5 Finding Components and Projections

For $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle -1, 5\rangle$, find the component of **a** along **b** and the projection of **a** onto **b**.

Solution From (7-7), we have

$$\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} = \frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|} = \frac{\langle 2,3\rangle\cdot\langle -1,5\rangle}{|\langle -1,5\rangle|} = \frac{-2+15}{\sqrt{1+5^2}} = \frac{13}{\sqrt{26}}.$$

Similarly, from (7-8), we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|}\right)\frac{\mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{b}|} = \left(\frac{13}{\sqrt{26}}\right)\frac{\langle -1,5\rangle}{\sqrt{26}} \\ &= \frac{13}{\sqrt{26}}\langle -1,5\rangle = \frac{1}{2}\langle -1,5\rangle = \left\langle -\frac{1}{2},\frac{5}{2}\right\rangle.\end{aligned}$$

We leave it as an exercise to show that, in general, $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} \neq \text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a} \neq \mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\,\mathbf{b}$. One reason for needing to consider components of a vector in a given direction is to compute work, as we see in example 7-6.

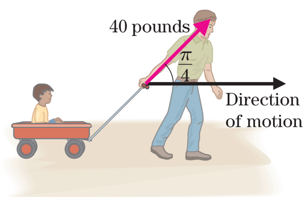


FIGURE 7.28
Pulling a wagon

Example 7-6 Calculating Work

You exert a constant force of 180 Newtons in the direction of the handle of the wagon pictured in Figure 7.28. If the handle makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ with the horizontal and you pull the wagon along a flat surface for 1.6 kilometers 1,609 meters), find the work done.

Solution First, recall from our discussion in Chapter 5 that if we apply a constant force F for a distance d, the work done is given by $W = Fd$. In this case, the force exerted in the direction of motion is not given. However, since the magnitude of the force is, the force vector must be

$$F = 180\left\langle \cos\frac{\pi}{4},\ \sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right\rangle = 180\left\langle\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2},\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right\rangle = \langle 90\sqrt{2}, 90\sqrt{2}\rangle.$$

The force exerted in the direction of motion is simply the component of the force along the vector **i** (that is, the horizontal component of **F**) or $90\sqrt{2}$. The work done is then

$$W = Fd = 90\sqrt{2}(1609) \approx 203{,}632 \text{ Newton-meter.}$$

More generally, if a constant force **F** moves an object from point P to point Q, we refer to the vector $\mathbf{d} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$ as the **displacement vector**. The work done is the product of the component of **F** along **d** and the distance:

$$\begin{aligned}W &= \text{comp}_{\mathbf{d}}\,\mathbf{F}\,|\mathbf{d}| \\ &= \frac{\mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{d}}{|\mathbf{d}|}\cdot|\mathbf{d}| = \mathbf{F}\cdot\mathbf{d}.\end{aligned}$$

Here, this gives us

$$W = \langle 90\sqrt{2}, 90\sqrt{2}\rangle\cdot\langle 1609\,.\,0\rangle = 90\sqrt{2}(1609), \text{ as before.}$$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

BEYOND FORMULAS The dot product gives us a shortcut for computing components and projections. The dot product test for perpendicular vectors follows directly from this interpretation. In general, components and projections are used to isolate a particular portion of a larger problem for detailed analysis. This sort of reductionism is central to much of modern science.

Definition 7-2

The **determinant** of a 2×2 matrix of real numbers is defined by

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1.$$

Example 7-7 Computing a 2 × 2 Determinant

Evaluate the determinant $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$.

Solution From (7-2), we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = (1)(4) - (2)(3) = -2.$$

Definition 7-3

The **determinant** of a 3×3 matrix of real numbers is defined as a combination of three 2×2 determinants, as follows:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3 \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}. \qquad (7\text{-}3)$$

Equation (7-3) is referred to as an **expansion** of the determinant **along the first row.** Notice that the multipliers of each of the 2×2 determinants are the entries of the first row of the 3×3 matrix. Each 2×2 determinant is the determinant you get if you eliminate the row and column in which the corresponding multiplier lies. That is, for the *first* term, the multiplier is a_1 and the 2×2 determinant is found by eliminating the first row and *first* column from the 3×3 matrix:

$$\begin{vmatrix} \cancel{a_1} & \cancel{a_2} & \cancel{a_3} \\ \cancel{b_1} & b_2 & b_3 \\ \cancel{c_1} & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}.$$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Likewise, the *second* 2 × 2 determinant is found by eliminating the first row and the *second* column from the 3 × 3 determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_3 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Be certain to notice the minus sign in front of this term. Finally, the *third* determinant is found by eliminating the first row and the *third* column from the 3 × 3 determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ c_1 & c_2 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Example 7-8 Evaluating a 3 × 3 Determinant

Evaluate the determinant $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ -3 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$.

Solution Expanding along the first row, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ -3 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} &= (1)\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -2 & 5 \end{vmatrix} - (2)\begin{vmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 \end{vmatrix} + (4)\begin{vmatrix} -3 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 \end{vmatrix} \\
&= (1)[(3)(5) - (1)(-2)] - (2)[(-3)(5) - (1)(3)] \\
&\quad + (4)[(-3)(-2) - (3)(3)] \\
&= 41.
\end{aligned}$$

We use determinant notation as a convenient device for defining the cross product, as follows.

Definition 7-4

For two vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$ in V_3, we define the **cross product** (or **vector product**) of **a** and **b** to be

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}. \qquad (7\text{-}4)$$

Notice that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is also a vector in V_3. To compute $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$, you must write the components of **a** in the second row and the components of **b** in the third row; *the order is important!* Also note that while we've used the determinant notation, the 3 × 3 determinant indicated in (7-4) is not really a determinant, in the sense in which we defined them, since the entries in the first row are vectors instead of scalars. Nonetheless, we find this slight abuse of notation convenient for computing cross products and we use it routinely.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid
Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 7-9 Computing a Cross Product

Compute $\langle 1, 2, 3\rangle \times \langle 4, 5, 6\rangle$.

Solution From (7-10), we have

$$\langle 1,2,3\rangle \times \langle 4,5,6\rangle = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= -3\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k} = \langle -3, 6, -3\rangle.$$

Theorem 7-5

For any vector $\mathbf{a} \in V_3$, $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} = 0$ and $\mathbf{a} \times 0 = 0$.

Remark 7-2

The cross product is defined only for vectors in V_3. There is no corresponding operation for vectors in V_2.

Proof

We prove the first of these two results. The second, we leave as an exercise. For $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$, we have from (7-3) that

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ a_2 & a_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ a_1 & a_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ a_1 & a_2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= (a_2a_3 - a_3a_2)\mathbf{i} - (a_1a_3 - a_3a_1)\mathbf{j} + (a_1a_2 - a_2a_1)\mathbf{k} = 0.$$

Let's take a brief look back at the result of example 7-3. There, we saw that

$$\langle 1,2,3\rangle \times \langle 4,5,6\rangle = \langle -3, 6, -3\rangle.$$

There is something rather interesting to observe here. Note that

$$\langle 1,2,3\rangle \cdot \langle -3, 6, -3\rangle = 0$$

and

$$\langle 4,5,6\rangle \cdot \langle -3, 6, -3\rangle = 0.$$

That is, both $\langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$ and $\langle 4, 5, 6\rangle$ are orthogonal to their cross product. As it turns out, this is true in general, as we see in Theorem 7-6.

Historical Notes

Josiah Willard Gibbs (1839–1903) American physicist and mathematician who introduced and named the dot product and the cross product. A graduate of Yale, Gibbs published important papers in thermodynamics, statistical mechanics and the electromagnetic theory of light. Gibbs used vectors to determine the orbit of a comet from only three observations. Originally produced as printed notes for his students, Gibbs' vector system greatly simplified the original system developed by Hamilton. Gibbs was well liked but not famous in his lifetime. One biographer wrote of Gibbs that, "The greatness of his intellectual achievements will never overshadow the beauty and dignity of his life."

Theorem 7-6

For any vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in V_3, $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

Proof

Recall that two vectors are orthogonal if and only if their dot product is zero. Now, using (7-3), we have

$$\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle \cdot \left[\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}\right]$$

$$= a_1\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} - a_2\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} + a_3\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= a_1[a_2b_3 - a_3b_2] - a_2[a_1b_3 - a_3b_1] + a_3[a_1b_2 - a_2b_1]$$

$$= a_1a_2b_3 - a_1a_3b_2 - a_1a_2b_3 + a_2a_3b_1 + a_1a_3b_2 - a_2a_3b_1$$

$$= 0,$$

so that $\mathbf{a}$ and $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$ are orthogonal. We leave it as an exercise to show that $\mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = 0$, also.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Notice that for nonzero and nonparallel vectors **a** and **b**, since **a** × **b** is orthogonal to both **a** and **b**, it is also orthogonal to every vector lying in the plane containing **a** and **b**. (We also say that **a** × **b** is orthogonal to the plane, in this case.) But, given a plane, out of which side of the plane does **a** × **b** point? We can get an idea by computing some simple cross products.

Notice that

$$\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j}=\begin{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k}\\ 1 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 0\end{vmatrix}=\begin{vmatrix}0 & 0\\ 1 & 0\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i}-\begin{vmatrix}1 & 0\\ 0 & 0\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j}+\begin{vmatrix}1 & 0\\ 0 & 1\end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}=\mathbf{k}.$$

Likewise,

$$\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k}=\mathbf{i}.$$

These are illustrations of the **right-hand rule**: If you align the fingers of your *right* hand along the vector **a** and bend your fingers around in the direction of rotation from **a** toward **b** (through an angle of less than 180°), your thumb will point in the direction of **a** × **b**, as in Figure 7.29a. Now, following the right-hand rule, **b** × **a** will point in the direction opposite **a** × **b**. (See Figure 7.29b.) In particular, notice that

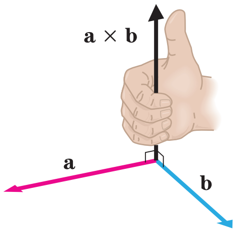


FIGURE 7.29a
a × b

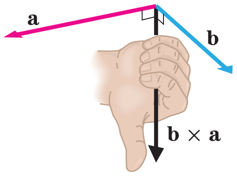


FIGURE 7.29b
b × a

$$\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i}=\begin{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k}\\ 0 & 1 & 0\\ 1 & 0 & 0\end{vmatrix}=-\mathbf{k}.$$

We leave it as an exercise to show that

$$\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{k}=\mathbf{i},\qquad \mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{j}=-\mathbf{i},$$
$$\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{i}=\mathbf{j},\quad \text{and}\quad \mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{k}=-\mathbf{j}.$$

Take the time to think through the right-hand rule for each of these cross products.

There are several other unusual things to observe here. Notice that

$$\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j}=\mathbf{k}\neq-\mathbf{k}=\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{i},$$

which says that the cross product is *not* commutative. Further, notice that

$$(\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{j})\times\mathbf{j}=\mathbf{k}\times\mathbf{j}=-\mathbf{i},$$

while

$$\mathbf{i}\times(\mathbf{j}\times\mathbf{j})=\mathbf{i}\times\mathbf{0}=\mathbf{0},$$

so that the cross product is also *not* associative. That is, in general,

$$(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c}\neq\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c}).$$

Since the cross product does not follow several of the rules you might expect a product to satisfy, you might ask what rules the cross product *does* satisfy. We summarize these in Theorem 7-7.

Theorem 7-7

For any vectors **a**, **b** and **c** in V_3 and any scalar d, the following hold:

(i)	$\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}=-(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{a})$	(anticommutativity)
(ii)	$(d\mathbf{a})\times\mathbf{b}=d(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})=\mathbf{a}\times(d\mathbf{b})$	
(iii)	$\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{c})=\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}+\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c}$	(distributive law)
(iv)	$(\mathbf{a}+\mathbf{b})\times\mathbf{c}=\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{c}+\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c}$	(distributive law)
(v)	$\mathbf{a}\cdot(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})=(\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b})\cdot\mathbf{c}$	(scalar triple product) and
(vi)	$\mathbf{a}\times(\mathbf{b}\times\mathbf{c})=(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{c})\mathbf{b}-(\mathbf{a}\cdot\mathbf{b})\mathbf{c}$	(vector triple product).

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Proof

We prove parts (i) and (iii) only. The remaining parts are left as exercises.

(i) For $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3 \rangle$, we have from (7-10) that

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_2 \\ b_2 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{k}$$

$$= -\begin{vmatrix} b_2 & b_3 \\ a_2 & a_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} + \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_3 \\ a_1 & a_3 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{j} - \begin{vmatrix} b_1 & b_2 \\ a_1 & a_2 \end{vmatrix} \mathbf{k} = -(\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}),$$

since swapping two rows in a 2×2 matrix (or in a 3×3 matrix, for that matter) changes the sign of its determinant.

(iii) For $c = \langle c_1, c_2, c_3 \rangle$, we have

$$\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \langle b_1 + c_1, b_2 + c_2, b_3 + c_3 \rangle$$

and so,

$$\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 + c_1 & b_2 + c_2 & b_3 + c_3 \end{vmatrix}.$$

Looking only at the **i** component of this, we have

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 + c_2 & b_3 + c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_2(b_3 + c_3) - a_3(b_2 + c_2)$$

$$= (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2) + (a_2c_3 - a_3c_2)$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix},$$

which you should note is also the i component of $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}$. Similarly, you can show that the **j** and **k** components also match, which establishes the result.

Always keep in mind that vectors are specified by two things: magnitude and direction. We have already shown that $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ is orthogonal to both **a** and **b**. In Theorem 7-8, we make a general (and quite useful) statement about $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$.

Theorem 7-8

For nonzero vectors **a** and **b** in V_3, if θ is the angle between **a** and **b** ($0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$), then

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \sin\theta. \tag{7-8}$$

Proof

From (7-3), we get

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|^2 = [a_2b_3 - a_3b_2]^2 + [a_1b_3 - a_3b_1]^2 + [a_1b_2 - a_2b_1]^2$$

$$= a_2^2b_3^2 - 2a_2a_3b_2b_3 + a_3^2b_2^2 + a_1^2b_3^2 - 2a_1a_3b_1b_3 + a_3^2b_1^2 + a_1^2b_2^2 - 2a_1a_2b_1b_2 + a_2^2b_1^2$$

$$= (a_1^2 + a_2^2 + a_3^2)(b_1^2 + b_2^2 + b_3^2) - (a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3)^2$$

$$= |\mathbf{a}|^2|\mathbf{b}|^2 - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2$$

$$= |\mathbf{a}|^2|\mathbf{b}|^2 - |\mathbf{a}|^2|\mathbf{b}|^2\cos^2\theta$$

$$= |\mathbf{a}|^2|\mathbf{b}|^2(1 - \cos^2\theta)$$

$$= |a|^2|b|^2 \sin^2\theta.$$

Taking square roots, we get

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \sin\theta,$$

since $\sin\theta \geq 0$, for $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

The following characterization of parallel vectors is an immediate consequence of Theorem 7-8.

Corollary 7-2

Two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b} \in V_3$ are parallel if and only if $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$.

Proof

Recall that $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are parallel if and only if the angle θ between them is either 0 or π. In either case, $\sin\theta = 0$ and so, by Theorem 7-8,

$$|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}| \sin\theta = |\mathbf{a}| \times |\mathbf{b}|\,(0) = 0.$$

The result then follows from the fact that the only vector with zero magnitude is the zero vector.

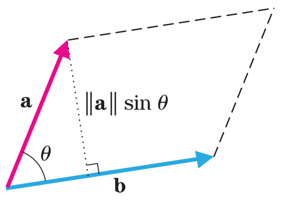


FIGURE 7.30 Parallelogram

Theorem 7-8 also provides us with the following interesting geometric interpretation of the cross product. For any two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, as long as $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ are not parallel, they form two adjacent sides of a parallelogram, as seen in Figure 7.30. Notice that the area of the parallelogram is given by the product of the base and the altitude. We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= (\text{base})(\text{altitude}) \\ &= |\mathbf{b}|\;|\mathbf{a}|\sin\theta = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|, \end{aligned} \tag{7-5}$$

from Theorem 7-8. That is, the magnitude of the cross product of two vectors gives the area of the parallelogram with two adjacent sides formed by the vectors.

Example 7-10 Finding the Area of a Parallelogram Using the Cross Product

Find the area of the parallelogram with two adjacent sides formed by the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 5, 6\rangle$.

Solution First notice that

$$\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = \mathbf{i}\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - \mathbf{j}\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} + \mathbf{k}\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix} = \langle -3, 6, -3\rangle$$

From (7-5), the area of the parallelogram is given by

$$|\mathrm{a} \times \mathrm{b}| = |\langle -3, 6, -3\rangle| = \sqrt{54} \approx 7.348.$$

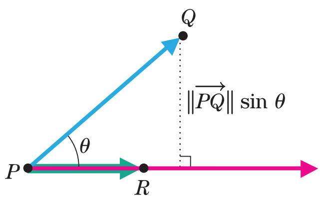


FIGURE 7.31 Distance from a point to a line

We can also use Theorem 7-8 to find the distance from a point to a line in $\mathbb{R}^3$, as follows. Let d represent the distance from the point Q to the line through the points P and R. From elementary trigonometry, we have that

$$d = \left|\overrightarrow{PQ}\right| \sin\theta,$$

where θ is the angle between $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$. (See Figure 7.6.9.) From (7.12), we have

$$\left|\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}\right| = \left|\overrightarrow{PQ}\right| \left|\overrightarrow{PR}\right| \sin\theta = \left|\overrightarrow{PR}\right| (d).$$

Solving this for d, we get

$$d = \frac{\left|\overrightarrow{PQ}\right| \times \left|\overrightarrow{PR}\right|}{\left|\overrightarrow{PR}\right|}. \tag{7-6}$$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 7-11 Finding the Distance from a Point to a Line

Find the distance from the point $Q(1, 2, 1)$ to the line through the points $P(2, 1, -3)$ and $R(2, -1, 3)$.

Solution First, the position vectors corresponding to $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$ are

$$\overrightarrow{PQ} = \langle -1, 1, 4\rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \overrightarrow{PR} = \langle 0, -2, 6\rangle,$$

and
$$\langle -1, 1, 4\rangle \times \langle 0, -2, 6\rangle = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ -1 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & -2 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = \langle 14, 6, 2\rangle.$$

We then have from (7-14) that

$$d = \frac{\left|\overrightarrow{PQ} \times \overrightarrow{PR}\right|}{\overrightarrow{PR}} = \frac{|\langle 14, 6, 2\rangle|}{|\langle 0, -2, 6\rangle|} = \frac{\sqrt{236}}{\sqrt{40}} \approx 2.429.$$

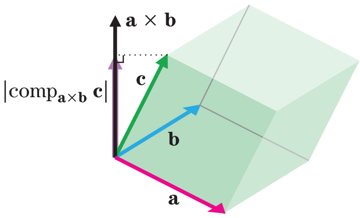


FIGURE 7.32
Parallelepiped formed by the vectors a, b and c

For any three nonzero and noncoplanar vectors **a**, **b** and **c** (i.e., three vectors that do not lie in a single plane), consider the parallelepiped formed using the vectors as three adjacent edges. (See Figure 7.32.) Recall that the volume of such a solid is given by

$$\text{Volume} = (\text{Area of base})(\text{altitude}).$$

Further, since two adjacent sides of the base are formed by the vectors **a** and **b**, we know that the area of the base is given by $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$. Referring to Figure 7.32, notice that the altitude is given by

$$|\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}\times\mathbf{b}}\mathbf{c}| = \frac{|\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})|}{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|},$$

from (7-3). The volume of the parallelepiped is then

$$\text{Volume} = |\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| \frac{|\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})|}{|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|} = |\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})|.$$

The scalar $\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$ is called the **scalar triple product** of the vectors **a**, **b** and **c**. It turns out that we can evaluate the scalar triple product by computing a single determinant, as follows. Note that for $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{c} = \langle c_1, c_2, c_3\rangle$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) &= \mathbf{c} \cdot \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} \\
&= \langle c_1, c_2, c_3\rangle \cdot \left(\mathbf{i}\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} - \mathbf{j}\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} + \mathbf{k}\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \right) \\
&= c_1\begin{vmatrix} a_2 & a_3 \\ b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} - c_2\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_3 \end{vmatrix} + c_3\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} \\
&= \begin{vmatrix} c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \\ a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \end{vmatrix}. \qquad (7\text{-}7)
\end{aligned}$$

Example 7-12 Finding the Volume of a Parallelepiped Using the Cross Product

Find the volume of the parallelepiped with three adjacent edges formed by the vectors $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 4, 5, 6\rangle$ and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 7, 8, 0\rangle$.

Solution First, note that Volume $= |\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})|$. From (7-4), we have that

$$\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = \begin{vmatrix} 7 & 8 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 7\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 \end{vmatrix} - 8\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} + 0\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 7(-3) - 8(-6) = 27.$$

So, the volume of the parallelepiped is Volume $= |\mathbf{c} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})| = |27| = 27.$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

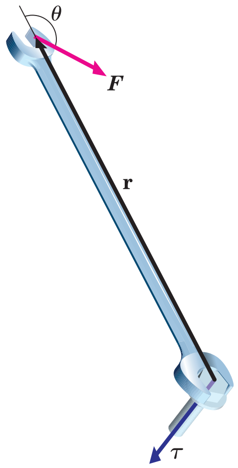


FIGURE 7.33
Torque, $\boldsymbol{\tau}$

Consider the action of a wrench on a bolt, as shown in Figure 7.33. In order to tighten the bolt, we apply a force **F** at the end of the handle, in the direction indicated in the figure. This force creates a **torque** $\boldsymbol{\tau}$ acting along the axis of the bolt, drawing it in tight. Notice that the torque acts in the direction perpendicular to both **F** and the position vector **r** for the handle as indicated in Figure 7.6.11. In fact, using the right-hand rule, the torque acts in the same direction as $\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ and physicists define the torque vector to be

$$\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}.$$

In particular, this says that

$$|\boldsymbol{\tau}| = |\mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}| = |\mathbf{r}|\,|\mathbf{F}|\sin\theta, \tag{7-8}$$

from (7-4). There are several observations we can make from this. First, this says that the farther away from the axis of the bolt we apply the force (i.e., the larger $|\mathbf{r}|$ is), the greater the magnitude of the torque. So, a longer wrench produces a greater torque, for a given amount of force applied. Second, notice that $\sin\theta$ is maximized when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, so that from (7-8) the magnitude of the torque is maximized when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ (when the force vector **F** is orthogonal to the position vector **r**). If you've ever spent any time using a wrench, this should fit well with your experience.

Example 7-13 Finding the Torque Applied by a Wrench

If you apply a force of magnitude 110 Newtons at the end of a 40 centimeter-long wrench, at an angle of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ to the wrench, find the magnitude of the torque applied to the bolt. What is the maximum torque that a force of 110 Newtons applied at that point can produce?

Solution From (7-8), we have

$$|\boldsymbol{\tau}| = |\mathbf{r}|\,|\mathbf{F}|\,\sin\theta = \sin\frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$= (40)\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \approx 3810.5 \text{ centimeter-Newton.}$$

Further, the maximum torque is obtained when the angle between the wrench and the force vector is $\frac{\pi}{2}$. This would give us a maximum torque of

$$|\boldsymbol{\tau}| = |\mathbf{r}|\,|\mathbf{F}|\,\sin\theta = (40)\ 110\ (1) = 4,400 \text{ centimeter-Newton.}$$

FIGURE 7.34
Spinning ball

In many sports, the action is at least partially influenced by the motion of a spinning ball. For instance, in baseball, batters must contend with pitchers' curveballs and in golf, players try to control their slice. In tennis, players hit shots with topspin, while in basketball, players improve their shooting by using backspin. The list goes on and on. These are all examples of the **Magnus force**, which we describe below.

Suppose that a ball is spinning with angular velocity ω, measured in radians per second (i.e., ω is the rate of change of the rotational angle). The ball spins about an axis, as shown in Figure 7.34. We define the spin vector **s** to have magnitude ω and direction parallel to the spin axis. We use a right-hand rule to distinguish between the two directions parallel to the spin axis: curl the fingers of your right hand around the ball in the direction of the spin, and your thumb will point in the correct direction. Two examples are shown in Figures 7.35a and 7.35b. The motion of the ball disturbs the air through which it travels, creating a Magnus force $\mathbf{F}_m$ acting on the ball. For a ball moving with velocity **v** and spin vector **s**, $\mathbf{F}_m$ is given by

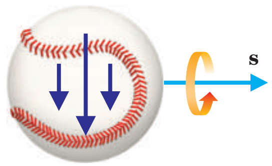


FIGURE 7.35a
Backspin

$$\mathbf{F}_m = c(\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{v}),$$

for some positive constant c. Suppose the balls in Figure 7.35a and Figure 7.35b are moving into the page and away from you. Using the usual sports terminology, the first ball has backspin and the second ball has topspin. Using the right-hand rule, we see that the Magnus force acting on the first ball acts in the upward direction, as indicated in Figure 7.36a. This says that backspin (for example, on a basketball or golf shot) produces an upward force that helps the ball land more softly than a ball with no spin. Similarly, the Magnus force acting on the second ball acts in the downward direction (see Figure 7.36b), so that topspin (for example, on a tennis shot or baseball hit) produces a downward force that causes the ball to drop to the ground more quickly than a ball with no spin.

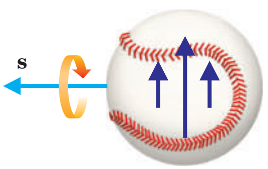


FIGURE 7.35b
Topspin

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

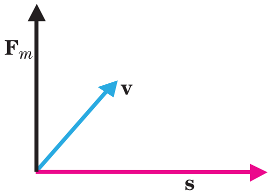


FIGURE 7.36a
Magnus force for a ball with backspin

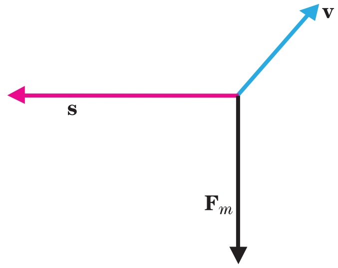


FIGURE 7.36b
Magnus force for a ball with topspin

Example 7-14 Finding the Direction of a Magnus Force

The balls shown in Figures 7.37a and 7.37b are moving into the page and away from you with spin as indicated. The first ball represents a right-handed baseball pitcher's curveball, while the second ball represents a right-handed golfer's shot. Determine the direction of the Magnus force and discuss the effects on the ball.

Solution For the first ball, notice that the spin vector points up and to the left, so that $\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{v}$ points down and to the left as shown in Figure 7.38a. Such a ball will curve to the left and drop faster than a ball that is not spinning, making it more difficult to hit. For the second ball, the spin vector points down and to the right, so $\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{v}$ points up and to the right. Such a ball will move to the right (a "slice") and stay in the air longer than a ball that is not spinning. (See Figure 7.38b.)

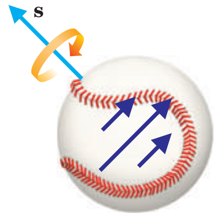


FIGURE 7.37a
Right-hand curveball

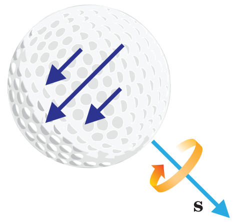


FIGURE 7.37b
Right-hand golf shot

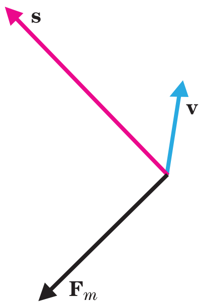


FIGURE 7.38a
Magnus force for a right-handed curveball

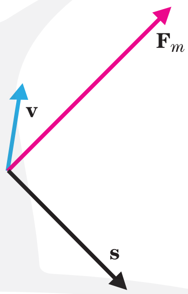


FIGURE 7.38b
Magnus force for a right-handed golf shot

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises 7-6-1

WRITING EXERCISES

1. Explain in words why the Triangle Inequality is true.
2. The dot product is called a "product" because the properties listed in Theorem 7-1 are true for multiplication of real numbers. Two other properties of multiplication of real numbers involve factoring: (1) if $ab = ac$ $(a \neq 0)$ then $b = c$ and (2) if $ab = 0$ then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$. Discuss the extent to which these properties are true for the dot product.
3. To understand the importance of unit vectors, identify the simplification in formulas for finding the angle between vectors and for finding the component of a vector, if the vectors are unit vectors. There is also a theoretical benefit to using unit vectors. Compare the number of vectors in a particular direction to the number of unit vectors in that direction. (For this reason, unit vectors are sometimes called **direction vectors**.)
4. It is important to understand why work is computed using only the component of force in the direction of motion. Suppose you push on a door to close it. If you are pushing on the edge of the door straight at the door hinges, are you accomplishing anything useful? In this case, the work done would be zero. If you change the angle at which you push very slightly, what happens? As the angle increases, discuss how the component of force in the direction of motion changes and how the work done changes.

In exercises 1–6, compute a · b.

1. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 4\rangle$
2. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$
3. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -1, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, 2, -4\rangle$
4. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 2, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -2, 4, 3\rangle$
5. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
6. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$

In exercises 7–10, compute the angle between the vectors.

7. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} - 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$
8. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 0, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, -2, 4\rangle$
9. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 4\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = -2\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$
10. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{k}$

In exercises 11–14, determine whether the vectors are orthogonal.

11. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 4\rangle$
12. $\mathbf{a} = 6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j}$
13. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i}$, $\mathbf{b} = 6\mathbf{j} - 2\mathbf{k}$
14. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, -1, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 4, 4\rangle$

In exercises 15–18, (a) find a 3-dimensional vector perpendicular to the given vector and (b) find a vector of the form $\langle a, 2, -3\rangle$ that is perpendicular to the given vector.

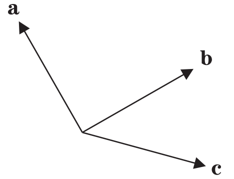
15. $\langle 2, -1, 0\rangle$
16. $\langle 4, -1, 1\rangle$
17. $6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$
18. $2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{k}$

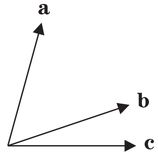
In exercises 19–24, find $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$ and $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\,\mathbf{a}$.

19. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 1\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 3, 4\rangle$
20. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}$
21. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -1, 3\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 2, 2\rangle$
22. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 4, 5\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -2, 1, 2\rangle$
23. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 0, -2\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, -3, 4\rangle$
24. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 2, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -2, 2, 1\rangle$

25. Repeat example 7-6 with an angle of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ with the horizontal.
26. Repeat example 7-6 with an angle of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ with the horizontal.
27. Explain why the answers to exercises 25 and 26 aren't the same, even though the force exerted is the same. In this setting, explain why a larger amount of work corresponds to a more efficient use of the force.
28. Find the force needed in exercise 25 to produce the same amount of work as in example 7-6.
29. A constant force of $\langle 30, 20\rangle$ kilograms moves an object in a straight line from the point (0, 0) to the point (24, 10). Compute the work done.
30. A constant force of $\langle 60, -30\rangle$ kilograms moves an object in a straight line from the point (0, 0) to the point (10, −10). Compute the work done.
31. Label each statement as true or false. If it is true, briefly explain why; if it is false, give a counterexample.
    - **a.** If $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$, then $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$.
    - **b.** If $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$, then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c}$.
    - **c.** $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{a}|^2$.
    - **d.** If $|\mathbf{a}| > |\mathbf{b}|$ then $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} > \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c}$.
    - **e.** If $|\mathbf{a}| = |\mathbf{b}|$ then $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{b}$.
32. To compute $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$, where $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 5\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \frac{\langle 4, 1\rangle}{\sqrt{17}}$, You can first compute $\langle 2, 5\rangle \cdot \langle 4, 1\rangle$ and then divide the result (13) by $\sqrt{17}$. Which property stated in Theorem 6.1 is being used?

In exercises 33 and 34, use the figure to sequence a · b, a · c and b · c in increasing order.

33.


34.


برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

35. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 1\rangle$, find a vector $\mathbf{b}$ such that (a) $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a} = 1$; (b) $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{a}}\, \mathbf{b} = -1$.

36. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle 4, -2\rangle$, find a vector $\mathbf{b}$ such that (a) $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a} = \langle 4, 0\rangle$; (b) $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{a}}\, \mathbf{b} = \langle 4, -2\rangle$.

37. Find the angles in the triangle with vertices (1, 2, 0), (3, 0, −1) and (1, 1, 1).

38. Find the angles in the quadrilateral $ABCD$ with vertices $A = (2, 0, 1)$, $B = (2, 1, 4)$, $C = (4, -2, 5)$ and $D = (4, 0, 2)$.

39. The distance from a point P to a line L is the length of the line segment connecting P to L at a right angle. Show that the distance from (x_1, y_1) to the line $ax + by + c = 0$ equals $\dfrac{|ax_1 + by_1 + c|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$.

40. Prove that the distance between lines $ax + by + c = 0$ and $ax + by + d = 0$ equals $\dfrac{|d - c|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}}$.

41. (a) Find the angle between the diagonal of a square and an adjacent side. (b) Find the angle between the diagonal of a cube and an adjacent side. (c) Extend the results of parts (a) and (b) to a hypercube of dimension $n \geq 4$.

42. Prove that $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}|^2 + |\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}|^2 = 2|\mathbf{a}|^2 + 2|\mathbf{b}|^2$. State this result in terms of properties of the parallelogram formed by vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

Exercises 43–53 involve the Cauchy-Schwartz and Triangle Inequalities.

43. By the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality, $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| \leq |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|$. What relationship must exist between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ to have $|\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|$?

44. By the Triangle Inequality, $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| \leq |\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}|$. What relationship must exist between $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ to have $|\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a}| + |\mathbf{b}|$?

45. Use the Triangle Inequality to prove that $|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}| \geq |\mathbf{a}| - |\mathbf{b}|$.

46. For vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, use the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality to find the maximum value of $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ if $|\mathbf{a}| = 3$ and $|\mathbf{b}| = 5$.

47. Find a formula for $\mathbf{a}$ in terms of $\mathbf{b}$ if $|\mathbf{a}| = 3$, $|\mathbf{b}| = 5$ and $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}$ is maximum.

48. Use the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality in n dimensions to show that $\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k b_k|\right)^2 \leq \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2\right)$. If both $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k^2$ and $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k^2$ converge, what can be concluded? Apply the result to $a_k = \frac{1}{k}$ and $b_k = \frac{1}{k^2}$.

49. Show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k b_k| \leq \frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2 + \frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2$. If both $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} a_k^2$ and $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} b_k^2$ converge, what can be concluded? Apply the result to $a_k = \frac{1}{k}$ and $b_k = \frac{1}{k^2}$. Is this bound better or worse than the bound found in exercise 48?

50. (a) Use the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality in n dimensions to show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k| \leq \sqrt{n}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2\right)^{1/2}$. (b) If $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n$ are nonnegative numbers that sum to 1, show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} p_k^2 \geq \frac{1}{n}$. (c) Among all sets of nonnegative numbers $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n$ that sum to 1, find the choice of $p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n$ that minimizes $\sum_{k=1}^{n} p_k^2$.

51. Use the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality in n dimensions to show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k| \leq \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|^{2/3}\right)^{1/2}\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} |a_k|^{4/3}\right)^{1/2}$.

52. Show that $\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2 b_k^2 \leq \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2\right)$ and then $\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k b_k c_k\right)^2 \leq \left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} a_k^2\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} b_k^2\right)\left(\sum_{k=1}^{n} c_k^2\right)$.

53. Show that $\sqrt{\dfrac{x+y}{x+y+z}} + \sqrt{\dfrac{y+z}{x+y+z}} + \sqrt{\dfrac{x+z}{x+y+z}} \leq \sqrt{6}$.

54. Prove that $\text{comp}_{\mathbf{c}}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = \text{comp}_{\mathbf{c}}\, \mathbf{a} + \text{comp}_{\mathbf{c}}\, \mathbf{b}$ for any nonzero vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{c}$.

55. The **orthogonal projection** of vector $\mathbf{a}$ along vector $\mathbf{b}$ is defined as $\mathbf{orth}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a} = \mathbf{a} - \mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a}$. Sketch a picture showing vectors $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, $\mathbf{proj}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{orth}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a}$, and explain what is orthogonal about $\mathbf{orth}_{\mathbf{b}}\, \mathbf{a}$.

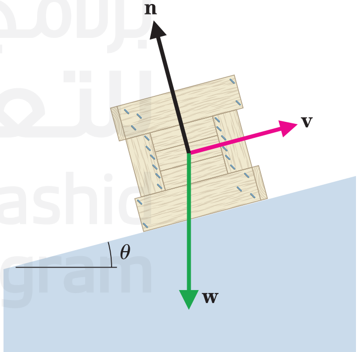
56. Write the given vector as $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$, where $\mathbf{a}$ is parallel to $\langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is perpendicular to $\langle 1, 2, 3\rangle$, for (a) $\langle 3, -1, 2\rangle$ and (b) $\langle 0, 4, 2\rangle$.

Applications

57. In a methane molecule (CH_4), a carbon atom is surrounded by four hydrogen atoms. Assume that the hydrogen atoms are at (0, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1) and (0, 1, 1) and the carbon atom is at $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$. Compute the **bond angle,** the angle from hydrogen atom to carbon atom to hydrogen atom.

58. Suppose that a beam of an oil rig is installed in a direction parallel to $\langle 10, 1, 5\rangle$. (a) If a wave exerts a force of $\langle 0, -200, 0\rangle$ newtons, find the component of this force along the beam. (b) Repeat with a force of $\langle 13, -190, -61\rangle$ newtons. The forces in parts (a) and (b) have nearly identical magnitudes. Explain why the force components are different.

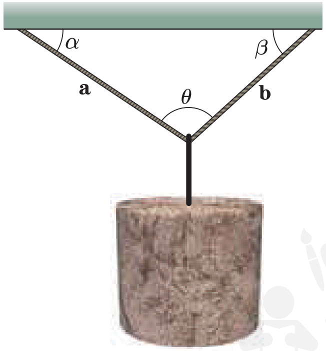
59. In the diagram, a crate of weight w kilograms is placed on a ramp inclined at angle θ above the horizontal. The vector $\mathbf{v}$ along the ramp is given by $\mathbf{v} = \langle \cos\theta, \sin\theta\rangle$ and the **normal** vector by $\mathbf{n} = \langle -\sin\theta, \cos\theta\rangle$. (a) Show that $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{n}$ are perpendicular. Find the component of $\mathbf{w} = \langle 0, -w\rangle$ along $\mathbf{v}$ and the component of $\mathbf{w}$ along $\mathbf{n}$.



(b) If the coefficient of static friction between the crate and ramp equals μ_s, the crate will slide down the ramp if the component of $\mathbf{w}$ along $\mathbf{v}$ is greater than the product of μ_s and the component of $\mathbf{w}$ along $\mathbf{n}$. Show that this occurs if the angle θ is steep enough that $\theta > \tan^{-1}\mu_s$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

60. A weight of 500 kilograms is supported by two ropes that exert forces of $\mathbf{a} = \langle -100, 200 \rangle$ kilograms and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 100, 300 \rangle$ kilograms. Find the angles α, β and θ between the ropes.



61. A car makes a turn on a banked road. If the road is banked at 10°, show that a vector parallel to the road is $\langle \cos 10°, \sin 10° \rangle$.

(a) If the car has weight 2000 kilograms, find the component of the weight vector along the road vector. This component of weight provides a force that helps the car turn. Compute the ratio of the component of weight along the road to the component of weight into the road. Discuss why it might be dangerous if this ratio is very small or very large.

(b) Repeat part (a) for a 2500-kilogram car on a 15° bank.

62. The racetrack at Bristol, Tennessee, is famous for its short length and its steeply banked curves. The track is an oval of length 857 meters and the corners are banked at 36°. Circular motion at a constant speed v requires a centripetal force of $F = \frac{mv^2}{r}$, where r is the radius of the circle and m is the mass of the car. For a track banked at angle A, the weight of the car provides a centripetal force of $mg \sin A$, where g is the gravitational constant. Setting the two equal gives $\frac{v^2}{r} = g \sin A$. Assuming that the Bristol track is circular (it's not really) and using $g = 9.8\,\mathrm{m/s^2}$, find the speed supported by the Bristol bank. Cars actually complete laps at over 190 km/h. Discuss where the additional force for this higher speed might come from.

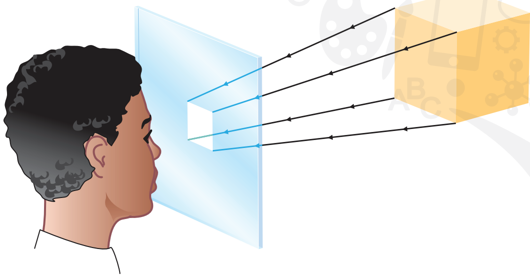
63. Suppose a small business sells three products. In a given month, if 3000 units of product A are sold, 2000 units of product B are sold and 4000 units of product C are sold, then the **sales vector** for that month is defined by $\mathbf{s} = \langle 3000, 2000, 4000 \rangle$. If the prices of products A, B and C are AED 20, AED 15 and AED 25, respectively, then the **price vector** is defined by $\mathbf{p} = \langle 20, 15, 25 \rangle$. Compute $\mathbf{s} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ and discuss how it relates to monthly revenue.

64. Suppose that in a particular county, ice cream sales (in thousands of liters) for a year is given by the vector $\mathbf{s} = \langle 3, 5, 12, 40, 60, 100, 120, 160, 110, 50, 10, 2 \rangle$. That is, 3000 liters were sold in January, 5000 liters were sold in February, and so on. In the same county, suppose that murders for the year are given by the vector $\mathbf{m} = \langle 2, 0, 1, 6, 4, 8, 10, 13, 8, 2, 0, 6 \rangle$. Show that the average monthly ice cream sales is $\overline{s} = 56000$ liters and that the average monthly number of murders is $\overline{m} = 5$. Compute the vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, where the components of $\mathbf{a}$ equal the components of $\mathbf{s}$ with the mean 56 subtracted (so that $\mathbf{a} = \langle -53, -51, -44, \ldots \rangle$) and the components of $\mathbf{b}$ equal the components of $\mathbf{m}$ with the mean 5 subtracted. The correlation between ice cream sales and murders is defined as $\rho = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}||\mathbf{b}|}$. Often, a positive correlation is incorrectly interpreted as meaning that $\mathbf{a}$ "causes" $\mathbf{b}$. (In fact, correlation should *never* be used to infer a cause-and-effect relationship.) Explain why such a conclusion would be invalid in this case.

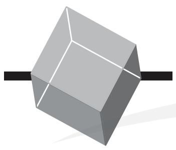
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Natursports/Shutterstock.com

Exploratory Exercises

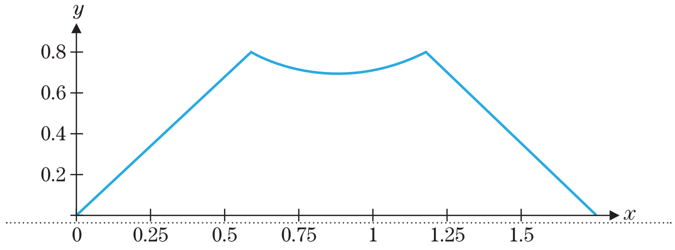
1. This exercise develops a basic principle used in computer graphics. In the drawing, an artist traces the image of an object onto a pane of glass. Explain why the trace will be distorted unless the artist keeps the pane of glass perpendicular to the line of sight. The trace is thus a projection of the object onto the pane of glass. To make this precise, suppose that the artist is at the point (100, 0, 0) and the point $P_1 = (2, 1, 3)$is part of the object being traced. Find the projection $\mathbf{p_1}$ of the position vector $\langle 2, 1, 3\rangle$ along the artist's position vector $\langle 100, 0, 0\rangle$. Then find the vector $\mathbf{q_1}$ such that $\langle 2, 1, 3\rangle = \mathbf{p_1} + \mathbf{q_1}$. Which of the vectors $\mathbf{p_1}$ and $\mathbf{q_1}$ does the artist actually see and which one is hidden? Repeat this with the point $P_2 = (-2, 1, 3)$ and find vectors $\mathbf{p_2}$ and $\mathbf{q_2}$ such that $\langle -2, 1, 3\rangle = \mathbf{p_2} + \mathbf{q_2}$. The artist would plot both points P_1 and P_2 at the same point on the pane of glass. Identify which of the vectors $\mathbf{p_1}, \mathbf{q_1}, \mathbf{p_2}$, and $\mathbf{q_2}$ correspond to this point. From the artist's perspective, one of the points P_1 or P_2 is hidden behind the other. Identify which point is hidden and explain how the information in the vectors $\mathbf{p_1}, \mathbf{q_1}, \mathbf{p_2}$, and $\mathbf{q_2}$ can be used to determine which point is hidden.

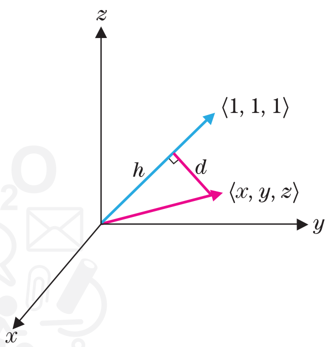


2. Take a cube and spin it around a diagonal.



If you spin it rapidly, you will see a curved outline appear in the middle. (See the figure below.) How does a cube become curved? This exercise answers that question. Suppose that the cube is a unit cube with $0 \le x \le 1$, $0 \le y \le 1$ and $0 \le z \le 1$, and we rotate about the diagonal from (0, 0, 0) to (1, 1, 1). Spinning the cube, we see the combination of points on the cube at their maximum distance from the diagonal. The points on the edge of the cube have the maximum distance. If (x, y, z) is a point on an edge of the cube, define h to be the component of the vector $\langle x, y, z\rangle$ along the diagonal $\langle 1, 1, 1\rangle$. The distance d from (x, y, z) to the diagonal is then $d = \sqrt{|\langle x, y, z\rangle|^2 - h^2}$, as in the diagram below. The curve is produced by the edge from (0, 0, 1) to (0, 1, 1). Parametric equations for this segment are $x = 0$, $y = t$ and $z = 1$, for $0 \le t \le 1$. For the vector $\langle 0, t, 1\rangle$, compute h and then d. Graph $d(t)$. You should see a curve similar to the middle of the outline shown below. Show that this curve is actually part of a hyperbola. Then find the outline created by other sides of the cube. Which ones produce curves and which produce straight lines?





Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises 7-6-2

WRITING EXERCISES

1. In this chapter, we have developed several tests for geometric relationships. Briefly describe how to test whether two vectors are (a) parallel; (b) perpendicular. Briefly describe how to test whether (c) three points are colinear; (d) four points are coplanar.

2. The flip side of the problems in exercise 1 is to construct vectors with desired properties. Briefly describe how to construct a vector (a) parallel to a given vector; (b) perpendicular to a given vector. (c) Given a vector, describe how to construct two other vectors such that the three vectors are mutually perpendicular.

3. In example 6.13, how would the torque change if the force **F** were replaced with the force −**F**? Answer both in mathematical terms and in physical terms.

4. Sketch a picture and explain in geometric terms why $\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j}$ and $\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i}$.

In exercises 1–4, compute the given determinant.

1. $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

2. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

3. $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$

4. $\begin{vmatrix} -2 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

In exercises 5–10, compute the cross product a × b.

5. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 2, -1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 0, 2 \rangle$

6. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 3, 0, -1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 2, 2 \rangle$

7. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 0, 1, 4 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -1, 2, -1 \rangle$

8. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -2, 0 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 3, 0, 1 \rangle$

9. $\mathbf{a} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

10. $\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}$

In exercises 11–16, find two unit vectors orthogonal to the two given vectors.

11. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 0, 4 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, -4, 2 \rangle$

12. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -2, 1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, 0, -2 \rangle$

13. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, -1, 0 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 0, 3 \rangle$

14. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 0, 2, 1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 1, 0, -1 \rangle$

15. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{j}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

16. $\mathbf{a} = -2\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} - 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} - \mathbf{k}$

In exercises 17–20, find the distance from the point Q to the given line.

17. $Q = (1, 2, 0)$, line through $(0, 1, 2)$ and $(3, 1, 1)$

18. $Q = (2, 0, 1)$, line through $(1, -2, 2)$ and $(3, 0, 2)$

19. $Q = (3, -2, 1)$, line through $(2, 1, -1)$ and $(1, 1, 1)$

20. $Q = (1, 3, 1)$, line through $(1, 3, -2)$ and $(1, 0, -2)$

In exercises 21–26, find the indicated area or volume.

21. Area of the parallelogram with two adjacent sides formed by $\langle 2, 3 \rangle$ and $\langle 1, 4 \rangle$

22. Area of the parallelogram with two adjacent sides formed by $\langle -2, 1 \rangle$ and $\langle 1, 3 \rangle$

23. Area of the triangle with vertices $(0, 0, 0)$, $(2, 3, -1)$ and $(3, -1, 4)$

24. Area of the triangle with vertices $(1, 1, 0)$, $(0, -2, 1)$ and $(1, -3, 0)$

25. Volume of the parallelepiped with three adjacent edges formed by $\langle 2, 1, 0 \rangle$, $\langle -1, 2, 0 \rangle$ and $\langle 1, 1, 2 \rangle$

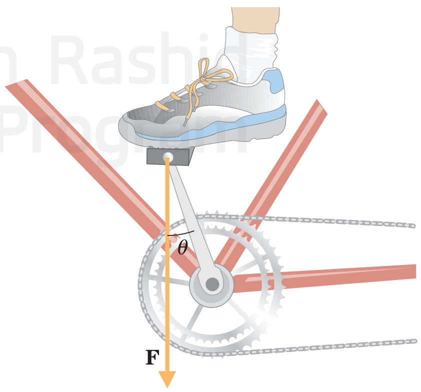
26. Volume of the parallelepiped with three adjacent edges formed by $\langle 0, -1, 0 \rangle$, $\langle 0, 2, -1 \rangle$ and $\langle 1, 0, 2 \rangle$

27. If you apply a force of magnitude 90 Newton's at the end of an 20 centimeter-long wrench at an angle of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ to the wrench, find the magnitude of the torque applied to the bolt.

28. If you apply a force of magnitude 180 Newton's at the end of an 45-centimeter-long wrench at an angle of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ to the wrench, find the magnitude of the torque applied to the bolt.

29. Use the torque formula $\boldsymbol{\tau} = \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F}$ to explain the positioning of doorknobs. In particular, explain why the knob is placed as far as possible from the hinges and at a height that makes it possible for most people to push or pull on the door at a right angle to the door.

30. In the diagram, a foot applies a force **F** vertically to a bicycle pedal. Compute the torque on the sprocket in terms of θ and **F**. Determine the angle θ at which the torque is maximized. When helping a young person to learn to ride a bicycle, most people rotate the sprocket so that the pedal sticks straight out to the front. Explain why this is helpful.



Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

In exercises 31–34, assume that the balls are moving into the page (and away from you) with the indicated spin. Determine the direction of the spin vector and of the Magnus force.

31. **a.**  **b.** 

32. **a.**  **b.** 

33. **a.**  **b.** 

34. **a.**  **b.** 

In exercises 35–40, label each statement as true or false. If it is true, briefly explain why. If it is false, give a counterexample.

35. If $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{c}$, then $\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{c}$.

36. $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = -\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{a}$

37. $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = |\mathbf{a}|^2$

38. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c}) = (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}) \times \mathbf{c}$

39. If the force is doubled, the torque doubles.

40. If the spin rate is doubled, the Magnus force is doubled.

In exercises 41–44, use the cross product to determine the angle θ between the vectors, assuming that $0 < \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$.

41. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 1, 0, 4 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 0, 1 \rangle$

42. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 2, 1 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 0, 0, 2 \rangle$

43. $\mathbf{a} = 3\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 4\mathbf{j} + \mathbf{k}$

44. $\mathbf{a} = \mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 3\mathbf{k}$, $\mathbf{b} = 2\mathbf{i} + \mathbf{j}$

In exercises 45–50, draw pictures to identify the cross product (do not compute!).

45. $\mathbf{i} \times (3\mathbf{k})$

46. $\mathbf{k} \times (2\mathbf{i})$

47. $\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k})$

48. $\mathbf{j} \times (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k})$

49. $\mathbf{j} \times (\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i})$

50. $(\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}) \times \mathbf{k}$

In exercises 51–54, use the parallelepiped volume formula to determine whether the vectors are coplanar.

51. $\langle 2, 3, 1 \rangle$, $\langle 1, 0, 2 \rangle$ and $\langle 0, 3, -3 \rangle$

52. $\langle 1, -3, 1 \rangle$, $\langle 2, -1, 0 \rangle$ and $\langle 0, -5, 2 \rangle$

53. $\langle 1, 0, -2 \rangle$, $\langle 3, 0, 1 \rangle$ and $\langle 2, 1, 0 \rangle$

54. $\langle 1, 1, 2 \rangle$, $\langle 0, -1, 0 \rangle$ and $\langle 3, 2, 4 \rangle$

55. Show that $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|^2 = |\mathbf{a}|^2|\mathbf{b}|^2 - (\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b})^2$.

56. Show that $(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}) \times (\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = 2(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b})$.

57. Show that $(\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) \cdot (\mathbf{c} \times \mathbf{d}) = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{c} & \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c} \\ \mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{d} & \mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{d} \end{vmatrix}$.

58. Prove parts (ii), (iv), (v) and (vi) of Theorem 6-7.

59. In each of the situations shown here, $|\mathbf{a}| = 3$ and $|\mathbf{b}| = 4$. In which case is $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$ larger? What is the maximum possible value for $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$?

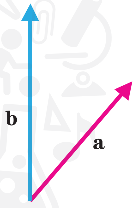


FIGURE A

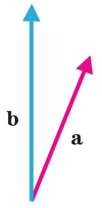


FIGURE B

60. In Figures A and B, if the angles between **a** and **b** are 50° and 20°, respectively, find the exact values for $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}|$. Also, state whether $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}$ points into or out of the page.

61. Identify the expressions that are undefined.

a. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$ **b.** $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})$

c. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{b} \cdot \mathbf{c})$ **d.** $\mathbf{a} \times (\mathbf{b} \times \mathbf{c})$

62. Explain why each equation is true.

a. $\mathbf{a} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}) = 0$ **b.** $\mathbf{b} \cdot (\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{a}) = 0$

Applications

In exercises 63–70, a sports situation is described, with the typical ball spin shown in the indicated exercise. Discuss the effects on the ball and how the game is affected.

63. Baseball overhand fastball, spin in exercise 31(a)

64. Baseball right-handed curveball, spin in exercise 33(a)

65. Tennis topspin groundstroke, spin in exercise 34(a)

66. Tennis left-handed slice serve, spin in exercise 32(b)

67. Soccer spiral pass, spin in exercise 34(b)

68. Soccer left-footed "curl" kick, spin in exercise 31(b)

69. Golf "pure" hit, spin in exercise 31(a)

70. Golf right-handed "hook" shot, spin in exercise 33(b)

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exploratory Exercises

1. Devise a test that quickly determines whether $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| < |\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}|$, $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| > |\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}|$ or $|\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b}| = |\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}|$. Apply your test to the following vectors: (a) $\langle 2, 1, 1\rangle$ and $\langle 3, 1, 2\rangle$, (b) $\langle 2, 1, -1\rangle$ and $\langle -1, -2, 1\rangle$ and (c) $\langle 2, 1, 1\rangle$ and $\langle -1, 2, 2\rangle$. For randomly chosen vectors, which of the three cases is the most likely?

2. In this exercise, we explore the equation of motion for a general projectile in three dimensions. Newton's second law is $\mathbf{F} = m\mathbf{a}$. Three forces that could affect the motion of the projectile are gravity, air drag and the Magnus force. Orient the axes such that positive z is up, positive x is right and positive y is straight ahead. The force due to gravity is weight, given by $\mathbf{F}_g = \langle 0 . 0, \ - mg\rangle$. Air drag has magnitude proportional to the square of speed and direction opposite that of velocity. Show that if $\mathbf{v}$ is the velocity vector, then $\mathbf{F}_g = |\mathbf{v}|\mathbf{v}$ satisfies both properties. The Magnus force is proportional to $\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{v}$, where s is the spin vector. The full model is then

$$\frac{d\mathbf{v}}{dt} = \langle 0, 0, \ - g\rangle - c_d|\mathbf{v}|\mathbf{v} + c_m(\mathbf{s} \times \mathbf{v}),$$

for positive constants c_d and c_m . With $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_x, v_y, v_z\rangle$ and $\mathbf{s} = \langle s_x, s_y, s_z\rangle$, expand this equation into separate differential equations for v_x, v_y and v_z, We can't solve these equations, but we can get some information by considering signs. For a golf drive, the spin produced could be pure backspin, in which case the spin vector is $\mathbf{s} = \langle \omega, 0, 0\rangle$ for some large $\omega > 0$. (A golf shot can have spins of 4000 rpm.) The initial velocity of a good shot would be straight ahead with some loft, $\mathbf{v}(0) = \langle 0, b, c\rangle$ for positive constants b and c. At the beginning of the flight, show that $v_y' < 0$ and thus, v_y decreases. If the ball spends approximately the same amount of time going up as coming down, conclude that the ball will travel farther downrange while going up than coming down. Next, consider the case of a ball with some sidespin, so that $s_x > 0$ and $s_y > 0$. By examining the sign of v_x', determine whether this ball will curve to the right or left. Examine the other equations and determine what other effects this sidespin may have.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

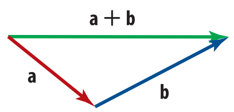
Chapter Summary

KeyConcepts

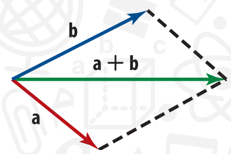
Introduction to Vectors (Lesson 7-1)

- The direction of a vector is the directed angle between the vector and a horizontal line. The magnitude of a vector is its length.
- When two or more vectors are combined, their sum is a single vector called the resultant, which can be found using the triangle or parallelogram method.

Triangle Method



Parallelogram Method



Vectors in the Coordinate Plane (Lesson 7-2)

- The component form of a vector with rectangular components x and y is $\langle x, y\rangle$.
- The component form of a vector that is not in standard position, with initial point $A(x_1, y_1)$ and terminal point $B(x_2, y_2)$, is given by $\langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1\rangle$.
- The magnitude of a vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle v_1, v_2\rangle$ is given by $|\mathbf{v}| = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$.
- If $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2\rangle$ are vectors and k is a scalar, then $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2\rangle$, $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2\rangle$, and $k\mathbf{a} = \langle ka_1, ka_2\rangle$.
- The standard unit vectors $\mathbf{i}$ and $\mathbf{j}$ can be used to express any vector $\mathbf{v} = \langle a, b\rangle$ as $a\mathbf{i} + b\mathbf{j}$.

Dot Products (Lesson 7-3)

- The dot product of $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2\rangle$ is defined as $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2$.
- If θ is the angle between nonzero vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$, then $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{|\mathbf{a}|\,|\mathbf{b}|}$.

Vectors in Three-Dimensional Space (Lesson 7-4)

- The distance between $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is given by $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$.
- The midpoint of $\overline{AB}$ is given by $M\left(\dfrac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \dfrac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \dfrac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right)$.

Dot and Cross Products of Vectors in Space (Lesson 7-5)

- The dot product of $\mathbf{a} = \langle a_1, a_2, a_3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle b_1, b_2, b_3\rangle$ is defined as $\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3$.
- If $\mathbf{a} = a_1\mathbf{i} + a_2\mathbf{j} + a_3\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{b} = b_1\mathbf{i} + b_2\mathbf{j} + b_3\mathbf{k}$, the cross product of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is the vector $\mathbf{a} \times \mathbf{b} = (a_2b_3 - a_3b_2)\mathbf{i} - (a_1b_3 - a_3b_1)\mathbf{j} + (a_1b_2 - a_2b_1)\mathbf{k}$.

KeyVocabulary

component form
components
cross product
direction
dot product
equivalent vectors
initial point
linear combination
magnitude
octants
opposite vectors
ordered triple
orthogonal
parallelepiped
parallelogram method
parallel vectors
quadrant bearing
rectangular components
resultant
standard position
terminal point
three-dimensional coordinate system
torque
triangle method
triple scalar product
true bearing
unit vector
vector
vector projection
work
z-axis
zero vector

VocabularyCheck

Determine whether each statement is *true* or *false*. If false, replace the underlined term or expression to make the statement true.

1. The terminal point of a vector is where the vector begins.
2. If $\mathbf{a} = \langle -4, 1\rangle$ and $\mathbf{b} = \langle 3, 2\rangle$, the dot product is calculated by $-4(1) + 3(2)$.
3. The midpoint of $\overline{AB}$ with $A(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ is given by $\left(\dfrac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \dfrac{y_1 + y_2}{2}, \dfrac{z_1 + z_2}{2}\right)$.
4. The magnitude of $\mathbf{r}$ if the initial point is $A(-1, 2)$ and the terminal point is $B(2, -4)$ is $\langle 3, -6\rangle$.
5. Two vectors are equal only if they have the same direction and magnitude.
6. When two nonzero vectors are orthogonal, the angle between them is 180°.
7. The component of $\mathbf{u}$ onto $\mathbf{v}$ is the vector with direction that is parallel to $\mathbf{v}$ *and* with length that is the component of $\mathbf{u}$ along $\mathbf{v}$.
8. To find at least one vector orthogonal to any two vectors in space, calculate the cross product of the two original vectors.
9. When a vector is subtracted, it is equivalent to adding the opposite vector.
10. If $\mathbf{v}$ is a unit vector in the same direction as $\mathbf{u}$, then $\mathbf{v} = \dfrac{|\mathbf{u}|}{\mathbf{u}}$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Lesson-by-Lesson Review

7-1 Introduction to Vectors

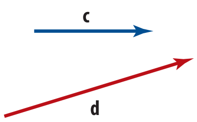
State whether each quantity described is a *vector* quantity or a *scalar* quantity.

11. a car driving 50 kilometers an hour due east

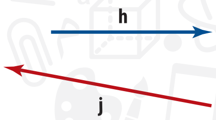
12. a gust of wind blowing 5 meters per second

Find the resultant of each pair of vectors using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant to the nearest tenth of a centimeter and its direction relative to the horizontal.

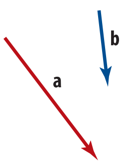
13.



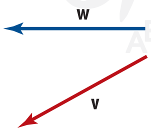
14.



15.



16.



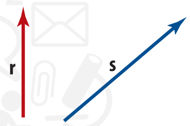
Determine the magnitude and direction of the resultant of each vector sum.

17. 70 meters due west and then 150 meters due east

18. 8 newtons directly backward and then 12 newtons directly backward

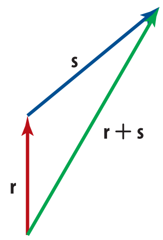
Example 1

Find the resultant of r and s using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant in centimeters and its direction relative to the horizontal.



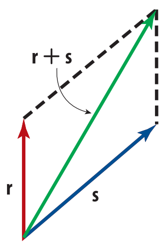
Triangle Method

Translate **r** so that the tip of **r** touches the tail of **s**. The resultant is the vector from the tail of **r** to the tip of **s**.



Parallelogram Method

Translate **s** so that the tail of **s** touches the tail of **r**. Complete the parallelogram that has **r** and **s** as two of its sides. The resultant is the vector that forms the indicated diagonal of the parallelogram.



The magnitude of the resultant is 3.4 cm and the direction is 59°.

7-2 Vectors in the Coordinate Plane

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points.

19. $A(-1, 3)$, $B(5, 4)$

20. $A(7, -2)$, $B(-9, 6)$

21. $A(-8, -4)$, $B(6, 1)$

22. $A(2, -10)$, $B(3, -5)$

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{p} = \langle 4, 0\rangle$, $\mathbf{q} = \langle -2, -3\rangle$, and $\mathbf{t} = \langle -4, 2\rangle$.

23. $2\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}$

24. $\mathbf{p} + 2\mathbf{t}$

25. $\mathbf{t} - 3\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}$

26. $2\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{t} - 3\mathbf{q}$

Find a unit vector u with the same direction as v.

27. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -7, 2\rangle$

28. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 3, -3\rangle$

29. $\mathbf{v} = \langle -5, -8\rangle$

30. $\mathbf{v} = \langle 9, 3\rangle$

Example 2

Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(3, -2)$ and terminal point $B(4, -1)$.

$\overrightarrow{AB} = \langle x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1\rangle$	Component form
$= \langle 4 - 3, -1 - (-2)\rangle$	Substitute.
$= \langle 1, 1\rangle$	Subtract.

Find the magnitude using the Distance Formula.

$\lvert\overrightarrow{AB}\rvert = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$	Distance Formula
$= \sqrt{[(4 - 3)]^2 + [-1 - (-2)]^2}$	Substitute.
$= \sqrt{2}$ or about 1.4	Simplify.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

7-3 Dot Products and Vector Projections

Find the dot product of **u** and **v**. Then determine if **u** and **v** are orthogonal.

31. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -3, 5\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 1\rangle$

32. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 5, 7\rangle$

33. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 8, 2\rangle$

34. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, 3\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 1, 3\rangle$

Find the angle θ between **u** and **v** to the nearest tenth of a degree.

35. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, -1\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -2, 3\rangle$

36. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 8\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 4, 2\rangle$

Example 3

Find the dot product of $x = \langle 2, -5\rangle$ and $\mathbf{y} = \langle -4, 7\rangle$. Then determine if x and y are orthogonal.

$x \cdot \mathbf{y} = x_1y_1 + x_2y_2$ Dot product

$= 2(-4) + -5(7)$ Substitute.

$= -8 + (-35)$ or -43 Simplify.

Since $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y} \neq 0$, **x** and **y** are not orthogonal.

7-4 Vectors in Three-Dimensional Space

Plot each point in a three-dimensional coordinate system.

37. $(1, 2, -4)$

38. $(3, 5, 3)$

39. $(5, -3, -2)$

40. $(-2, -3, -2)$

Find the length and midpoint of the segment with the given endpoints.

41. $(-4, 10, 4), (2, 0, 8)$

42. $(-5, 6, 4), (-9, -2, -2)$

43. $(3, 2, 0), (-9, -10, 4)$

44. $(8, 3, 2), (-4, -6, 6)$

Locate and graph each vector in space.

45. $\mathbf{a} = \langle 0, -3, 4\rangle$

46. $\mathbf{b} = -3\mathbf{i} + 3\mathbf{j} + 2\mathbf{k}$

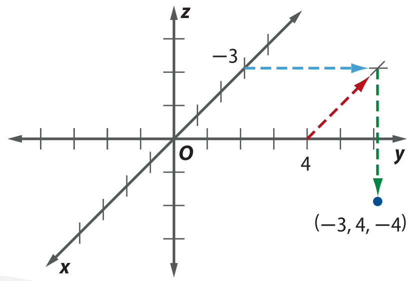
47. $\mathbf{c} = -2\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} + 5\mathbf{k}$

48. $\mathbf{d} = \langle -4, -5, -3\rangle$

Example 4

Plot $(-3, 4, -4)$ in a three-dimensional coordinate system.

Locate the point $(-3, 4)$ in the xy-plane and mark it with a cross. Then plot a point 4 units down from this location parallel to the z-axis.



7-5 Vectors in Three-Dimensional Space

Find the dot product of **u** and **v**. Then determine if **u** and **v** are orthogonal.

49. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 5, 2\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 8, 2, -13\rangle$

50. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 5, 0, -6\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -6, 1, 3\rangle$

Find the cross product of **u** and **v**. Then show that $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ is orthogonal to both **u** and **v**.

51. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, -3, -2\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 4, -3\rangle$

52. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 1, -2\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 5, -4, -1\rangle$

Example 5

Find the cross product of $\mathbf{u} = \langle -4, 2, -3\rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle 7, 11, 2\rangle$. Then show that $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ is orthogonal to both u and v.

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 11 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{i} - \begin{vmatrix} -4 & -3 \\ 7 & 2 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{j} + \begin{vmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 7 & 11 \end{vmatrix}\mathbf{k}$$

$$= \langle 37, -13, -58\rangle$$

$(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{u} = \langle 37, -13, -58\rangle \cdot \langle -4, 2, -3\rangle$

$= -148 - 26 + 174$ or 0 ✔

$(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{v} = \langle 37, -13, -58\rangle \cdot \langle 7, 11, 2\rangle$

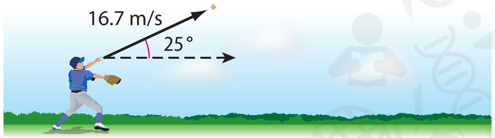
$= 259 - 143 - 116$ or 0 ✔

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

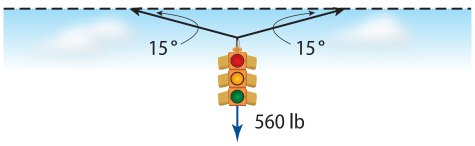
Applications and Problem Solving

53. BASEBALL A player throws a baseball with an initial velocity of 16.7 meters per second at an angle of 25° above the horizontal, as shown below. Find the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical components. (Lesson 7-1)

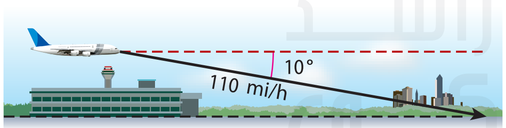


54. STROLLER Laila is pushing a stroller with a force of 200 newtons at an angle of 20° below the horizontal. Find the magnitude of the horizontal and vertical components of the force. (Lesson 7-1)

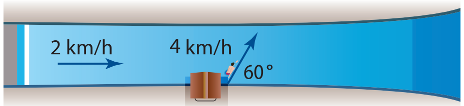
55. LIGHTS A traffic light at an intersection is hanging from two wires of equal length at 15° below the horizontal as shown. If the traffic light weighs 560 pounds, what is the tension in each wire keeping the light at equilibrium? (Lesson 7-1)



56. AIRPLANE An airplane is descending at a speed of 110 miles per hour at an angle of 10° below the horizontal. Find the component form of the vector that represents the velocity of the airplane. (Lesson 7-2)



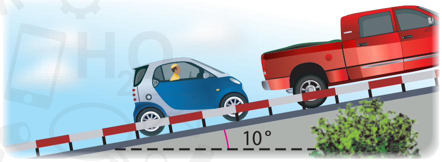
57. LIFEGUARD A lifeguard at a wave pool swims at a speed of 4 kilometers per hour at a 60° angle to the side of the pool as shown. (Lesson 7-2)



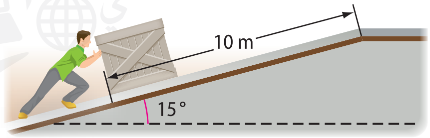
a. At what speed is the lifeguard traveling if the current in the pool is 2 kilometers per hour parallel to the side of the pool as shown?

b. At what angle is the lifeguard traveling with respect to the starting side of the pool?

58. TRAFFIC A 680.4-kilogram car is stopped in traffic on a hill that is at an incline of 10°. Determine the force that is required to keep the car from rolling down the hill. (Lesson 7-3)



59. WORK At a warehouse, Jassim pushes a box on sliders with a constant force of 80 newtons up a ramp that has an incline of 15° with the horizontal. Determine the amount of work in joules that Jassim does if he pushes the dolly 10 meters. (Lesson 7-3)



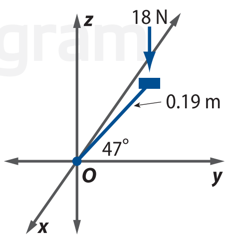
60. SATELLITES The positions of two satellites that are in orbit can be represented by the coordinates (28,625, 32,461, −38,426) and (−31,613, −29,218, 43,015), where (0, 0, 0) represents the center of Earth and the coordinates are given in miles. The radius of Earth is about 3963 miles. (Lesson 7-4)

a. Determine the distance between the two satellites.

b. If a third satellite were to be placed directly between the two satellites, what would the coordinates be?

c. Can a third satellite be placed at the coordinates found in part **b**? Explain your reasoning.

61. BICYCLES A bicyclist applies 18 newtons of force down on the pedal to put the bicycle in motion. The pedal has an initial position of 47° above the *y*-axis, and a length of 0.19 meters to the pedal's axle, as shown. (Lesson 7-5)



a. Find the vector representing the torque about the axle of the bicycle pedal in component form.

b. Find the magnitude and direction of the torque.

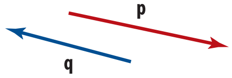
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

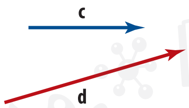
Practice Test

Find the resultant of each pair of vectors using either the triangle or parallelogram method. State the magnitude of the resultant to the nearest tenth of a centimeter and its direction relative to the horizontal.

1.



2.

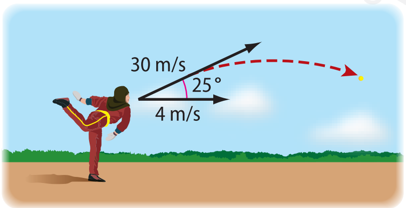


Find the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with the given initial and terminal points.

3. $A(1, -3), B(-5, 1)$

4. $A\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}\right), B(-1, 7)$

5. **SOFTBALL** A batter on the opposing softball team hits a ground ball that rolls out to Lamya in left field. She runs toward the ball at a velocity of 4 meters per second, scoops it, and proceeds to throw it to the catcher at a speed of 30 meters per second and at an angle of 25° with the horizontal in an attempt to throw out a runner. What is the resultant speed and direction of the throw?



Find a unit vector in the same direction as **u**.

6. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 4 \rangle$

7. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, -3 \rangle$

Find the dot product of **u** and **v**. Then determine if **u** and **v** are orthogonal.

8. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, -5 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -3, 2 \rangle$

9. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -3 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 6, 8 \rangle$

10. $\mathbf{u} = 10\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j}, \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{i} + 8\mathbf{j}$

11. **MULTIPLE CHOICE** Write **u** as the sum of two orthogonal vectors, one of which being the projection of **u** onto **v** if $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, 3 \rangle$ and $\mathbf{v} = \langle -4, 2 \rangle$.

A $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle \frac{2}{5}, -\frac{3}{5} \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{3}{5}, \frac{18}{5} \right\rangle$

B $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle \frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{5} \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{3}{5}, \frac{12}{5} \right\rangle$

C $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle -\frac{4}{5}, \frac{2}{5} \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{9}{5}, \frac{13}{5} \right\rangle$

D $\mathbf{u} = \left\langle -\frac{2}{5}, \frac{1}{5} \right\rangle + \left\langle \frac{7}{5}, \frac{14}{5} \right\rangle$

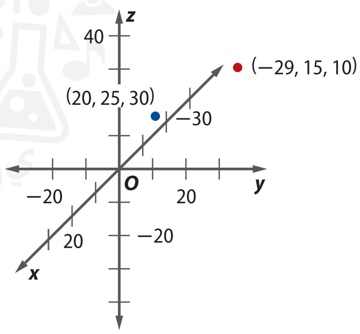
12. **MOVING** Lamis is pushing a box along a level floor with a force of 54.4 kilograms at an angle of depression of 20°. Determine how much work is done if the box is moved 25 meters.

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{a} = \langle 2, 4, -3 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle -5, -7, 1 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 8, 5, -9 \rangle$.

13. $2\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b} - 3\mathbf{c}$

14. $\mathbf{b} - 6\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{c}$

15. **HOT AIR BALLOONS** During a festival, twelve hot air balloons take off. A few minutes later, the coordinates of the first two balloons are (20, 25, 30) and (−29, 15, 10) as shown, where the coordinates are given in feet.



a. Determine the distance between the first two balloons that took off.

b. A third balloon is halfway between the first two balloons. Determine the coordinates of the third balloon.

c. Find a unit vector in the direction of the first balloon if it took off at (0, 0, 0).

Find the angle θ between vectors **u** and **v** to the nearest tenth of a degree.

16. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -2, 4, 6 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 3, 7, 12 \rangle$

17. $\mathbf{u} = -9\mathbf{i} + 5\mathbf{j} + 11\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{v} = -5\mathbf{i} - 7\mathbf{j} - 6\mathbf{k}$

Find the cross product of **u** and **v**. Then show that $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ is orthogonal to both **u** and **v**.

18. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, 7, 3 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 9, 4, 11 \rangle$

19. $\mathbf{u} = -6\mathbf{i} + 2\mathbf{j} - \mathbf{k}, \mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{i} - 3\mathbf{j} - 2k$

20. **BOATING** The tiller is a lever that controls the position of the rudder on a boat. When force is applied to the tiller, the boat will turn. Suppose the tiller on a certain boat is 0.75 meter in length and is currently resting in the *xy*-plane at a 15° angle from the positive *x*-axis. Find the magnitude of the torque that is developed about the axle of the tiller if 50 newtons of force is applied in a direction parallel to the positive *y*-axis.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

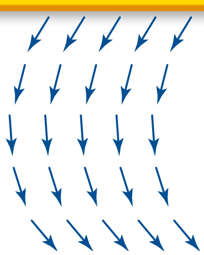
CHAPTER 7

Connect to AP Calculus
Vector Fields

Objective

- Graph vectors in and identify graphs of vector fields.

In Chapter 7, you examined the effects that wind and water currents have on a moving object. The force produced by the wind and current was represented by a single vector. However, we know that the current in a body of water or the force produced by wind is not necessarily constant; instead it differs from one region to the next. If we want to represent the entire current or air flow in an area, we would need to assign a vector to each point in space, thus creating a *vector field*.



Vector fields are commonly used in engineering and physics to model air resistance, magnetic and gravitational forces, and the motion of liquids. While these applications of vector fields require multiple dimensions, we will analyze vector fields in only two dimensions.

A vector field $\mathbf{F}(x, y)$ is a function that converts two-dimensional coordinates into sets of two-dimensional vectors.

$$\mathbf{F}(x, y) = \langle f_1(x, y), f_2(x, y)\rangle, \text{ where } f_1(x, y) \text{ and } f_2(x, y) \text{ are scalar functions.}$$

To graph a vector field, evaluate $\mathbf{F}(x, y)$ at (x, y) and graph the vector using (x, y) as the initial point. This is done for several points.

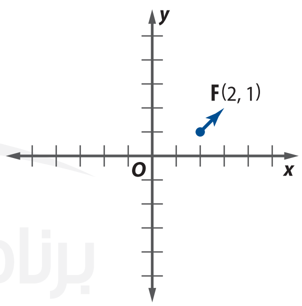
Activity 1 Vector Fields

Evaluate $\mathbf{F}(2, 1)$, $\mathbf{F}(-1, -1)$, $\mathbf{F}(1.5, -2)$, and $\mathbf{F}(-3, 2)$ for the vector field $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = \langle y^2, x - 1\rangle$. Graph each vector using (x, y) as the initial point.

Step 1 To evaluate $\mathbf{F}(2, 1)$, let $x = 2$ and $y = 1$.

$$\langle y^2, x - 1\rangle = \langle 1^2, 2 - 1\rangle$$
$$= \langle 1, 1\rangle$$

Step 2 To graph, let $(2, 1)$ represent the initial point of the vector. This makes $(2 + 1, 1 + 1)$ or $(3, 2)$ the terminal point.



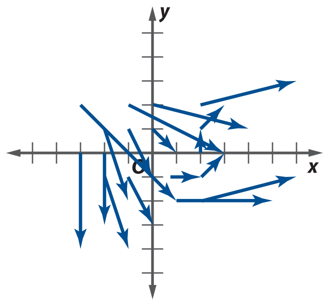
Step 3 Repeat Steps 1–2 for $\mathbf{F}(-1, -1)$, $\mathbf{F}(1.5, -2)$ and $\mathbf{F}(-3, 2)$.

Analyze the Results

1. Are the magnitudes and directions of the vectors the *same* or *different*?
2. Make a conjecture as to why a vector field can be defined as a function.
3. Is it possible to graph every vector in a vector field? Explain your reasoning.

2. Sample answer: There is exactly one vector for each point (x, y) in a vector field.
3. No; sample answer: Every point (x, y) in a plane has a vector associated to it, and there are infinitely many points in a given plane.

A graph of a vector field $\mathbf{F}(x, y)$ should include a variety of vectors all with initial points at (x, y). Graphing devices are typically used to graph vector fields because sketching vector fields by hand is often too difficult.



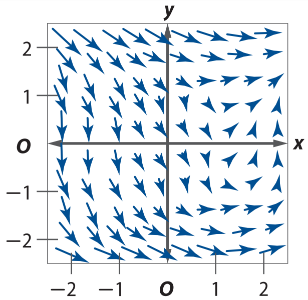
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

StudyTip

Graphs of Vector Fields Every point in a plane has a corresponding vector. The graphs of vector fields only show a selection of points.

To keep vectors from overlapping each other and to prevent the graph from looking too jumbled, the graphing devices proportionally reduce the lengths of the vectors and only construct vectors at certain intervals. For example, if we continue to graph more vectors for the vector field from Activity 1, the result would be the graph on the right.



Analyze the component functions of a vector field to identify the type of graph it will produce.

Activity 2 Vector Fields

Match each vector field to its graph.

$\mathbf{F}(x, y) = \langle 2, 1 + 2xy \rangle$ $\quad$ $\mathbf{G}(x, y) = \langle e^y, x \rangle$ $\quad$ $\mathbf{H}(x, y) = \langle e^y, y \rangle$

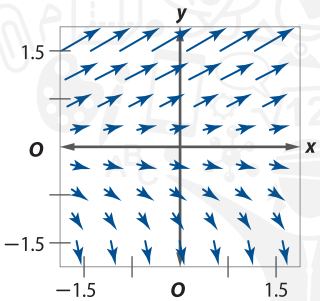


Figure 1

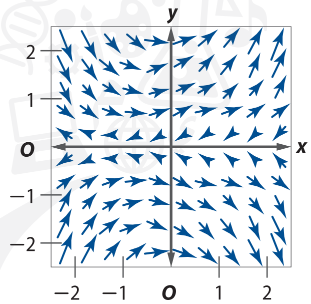


Figure 2

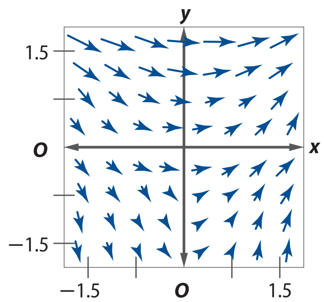


Figure 3

Step 1 Start by analyzing the components that make up $\mathbf{F}(x, y)$. The second component $(1 + 2xy)$ will produce a positive outcome when x and y have the same sign. The vertical component of the vectors in Quadrants I and III is positive, which makes the vectors in these quadrants point upward.

Step 2 The graph that has vectors pointing upward in Quadrants I and III is Figure 2.

Step 3 Repeat Steps 1–2 for the remaining vector fields.

Analyze the Results

4. Suppose the vectors in a vector field represent a force. What is the relationship between the force, the magnitude, and the length of a vector?

5. Representing wind by a single vector assumed that the force created remained constant for an entire area. If the force created by wind is represented by multiple vectors in a vector field, what assumption would have to be made about the third dimension?

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Model and Apply

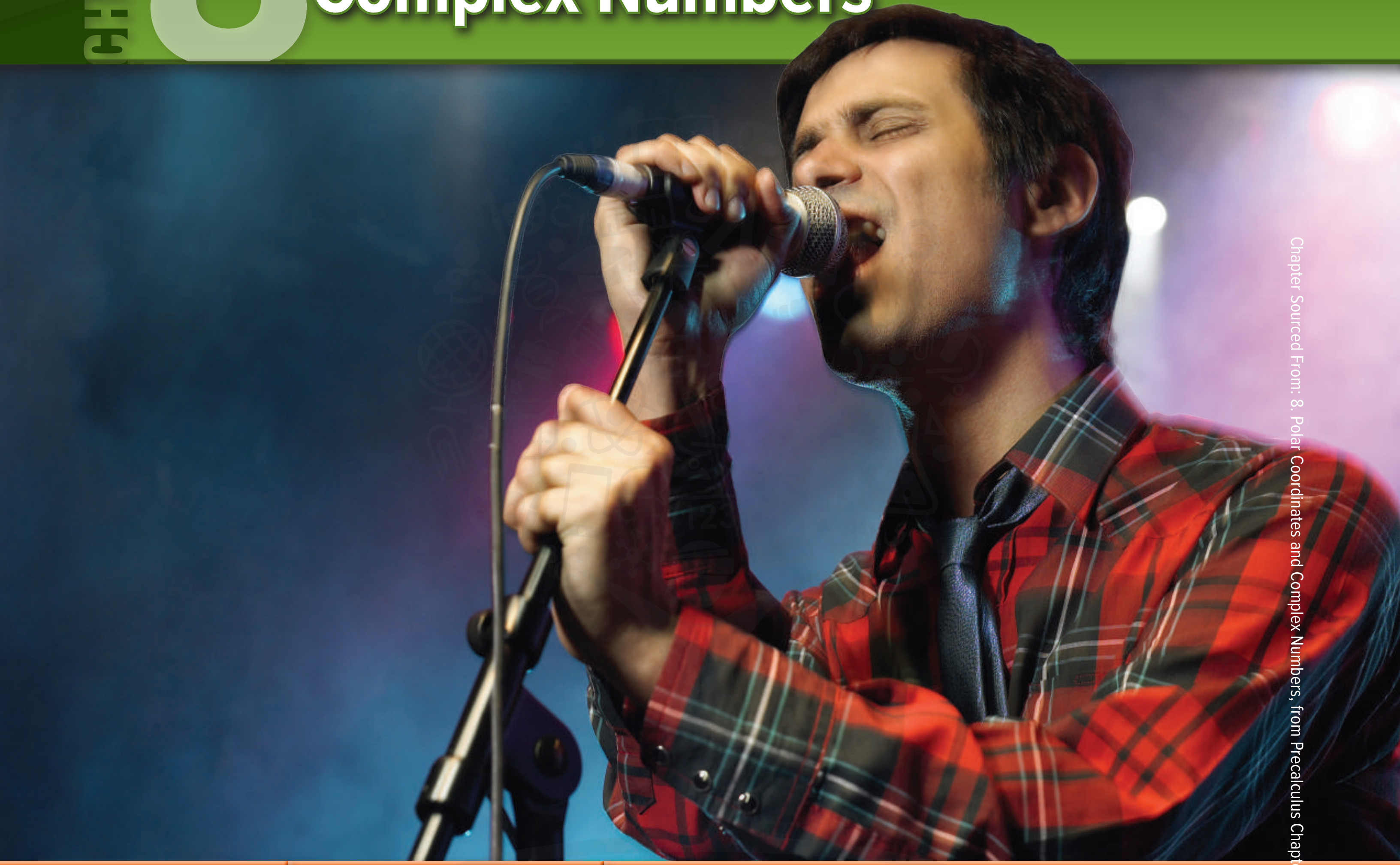
6. Complete the table for the vector field $\mathbf{F}(x, y) = \langle -y, x \rangle$. Then graph each vector.

(x, y)	$\langle -y, x \rangle$	(x, y)	$\langle -y, x \rangle$
(2, 0)		(−2, 1)	
(1, 2)		(−2, 0)	
(2, 1)		(−1, −2)	
(0, 2)		(0, −2)	
(−1, 2)		(1, −2)	
(−2, −1)		(2, −1)	

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 8

Polar Coordinates and Complex Numbers



Then

In **a previous chapter**, you identified and graphed rectangular equations of conic sections.

Now

In **Chapter 8**, you will:

- Graph polar coordinates and equations.
- Convert between polar and rectangular coordinates and equations.
- Identify polar equations of conic sections.
- Convert complex numbers between polar and rectangular form.

Why? ▲

CONCERTS Polar equations can be used to model sound patterns to help determine stage arrangement, speaker and microphone placement, and volume and recording levels. Polar equations can also be used with lighting and camera angles when concerts are filmed.

PREREAD Use the Lesson Openers in Chapter 8 to make two or three predictions about what you will learn in this chapter.

Chapter Sourced From: 8. Polar Coordinates and Complex Numbers, from Precalculus Chapter 9 © 2014 Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Bikeriderlondon/Shutterstock.com

Get Ready for the Chapter

1 Textbook Option Take the Quick Check below.

QuickCheck

Graph each function using a graphing calculator. Analyze the graph to determine whether each function is *even*, *odd*, or *neither*. Confirm your answer algebraically. If odd or even, describe the symmetry of the graph of the function.

1. $f(x) = x^2 + 10$

2. $f(x) = -2x^3 + 5x$

3. $g(x) = \sqrt{x + 9}$

4. $h(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 3}$

5. $g(x) = 3x^5 - 7x$

6. $h(x) = \sqrt{x^2} - 5$

7. **BALLOON** The distance in meters between a balloon and a person can be represented by $d(t) = \sqrt{t^2 + 3000}$, where t represents time in seconds. Analyze the graph to determine whether the function is *even*, *odd*, or *neither*.

Approximate to the nearest hundredth the relative or absolute extrema of each function. State the *x*-values where they occur.

8. $f(x) = 4x^2 - 20x + 24$

9. $g(x) = -2x^2 + 9x - 1$

10. $f(x) = -x^3 + 3x - 2$

11. $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 5x$

12. **ROCKET** A rocket is fired into the air. The function $h(t) = -16t^2 + 35t + 15$ represents the height h of the rocket in feet after t seconds. Find the extrema of this function.

Identify all angles that are coterminal with the given angle. Then find and draw one positive and one negative angle coterminal with the given angle.

13. 165°

14. 205°

15. −10°

16. $\frac{\pi}{6}$

17. $\frac{4\pi}{3}$

18. $-\frac{\pi}{4}$

NewVocabulary

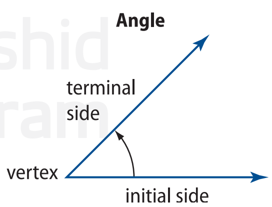
English

- polar coordinate system
- pole
- polar axis
- polar coordinates
- polar equation
- polar graph
- limaçon
- cardioid
- rose
- lemniscate
- spiral of Archimedes
- complex plane
- real axis
- imaginary axis
- Argand plane
- absolute value of a complex number
- polar form
- trigonometric form
- modulus
- argument

ReviewVocabulary

initial side of an angle the starting position of the ray

terminal side of an angle the ray's position after rotation



measure of an angle the amount and direction of rotation necessary to move from the initial side to the terminal side of the angle

---

The term interest refers to an amount of money that is paid or received when borrowing or lending money. If a customer borrows money from a bank, the customer pays the bank interest for the use of its money. If a customer saves money in a bank account, the bank pays the customer interest for the use of his or her money.

The amount of money that is initially borrowed or saved is called the principal. The interest rate is a percentage earned or charged during a certain time period. Simple interest is the amount of interest charged or earned after the interest rate is applied to the principal.

Simple interest (I) is the product of three values: the principal (P), the interest rate written as a decimal number (r), and time (t): $I = P \times r \times t$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

LESSON 8-1

Polar Coordinates

Then

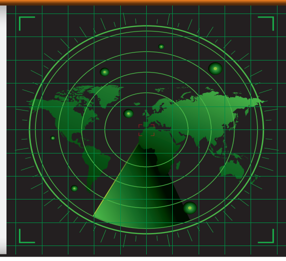
- You drew positive and negative angles given in degrees and radians in standard position.

Now

1. Graph points with polar coordinates.
2. Graph simple polar equations.

Why?

- To provide safe routes and travel, air traffic controllers use advanced radar systems to direct the flow of airplane traffic. This ensures that airplanes keep a sufficient distance from other aircraft and landmarks. The radar uses angle measure and directional distance to plot the positions of aircraft. Controllers can then relay this information to the pilots.



NewVocabulary

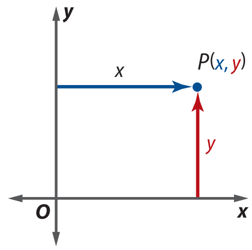
polar coordinate system
pole
polar axis
polar coordinates
polar equation
polar graph

1 Graph Polar Coordinates

To this point, you have graphed equations in a rectangular coordinate system. When air traffic controllers record the locations of airplanes using distances and angles, they are using a **polar coordinate system** or polar plane.

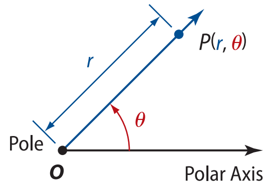
In a rectangular coordinate system, the x- and y-axes are horizontal and vertical lines, respectively, and their point of intersection O is called the origin. The location of a point P is identified by rectangular coordinates of the form (x, y), where x and y are the horizontal and vertical *directed distances*, respectively, to the point. For example, the point $(3, -4)$ is 3 units to the right of the y-axis and 4 units below the x-axis.

Rectangular Coordinate System



In a polar coordinate system, the origin is a fixed point O called the **pole**. The **polar axis** is an initial ray from the pole, usually horizontal and directed toward the right. The location of a point P in the polar coordinate system can be identified by **polar coordinates** of the form (r, θ), where r is the directed distance from the pole to the point and θ is the *directed angle* from the polar axis to $\overrightarrow{OP}$.

Polar Coordinate System



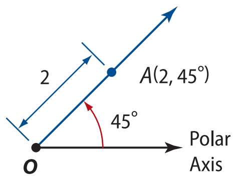
To graph a point given in polar coordinates, remember that a positive value of θ indicates a counterclockwise rotation from the polar axis, while a negative value indicates a clockwise rotation. If r is positive, then P lies on the terminal side of θ. If r is negative, P lies on the ray opposite the terminal side of θ.

Example 1 Graph Polar Coordinates

Graph each point.

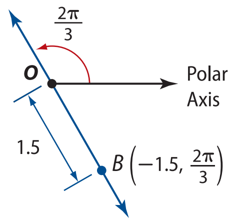
a. $A(2, 45°)$

Because $\theta = 45°$, sketch the terminal side of a $45°$ angle with the polar axis as its initial side. Because $r = 2$, plot a point 2 units from the pole along the terminal side of this angle.



b. $B\left(-1.5, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

Because $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$, sketch the terminal side of a $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ angle with the polar axis as its initial side. Because r is negative, extend the terminal side of the angle in the *opposite* direction and plot a point 1.5 units from the pole along this extended ray.

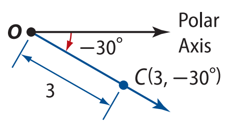


برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Kutty/Shutterstock.com

c. $C(3, -30°)$

Because $\theta = -30°$, sketch the terminal side of a $-30°$ angle with the polar axis as its initial side. Because $r = 3$, plot a point 3 units from the pole along the terminal side of this angle.



GuidedPractice

Graph each point.

1A. $D\left(-1, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ **1B.** $E(2.5, 240°)$ **1C.** $F\left(4, -\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$

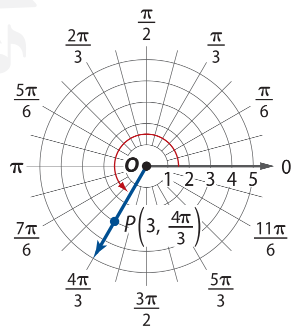
Just as rectangular coordinates are graphed on a rectangular grid, polar coordinates are graphed on a circular or *polar* grid representing the polar plane.

Example 2 Graph Points on a Polar Grid

Graph each point on a polar grid.

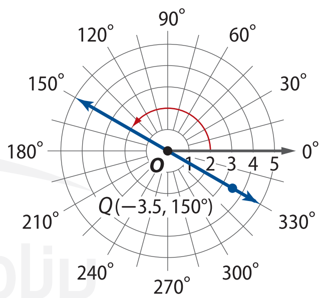
a. $P\left(3, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

Because $\theta = \frac{4\pi}{3}$, sketch the terminal side of a $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ angle with the polar axis as its initial side. Because $r = 3$, plot a point 3 units from the pole along the terminal side of the angle.



b. $Q(-3.5, 150°)$

Because $\theta = 150°$, sketch the terminal side of a $150°$ angle with the polar axis as its initial side. Because r is negative, extend the terminal side of the angle in the *opposite* direction and plot a point 3.5 units from the pole along this extended ray.



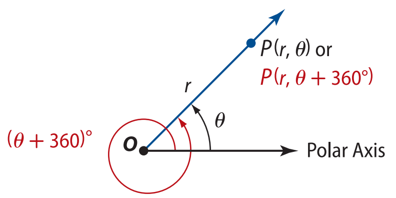
GuidedPractice

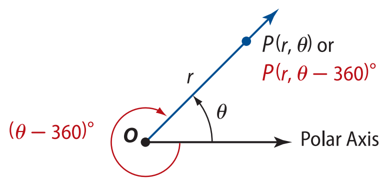
2A. $R\left(1.5, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ **2B.** $S(-2, -135°)$

StudyTip

Pole The pole can be represented by $(0, \theta)$, where θ is any angle.

In a rectangular coordinate system, each point has a unique set of coordinates. This is *not* true in a polar coordinate system. In Lesson 4-2, you learned that a given angle has infinitely many coterminal angles. As a result, if a point has polar coordinates (r, θ), then it also has polar coordinates $(r, \theta \pm 360°)$ or $(r, \theta \pm 2\pi)$ as shown.

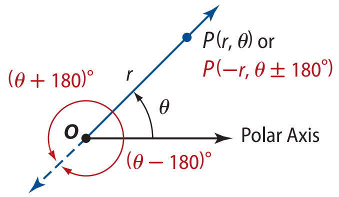




برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

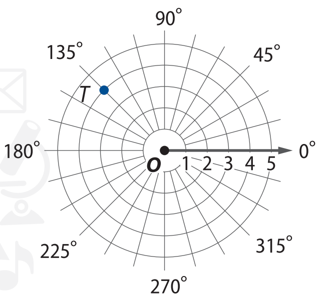
Additionally, because r is a directed distance, (r, θ) and $(-r, \theta \pm 180°)$ or $(-r, \theta \pm \pi)$ represent the same point as shown.



In general, if n is any integer, the point with polar coordinates (r, θ) can also be represented by polar coordinates of the form $(r, \theta + 360n°)$ or $(-r, \theta + (2n + 1)180°)$. Likewise, if θ is given in radians and n is any integer, the other representations of (r, θ) are of the form $(r, \theta + 2n\pi)$ or $(-r, \theta + (2n + 1)\pi)$.

Example 3 Multiple Representations of Polar Coordinates

Find four different pairs of polar coordinates that name point T if $-360° \le \theta \le 360°$.



One pair of polar coordinates that name point T is $(4, 135°)$. The other three representations are as follows.

$(4, 135°) = (4, 135° - 360°)$ — Subtract 360° from θ.
$= (4, -225°)$

$(4, 135°) = (-4, 135° + 180°)$ — Replace r with $-r$ and add 180° to θ.
$= (-4, 315°)$

$(4, 135°) = (-4, 135° - 180°)$ — Replace r with $-r$ and subtract 180° from θ.
$= (-4, -45°)$

GuidedPractice

Find three additional pairs of polar coordinates that name the given point if $-360° \le \theta \le 360°$ or $-2\pi \le \theta \le \pi$.

3A. $(5, 240°)$

3B. $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

2 Graphs of Polar Equations

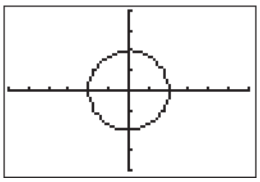
An equation expressed in terms of polar coordinates is called a **polar equation**. For example, $r = 2 \sin \theta$ is a polar equation. A **polar graph** is the set of all points with coordinates (r, θ) that satisfy a given polar equation.

You already know how to graph equations in the Cartesian, or *rectangular*, coordinate system. Graphs of equations involving constants like $x = 2$ and $y = -3$ are considered basic in the Cartesian coordinate system. Similarly, the graphs of the polar equations $r = k$ and $\theta = k$, where k is a constant, are considered basic in the polar coordinate system.

TechnologyTip

Graphing Polar Equations

To graph the polar equation $r = 2$ on a graphing calculator, first press MODE and change the graphing setting from FUNC to POL. When you press Y=, notice that the dependent variable has changed from Y to r and the independent variable from x to θ. Graph $r = 2$.



$[0, 2\pi]$ scl: $\frac{\pi}{16}$ by $[-6, 6]$ scl: 1 by $[-4, 4]$ scl: 1

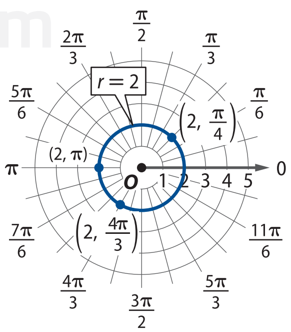
Example 4 Graph Polar Equations

Graph each polar equation.

a. $r = 2$

The solutions of $r = 2$ are ordered pairs of the form $(2, \theta)$, where θ is any real number.

The graph consists of all points that are 2 units from the pole, so the graph is a circle centered at the origin with radius 2.

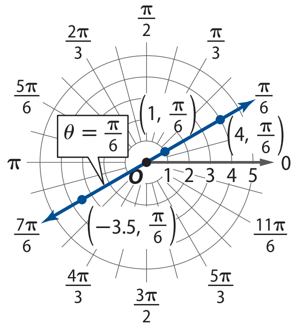


Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

b. $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$

The solutions of $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ are ordered pairs of the form $\left(r, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$, where r is any real number. The graph consists of all points on the line that makes an angle of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ with the positive polar axis.



GuidedPractice

Graph each polar equation.

4A. $r = 3$

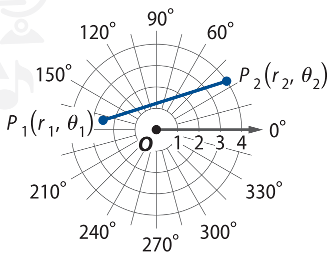
4B. $\theta = \frac{2\pi}{3}$

The distance between two points in the polar plane can be found using the following formula.

KeyConcept Polar Distance Formula

If $P_1(r_1, \theta_1)$ and $P_2(r_2, \theta_2)$ are two points in the polar plane, then the distance P_1P_2 is given by

$$\sqrt{r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 2r_1r_2 \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}.$$



You will prove this formula in Exercise 63.

WatchOut!

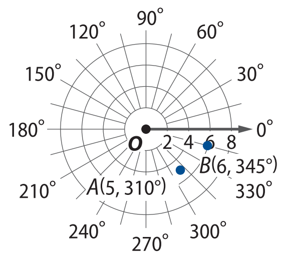
Mode When using the Polar Distance Formula, if θ is given in degrees, make sure your graphing calculator is set in degree mode.

Real-World Example 5 Find the Distance Between Polar Coordinates

AIR TRAFFIC An air traffic controller is tracking two airplanes that are flying at the same altitude. The coordinates of the planes are $A(5, 310°)$ and $B(6, 345°)$, where the directed distance is measured in kilometers.

a. Sketch a graph of this situation.

Airplane A is located 5 kilometers from the pole on the terminal side of the angle 310°, and airplane B is located 6 kilometers from the pole on the terminal side of the angle 345°, as shown.



b. If regulations prohibit airplanes from passing within three kilometers of each other, are these airplanes in violation? Explain.

Use the Polar Distance Formula.

$$AB = \sqrt{r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 2r_1r_2 \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}$$ Polar Distance Formula

$$= \sqrt{5^2 + 6^2 - 2(5)(6)\cos(345° - 310°)} \text{ or about } 3.44$$ $(r_2, \theta_2) = (6, 345°)$ and $(r_1, \theta_1) = (5, 310°)$

The planes are about 3.44 kilometers apart, so they are not in violation of this regulation.

GuidedPractice

5. **BOATS** A naval radar is tracking two aircraft carriers. The coordinates of the two carriers are (8, 150°) and (3, 65°), with r measured in kilometers.

A. Sketch a graph of this situation.

B. What is the distance between the two aircraft carriers?

GL Archive/Alamy

Real-WorldLink

Germany developed a radar device in 1936 that could detect planes in an 128-kilometer radius. The following year, Germany was credited with supplying a battleship, the *Graf Spee*, with the first radar system.

Source: A History of the World Semiconductor Industry

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Graph each point on a polar grid. (Examples 1 and 2)

1. $R(1, 120°)$ **2.** $T(-2.5, 330°)$

3. $F\left(-2, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$ **4.** $A\left(3, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

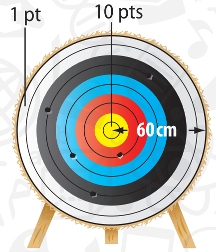
5. $Q\left(4, -\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$ **6.** $B(5, -60°)$

7. $D\left(-1, -\frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$ **8.** $G\left(3.5, -\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$

9. $C(-4, \pi)$ **10.** $M(0.5, 270°)$

11. $P(4.5, -210°)$ **12.** $W(-1.5, 150°)$

13. **ARCHERY** The target in competitive target archery consists of 10 evenly spaced concentric circles with score values from 1 to 10 points from the outer circle to the center. Suppose an archer using a target with a 60-centimeter radius shoots arrows at (57, 45°), (41, 315°), and (15, 240°). (Examples 1 and 2)



a. Plot the points where the archer's arrows hit the target on a polar grid.

b. How many points did the archer earn?

Find three different pairs of polar coordinates that name the given point if $-360° \le \theta \le 360°$ or $-2\pi \le \theta \le 2\pi$. (Example 3)

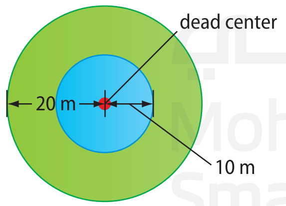
14. $(1, 150°)$ **15.** $(-2, 300°)$

16. $\left(4, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ **17.** $\left(-3, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

18. $\left(5, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$ **19.** $\left(-5, -\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

20. $(2, -30°)$ **21.** $(-1, -240°)$

22. **SKYDIVING** In competitive accuracy landing, skydivers attempt to land as near as possible to "dead center," the center of a target marked by a disk 2 meters in diameter. (Example 4)



a. Write polar equations representing the three target boundaries.

b. Graph the equations on a polar grid.

Graph each polar equation. (Example 4)

23. $r = 4$ **24.** $\theta = 225°$

25. $r = 1.5$ **26.** $\theta = -\frac{7\pi}{6}$

27. $\theta = -15°$ **28.** $r = -3.5$

29. **DARTBOARD** A certain dartboard has a radius of 225 millimeters. The bull's-eye has two sections. The 50-point section has a radius of 6.3 millimeters. The 25-point section surrounds the 50-point section for an additional 9.7 millimeters. (Example 4)

a. Write and graph polar equations representing the boundaries of the dartboard and these sections.

b. What percentage of the dartboard's area does the bull's-eye comprise?

Find the distance between each pair of points. (Example 5)

30. $(2, 30°), (5, 120°)$ **31.** $\left(3, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(8, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

32. $(6, 45°), (-3, 300°)$ **33.** $\left(7, -\frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(1, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

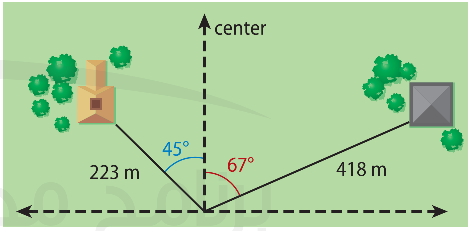
34. $\left(-5, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right), \left(4, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ **35.** $(4, -315°), (1, 60°)$

36. $(-2, -30°), (8, 210°)$ **37.** $\left(-3, \frac{11\pi}{6}\right), \left(-2, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$

38. $\left(1, -\frac{\pi}{4}\right), \left(-5, \frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ **39.** $(7, -90°), (-4, -330°)$

40. $\left(8, -\frac{2\pi}{3}\right), \left(4, -\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$ **41.** $(-5, 135°), (-1, 240°)$

42. **SURVEYING** A surveyor mapping out the land where a new housing development will be built identifies a landmark 223 meters away and 45° left of center. A second landmark is 418 meters away and 67° right of center. Determine the distance between the two landmarks. (Example 5)



43 **SURVEILLANCE** A mounted surveillance camera oscillates and views part of a circular region determined by $-60° \le \theta \le 150°$ and $0 \le r \le 40$, where r is in meters.

a. Sketch a graph of the region that the security camera can view on a polar grid.

b. Find the area of the region.

Find a different pair of polar coordinates for each point such that $0 \le \theta \le 180°$ or $0 \le \theta \le \pi$.

44. $(5, 960°)$ **45.** $\left(-2.5, \frac{5\pi}{2}\right)$

46. $\left(4, \frac{11\pi}{4}\right)$ **47.** $(1.25, -920°)$

48. $\left(-1, -\frac{21\pi}{8}\right)$ **49.** $(-6, -1460°)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

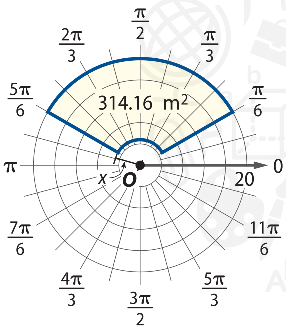
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

50. **AMPHITHEATER** Suppose a singer is performing at an amphitheater. We can model this situation with polar coordinates by assuming that the singer is standing at the pole and is facing the direction of the polar axis. The seats can then be described as occupying the area defined by $-45° \leq \theta \leq 45°$ and $30 \leq r \leq 240$, where r is measured in meters.

a. Sketch a graph of this region on a polar grid.

b. If each person needs 5 square meters of space, how many seats can fit in the amphitheater?

51. **SECURITY** A security light mounted above a house illuminates part of a circular region defined by $\frac{\pi}{6} \leq \theta \leq \frac{5\pi}{6}$ and $x \leq r \leq 20$, where r is measured in meters. If the total area of the region is approximately 314.16 square meters, find x.



Find a value for the missing coordinate that satisfies the following condition.

52. $P_1 = (3, 35°)$; $P_2 = (r, 75°)$; $P_1P_2 = 4.174$

53. $P_1 = (5, 125°)$; $P_2 = (2, \theta)$; $P_1P_2 = 4$; $0 \leq \theta \leq 180°$

54. $P_1 = (3, \theta)$; $P_2 = \left(4, \frac{7\pi}{9}\right)$; $P_1P_2 = 5$; $0 \leq \theta \leq \pi$

55. $P_1 = (r, 120°)$; $P_2 = (4, 160°)$; $P_1P_2 = 3.297$

56. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** In this problem, you will investigate the relationship between polar coordinates and rectangular coordinates.

a. **GRAPHICAL** Plot points $A\left(2, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ and $B\left(4, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$ on a polar grid. Sketch a rectangular coordinate system on top of the polar grid so that the origins coincide and the x-axis aligns with the polar axis. The y-axis should align with the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. Form one right triangle by connecting point A to the origin and perpendicular to the x-axis. Form another right triangle by connecting point B to the origin and perpendicular to the x-axis.

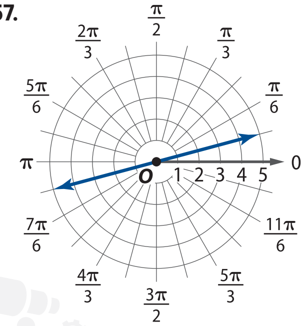
b. **NUMERICAL** Calculate the lengths of the legs of each triangle.

c. **ANALYTICAL** How do the lengths of the legs relate to rectangular coordinates for each point?

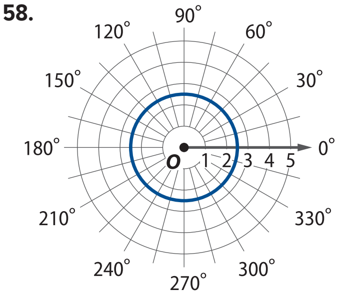
d. **ANALYTICAL** Explain the relationship between the polar coordinates (r, θ) and the rectangular coordinates (x, y).

Write an equation for each polar graph.

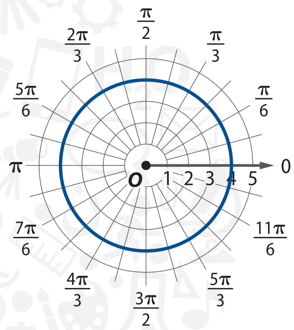
57.



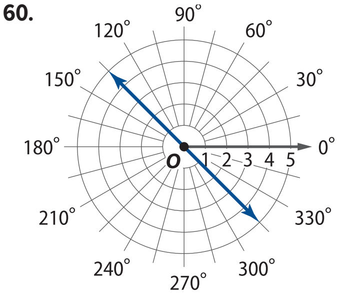
58.



59.



60.



H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

61. **REASONING** Explain why the order of the points used in the Polar Distance Formula is not important. That is, why can you choose either point to be P_1 and the other to be P_2?

62. **CHALLENGE** Find an ordered pair of polar coordinates to represent the point with rectangular coordinates $(-3, -4)$. Round the angle measure to the nearest degree.

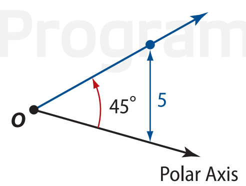
63. **PROOF** Prove that the distance between two points with polar coordinates $P_1(r_1, \theta_1)$ and $P_2(r_2, \theta_2)$ is

$$P_1P_2 = \sqrt{r_1{}^2 + r_2{}^2 - 2r_1r_2 \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}.$$

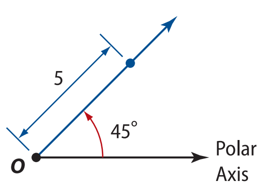
64. **REASONING** Describe what happens to the Polar Distance Formula when $\theta_2 - \theta_1 = \frac{\pi}{2}$. Explain this change.

65. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Sona and Suhaila both graphed the polar coordinates $(5, 45°)$. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

Sona



Erina



66. **WRITING IN MATH** Make a conjecture as to why having the polar coordinates for an aircraft is not enough to determine its exact position.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Find the dot product of u and v. Then determine if u and v are orthogonal.

67. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, 10, 1 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -5, 1, 7 \rangle$

68. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -5, 4, 2 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -4, -9, 8 \rangle$

69. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -8, -3, 12 \rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 4, -6, 0 \rangle$

Find each of the following for $\mathbf{a} = \langle -4, 3, -2 \rangle$, $\mathbf{b} = \langle 2, 5, 1 \rangle$, and $\mathbf{c} = \langle 3, -6, 5 \rangle$.

70. $3\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} + 8\mathbf{c}$

71. $-2\mathbf{a} + 4\mathbf{b} - 5\mathbf{c}$

72. $5\mathbf{a} - 9\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c}$

For each equation, identify the vertex, focus, axis of symmetry, and directrix. Then graph the parabola.

73. $-14(x - 2) = (y - 7)^2$

74. $(x - 7)^2 = -32(y - 12)$

75. $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 3x + \frac{19}{2}$

76. **STATE FAIR** If Hareb and Zayed each purchased the number of game and ride tickets shown below, what was the price for each type of ticket?

Person	Ticket Type	Tickets	Total (AED)
Hareb	game ride	6 15	93
Zayed	game ride	7 12	81

Write the augmented matrix for the system of linear equations.

77.
$$\begin{aligned} 12w + 14x - 10y &= 23 \\ 4w - 5y + 6z &= 33 \\ 11w - 13x + 2z &= -19 \\ 19x - 6y + 7z &= -25 \end{aligned}$$

78.
$$\begin{aligned} -6x + 2y + 5z &= 18 \\ 5x - 7y + 3z &= -8 \\ y - 12z &= -22 \\ 8x - 3y + 2z &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

79.
$$\begin{aligned} x + 8y - 3z &= 25 \\ 2x - 5y + 11z &= 13 \\ -5x + 8z &= 26 \\ y - 4z &= 17 \end{aligned}$$

Solve each equation for all values of x.

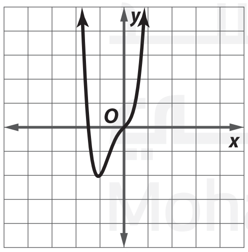
80. $2 \cos^2 x + 5 \sin x - 5 = 0$

81. $\tan^2 x + 2 \tan x + 1 = 0$

82. $\cos^2 x + 3 \cos x = -2$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

83. **SAT/ACT** If the figure shows part of the graph of $f(x)$, then which of the following could be the range of $f(x)$?



A $\{y \mid y \geq -2\}$

B $\{y \mid y \leq -2\}$

C $\{y \mid -2 < y < 1\}$

D $\{y \mid -2 \leq y \leq 1\}$

E $\{y \mid y > -2\}$

84. **REVIEW** Which of the following is the component form of $\overrightarrow{RS}$ with initial point $R(-5, 3)$ and terminal point $S(2, -7)$?

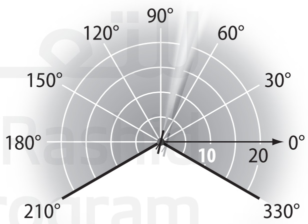
F $\langle 7, -10 \rangle$

G $\langle -3, 10 \rangle$

H $\langle -7, 10 \rangle$

J $\langle -3, -10 \rangle$

85. The lawn sprinkler shown can cover the part of a circular region determined by the polar inequalities $-30^\circ \leq \theta \leq 210^\circ$ and $0 \leq r \leq 20$, where r is measured in meters. What is the approximate area of this region?



A 821 square meters

B 838 square meters

C 852 square meters

D 866 square meters

86. **REVIEW** What type of conic is represented by $25y^2 = 400 + 16x^2$?

F circle

G ellipse

H hyperbola

J parabola

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

EXPLORE 8-2

Graphing Technology Lab
Investigate Graphs of Polar Equations

Objective

- Use a graphing calculator to explore the shape and symmetry of graphs of polar equations.

StudyTip

Square the Window To view the graphs in this activity without any distortion, square the window by selecting ZSquare under the ZOOM menu.

10a. Sample answer: If n is odd, the number of petals will be equal to n; if n is even, the number of petals will be equal to $2n$.

11. Sample answer: Since the equation is similar to the graph of $r = 2 \cos 4\theta$, which is a rose, $r = 10 \cos 24\theta$ will also be a rose. Since n is even, the rose will have 2(24) or 48 petals and will be symmetric to the polar axis and the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

In Lesson 8-1, you graphed polar coordinates and simple polar equations on the polar coordinate system. Now you will explore the shape and symmetry of more complex graphs of polar equations by using a graphing calculator.

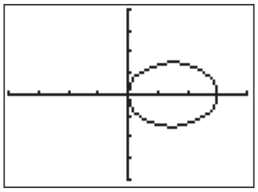
Activity Graph Polar Equations

Graph each equation. Then describe the shape and symmetry of the graph.

a. $r = 3 \cos \theta$

First, change the graph mode to polar and the angle mode to radians. Next, enter $r = 3 \cos \theta$ for r_1 in the Y= list. Use the viewing window shown.

The graph of $r = 3 \cos \theta$ is a circle with a center at (1.5, 0) and radius 1.5 units. The graph is symmetric with respect to the polar axis.

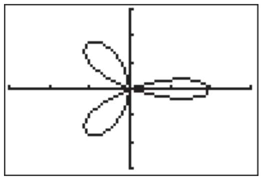


$[0, 2\pi]$ scl: $\frac{\pi}{24}$ by $[-4, 4]$ scl: 1 by $[-4, 4]$ scl: 1

b. $r = 2 \cos 3\theta$

Clear the equation from part **a** in the Y= list and insert $r = 2 \cos 3\theta$. Use the window shown.

The graph of $r = 2 \cos 3\theta$ is a classic polar curve called a rose, which will be covered in Lesson 8-2. The graph has 3 petals and is symmetric with respect to the polar axis.

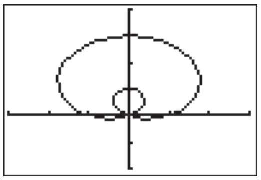


$[0, 2\pi]$ scl: $\frac{\pi}{24}$ by $[-3, 3]$ scl: 1 by $[-3, 3]$ scl: 1

c. $r = 1 + 2 \sin \theta$

Clear the equation from part **b** in the **Y=** list, and enter $r = 1 + 2 \sin \theta$. Adjust the window to display the entire graph.

The graph of $r = 1 + 2 \sin \theta$ is a classic polar curve called a *limaçon,* which will be covered in Lesson 8-2. The graph has a curve with an inner loop and is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.



$[0, 2\pi]$ scl: $\frac{\pi}{24}$ by $[-3, 3]$ scl: 1 by $[-2, 4]$ scl: 1

Exercises

Graph each equation. Then describe the shape and symmetry of the graph.

1. $r = -3 \cos \theta$

2. $r = 3 \sin \theta$

3. $r = -3 \sin \theta$

4. $r = 2 \cos 4\theta$

5. $r = 2 \cos 5\theta$

6. $r = 2 \cos 6\theta$

7. $r = 2 + 4 \sin \theta$

8. $r = 1 - 3 \sin \theta$

9. $r = 1 + 2 \sin (-\theta)$

Analyze the Results

10. **ANALYTICAL** Explain how each value affects the graph of the given equation.

a. the value of n in $r = a \cos n\theta$

b. the value of $|a|$ in $r = b \pm a \sin n\theta$

11. **MAKE A CONJECTURE** Without graphing $r = 10 \cos 24\theta$, describe the shape and symmetry of the graph. Explain your reasoning.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 8-2 Graphs of Polar Equations

Then

- You graphed functions in the rectangular coordinate system.

Now

1. Graph polar equations.
2. Identify and graph classical curves.

Why?

- To reduce background noise, networks that broadcast sporting events use directional microphones to capture the sounds of the game. Directional microphones have the ability to pick up sound primarily from one direction or region. The sounds that these microphones can detect can be expressed as polar functions.

NewVocabulary
limaçon
cardioid
rose
lemniscate
spiral of Archimedes

1 Graphs of Polar Equations

When you graphed equations on a rectangular coordinate system, you began by using an equation to obtain a set of ordered pairs. You then plotted these coordinates as points and connected them with a smooth curve. In this lesson, you will approach the graphing of polar equations in a similar manner.

Example 1 Graph Polar Equations by Plotting Points

Graph each equation.

a. $r = \cos\theta$

Make a table of values to find the r-values corresponding to various values of θ on the interval $[0, 2\pi]$. Round each r-value to the nearest tenth.

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	π	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{4\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	$\frac{5\pi}{3}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	2π
$r = \cos\theta$	1	0.9	0.5	0	−0.5	−0.9	−1	−0.9	−0.5	0	0.5	0.9	1

Graph the ordered pairs (r, θ) and connect them with a smooth curve. It appears that the graph shown in Figure 8.2.1 is a circle with center at $(0.5, 0)$ and radius 0.5 unit.

b. $r = \sin\theta$

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	π	$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$\frac{4\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	$\frac{5\pi}{3}$	$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	2π
$r = \sin\theta$	0	0.5	0.9	1	0.9	0.5	0	−0.5	−0.9	−1	−0.9	−0.5	0

Graph the ordered pairs and connect them with a smooth curve. It appears that the graph shown in Figure 8.2.2 is a circle with center at $\left(0.5, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ and radius 0.5 unit.

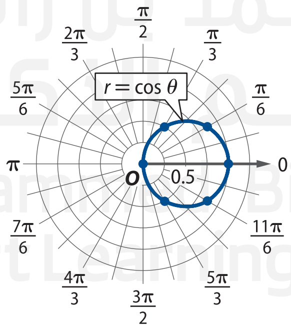


Figure 8.2.1

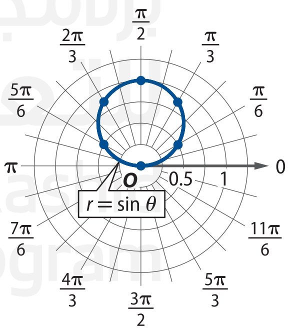


Figure 8.2.2

GuidedPractice

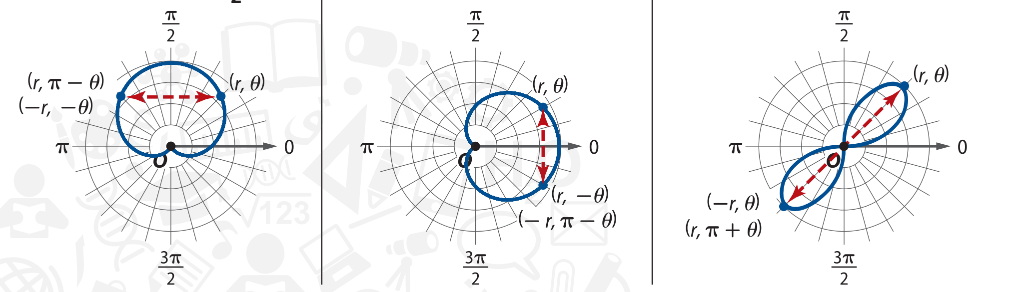
1A. $r = -\sin\theta$ **1B.** $r = 2\cos\theta$ **1C.** $r = \sec\theta$

Notice that as θ increases on $[0, 2\pi]$, each graph above is traced twice. This is because the polar coordinates obtained on $[0, \pi]$ represent the same points as those obtained on $[\pi, 2\pi]$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©Archives/Jason O. Watson/Alamy Images

Like knowing whether a graph in the rectangular coordinate system has symmetry with respect to the x-axis, y-axis, or origin, knowing whether the graph of a polar equation is symmetric can help reduce the number of points needed to sketch its graph. Graphs of polar equations can be symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, the polar axis, or the pole, as shown below.

KeyConcept Symmetry of Polar Graphs



The graphical definitions above provide a way of testing a polar equation for symmetry. For example, if replacing (r, θ) in a polar equation with $(r, -\theta)$ or $(-r, \pi - \theta)$ produces an equivalent equation, then its graph is symmetric with respect to the polar axis. If an equation passes one of the symmetry tests, this is sufficient to guarantee that the equation has that type of symmetry. The converse, however, is *not* true. If a polar equation fails all of these tests, the graph may still have symmetry.

Example 2 Polar Axis Symmetry

Use symmetry to graph $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$.

Replacing (r, θ) with $(r, -\theta)$ yields $r = 1 - 2\cos(-\theta)$. Because cosine is an even function, $\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$, so this equation simplifies to $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$. Because the replacement produced an equation equivalent to the original equation, the graph of this equation is symmetric with respect to the polar axis.

Because of this symmetry, you need only make a table of values to find the r-values corresponding to θ on the interval $[0, \pi]$.

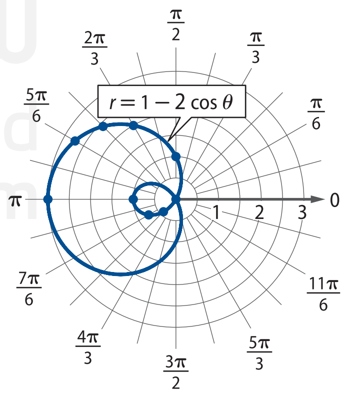
θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	π
$r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$	−1	−0.7	−0.4	0	1	2	2.4	2.7	3

StudyTip

Graphing Polar Equations It is customary to graph polar functions in radians, rather than in degrees.

Plotting these points and using polar axis symmetry, you obtain the graph shown.

The type of curve is called a **limaçon**. Some limaçons have inner loops like this one. Other limaçons come to a point, have a dimple, or just curve outward.



GuidedPractice

Use symmetry to graph each equation.

2A. $r = 1 - \cos\theta$

2B. $r = 2 + \cos\theta$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

In Examples 1 and 2, notice that the graphs of $r = \cos\theta$ and $r = 1 - 2\cos\theta$ are symmetric with respect to the polar axis, while the graph of $r = \sin\theta$ is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. These observations can be generalized as follows.

KeyConcept Quick Tests for Symmetry in Polar Graphs

Words The graph of a polar equation is symmetric with respect to

- the polar axis if it is a function of $\cos\theta$, and
- the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ if it is a function of $\sin\theta$.

Example The graph of $r = 3 + \sin\theta$ is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

You will justify these tests for specific cases in Exercises 65–66.

Symmetry can be used to graph polar functions that model real-world situations.

Real-WorldLink

Live Aid was a 1985 rock concert held in an effort to raise AED 3.6 million for Ethiopian aid. Concerts in London, Philadelphia, and other cities were televised and viewed by 1.9 billion people in 150 countries. The event raised AED 514 million.

Source: CNN

Real-World Example 3 Symmetry with Respect to the Line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$

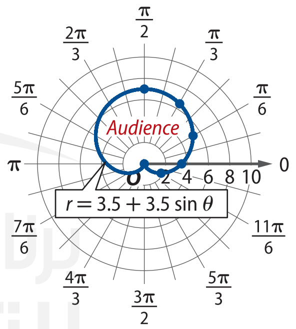
AUDIO TECHNOLOGY **During a concert, a directional microphone was placed facing the audience from the center of stage to capture the crowd noise for a live recording. The area of sound the microphone captures can be represented by $r = 3.5 + 3.5\sin\theta$. Suppose the front of the stage faces due north.**

a. Graph the polar pattern of the microphone.

Because this polar equation is a function of the sine function, it is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. Therefore, make a table and calculate the values of r on $\left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$.

θ	$-\frac{\pi}{2}$	$-\frac{\pi}{3}$	$-\frac{\pi}{4}$	$-\frac{\pi}{6}$	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$
$r = 3.5 + 3.5\sin\theta$	0	0.5	1.0	1.8	3.5	5.25	6.0	6.5	7

Plotting these points and using symmetry with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$, you obtain the graph shown. This type of curve is called a **cardioid** (CAR-dee-oid). A cardioid is a special limaçon that has a heart shape.



b. Describe what the polar pattern tells you about the microphone.

The polar pattern indicates that the microphone will pick up sounds up to 7 units away directly in front of the microphone and up to 3.5 units away directly to the left or right of the microphone.

WatchOut!

Graphing over the Period
Usually the period of the trigonometric function used in a polar equation is sufficient to trace the entire graph, but sometimes it is not. The best way to know if you have graphed enough to discern a pattern is to plot more points.

GuidedPractice

3. **VIDEOTAPING** A high school teacher is videotaping presentations performed by her students using a stationary video camera positioned in the back of the room. The area of sound captured by the camera's microphone can be represented by $r = 5 + 2\sin\theta$. Suppose the front of the classroom is due north of the camera.
   A. Graph the polar pattern of the microphone.
   B. Describe what the polar pattern tells you about the microphone.

برامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Imagestockdesign/Shutterstock.com

Previously, you used maximum and minimum points along with zeros to aid in graphing trigonometric functions. On the graph of a polar function, r is at its maximum for a value of θ when the distance between that point (r, θ) and the pole is maximized. To find the maximum point(s) on the graph of a polar equation, find the θ-values for which $|r|$ is maximized. Additionally, if $r = 0$ for some value of θ, you know that the graph intersects the pole.

Example 4 Symmetry, Zeros, and Maximum r-Values

Use symmetry, zeros, and maximum r-values to graph $r = 2 \cos 3\theta$.

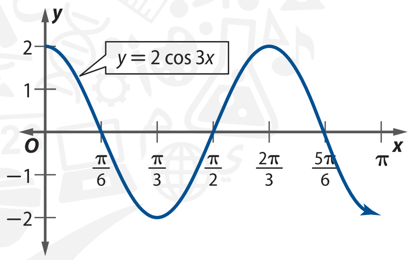
Determine the symmetry of the graph.

This function is symmetric with respect to the polar axis, so you can find points on the interval $[0, \pi]$ and then use polar axis symmetry to complete the graph.

Find the zeros and the maximum r-value.

Sketch the graph of the rectangular function $y = 2 \cos 3x$ on the interval $[0, \pi]$.

From the graph, you can see that $|y| = 2$ when $x = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}$, and π and $y = 0$ when $x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}$, and $\frac{5\pi}{6}$.



Interpreting these results in terms of the polar equation $r = 2 \cos 3\theta$, we can say that $|r|$ has a maximum value of 2 when $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}$, or π and $r = 0$ when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}$, or $\frac{5\pi}{6}$.

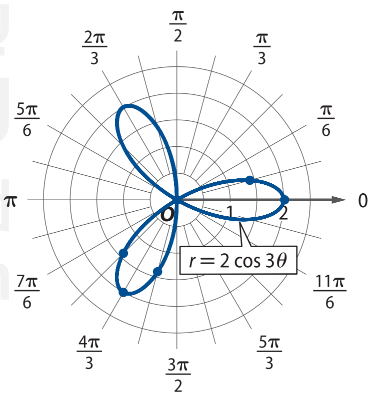
Graph the function.

Use these and a few additional points to sketch the graph of the function.

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{12}$	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{12}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{7\pi}{12}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	$\frac{11\pi}{12}$	π
$r = 2 \cos 3\theta$	2	1.4	0	−1	−2	−1.4	0	1.4	2	1.4	0	−1.4	−2

Notice that polar axis symmetry can be used to complete the graph after plotting points on $\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$.

This type of curve is called a **rose**. Roses can have three or more equal loops.



StudyTip

Alternative Method Solving the rectangular function $y = 2 \cos 3x$, we find that the function has extrema when $x = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}$, or π. Similarly, the function has zeros when $x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}$, or $\frac{5\pi}{6}$.

GuidedPractice

Use symmetry, zeros, and maximum r-values to graph each function.

4A. $r = 3 \sin 2\theta$

4B. $r = \cos 5\theta$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

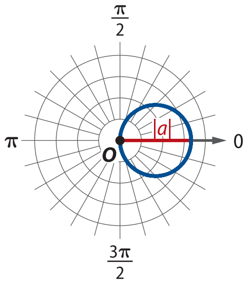
2 Classic Polar Curves

Circles, limaçons, cardioids, and roses are examples of classic curves. The forms and model graphs of these and other classic curves are summarized below.

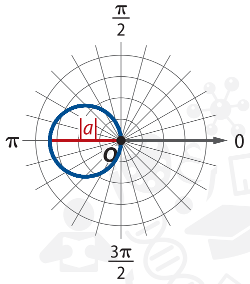
ConceptSummary Special Types of Polar Graphs

Circles

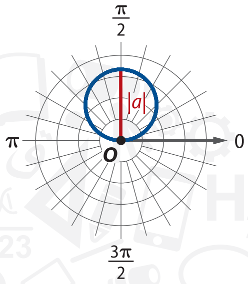
$r = a\cos\theta$ or $r = a\sin\theta$



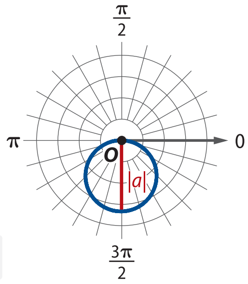
$a > 0$
$r = a\cos\theta$



$a < 0$
$r = a\cos\theta$



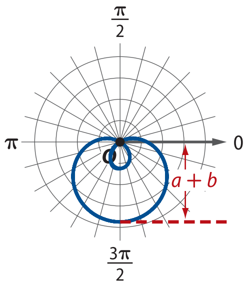
$a > 0$
$r = a\sin\theta$



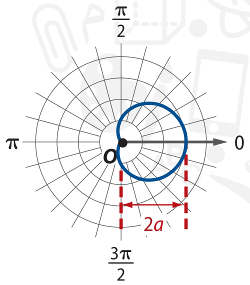
$a < 0$
$r = a\sin\theta$

Limaçons

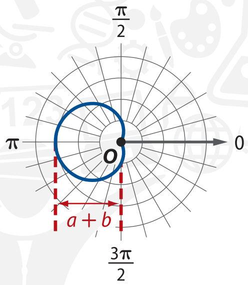
$r = a \pm b\cos\theta$ or $r = a \pm b\sin\theta$, where a and b are both positive



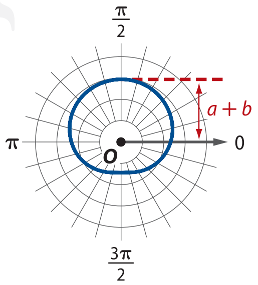
Limaçon with inner loop
$a < b$
$r = a - b\sin\theta$



Cardioid
$a = b$
$r = a + b\cos\theta$



Dimpled limaçon
$b < a < 2b$
$r = a - b\cos\theta$

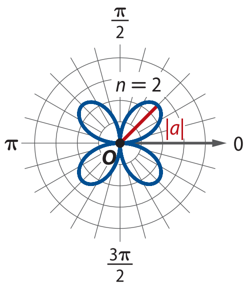


Convex limaçon
$a \geq 2b$
$r = a + b\sin\theta$

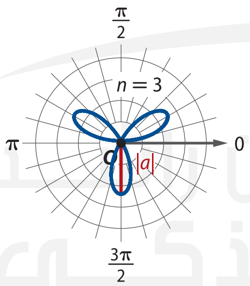
Roses

$r = a\cos n\theta$ or $r = a\sin n\theta$, where $n \geq 2$ is an integer

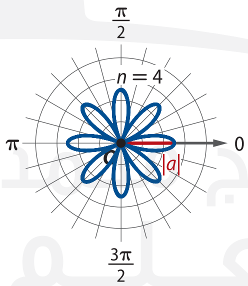
The rose has n petals if n is odd and $2n$ petals if n is even.



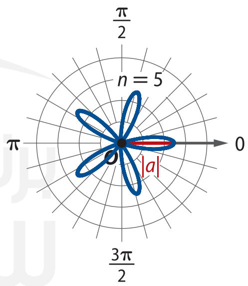
$r = a\sin n\theta$



$r = a\sin n\theta$



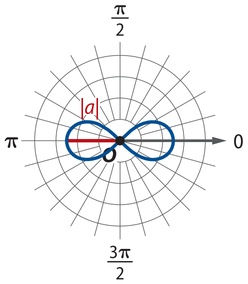
$r = a\cos n\theta$



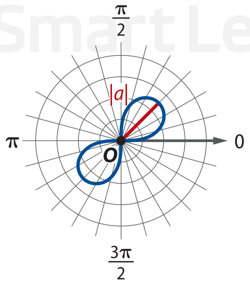
$r = a\cos n\theta$

Lemniscates (LEM-nis-keyts)

$r^2 = a^2\cos 2\theta$ or $r^2 = a^2\sin 2\theta$



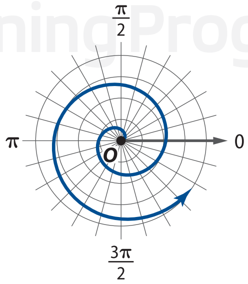
$r^2 = a^2\cos 2\theta$



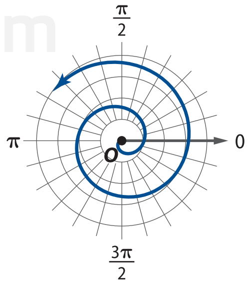
$r^2 = a^2\sin 2\theta$

Spirals of Archimedes (ahr-kuh-MEE-deez)

$r = a\theta + b$



$\theta > 0, r = a\theta + b$



$\theta < 0, r = a\theta + b$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Example 5 Identify and Graph Classic Curves

Identify the type of curve given by each equation. Then use symmetry, zeros, and maximum *r*-values to graph the function.

a. $r^2 = 16 \sin 2\theta$

Type of Curve and Symmetry

The equation is of the form $r^2 = a^2 \sin 2\theta$, so its graph is a lemniscate. Replacing (r, θ) with $(-r, \theta)$ yields $(-r)^2 = 16 \sin 2\theta$ or $r^2 = 16 \sin 2\theta$. Therefore, the function has symmetry with respect to the pole.

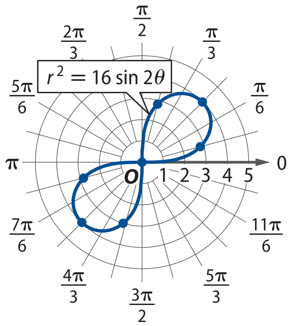
Maximum *r*-Value and Zeros

The equation $r^2 = 16 \sin 2\theta$ is equivalent to $r = \pm 4\sqrt{\sin 2\theta}$, which is undefined when $\sin 2\theta < 0$. Therefore, the domain of the function is restricted to the intervals $\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ or $\left[\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right]$. Because you can use pole symmetry, you need only graph points in the interval $\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$. The function attains a maximum *r*-value of $|a|$ or 4 when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ and zero *r*-value when $x = 0$ and $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

Graph

Use these points and the indicated symmetry to sketch the graph of the function.

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{12}$	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{5\pi}{12}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$
r	0	±2.8	±3.7	±4	±3.7	±2.8	0



b. $r = 3\theta$

Type of Curve and Symmetry

The equation is of the form $r = a\theta + b$, so its graph is a spiral of Archimedes. Replacing (r, θ) with $(-r, -\theta)$ yields $(-r) = 3(-\theta)$ or $r = 3\theta$. Therefore, the function has symmetry with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

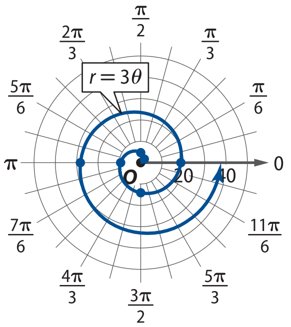
Maximum *r*-Value and Zeros

Spirals are unbounded. Therefore, the function has no maximum *r*-values and only one zero when $\theta = 0$.

Graph

Use points on the interval $[0, 4\pi]$ to sketch the graph of the function. To show symmetry, points on the interval $[-4\pi, 0]$ should also be graphed.

θ	0	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	π	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	2π	3π	4π
r	0	2.4	4.7	9.4	14.1	18.8	28.3	37.7



Technology Tip

Window Settings θmin and θmax determine the values of θ that will be graphed. Normal settings for these are θmin=0 and θmax=2π, although it may be necessary to change these values to obtain a complete graph. θstep determines the interval for plotting points. The smaller this value is, the smoother the look of the graph.

Guided Practice

5A. $r^2 = 9 \cos 2\theta$

5B. $r = 3 \sin 5\theta$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Graph each equation by plotting points. (Example 1)

1. $r = -\cos\theta$
2. $r = \csc\theta$
3. $r = \frac{1}{2}\cos\theta$
4. $r = 3\sin\theta$
5. $r = -\sec\theta$
6. $r = \frac{1}{3}\sin\theta$
7. $r = -4\cos\theta$
8. $r = -\csc\theta$

Use symmetry to graph each equation. (Examples 2 and 3)

9. $r = 3 + 3\cos\theta$
10. $r = 1 + 2\sin\theta$
11. $r = 4 - 3\cos\theta$
12. $r = 2 + 4\cos\theta$
13. $r = 2 - 2\sin\theta$
14. $r = 3 - 5\cos\theta$
15. $r = 5 + 4\sin\theta$
16. $r = 6 - 2\sin\theta$

Use symmetry, zeros, and maximum *r*-values to graph each function. (Example 4)

17. $r = \sin 4\theta$
18. $r = 2\cos 2\theta$
19. $r = 5\cos 3\theta$
20. $r = 3\sin 2\theta$
21. $r = \frac{1}{2}\sin 3\theta$
22. $r = 4\cos 5\theta$
23. $r = 2\sin 5\theta$
24. $r = 3\cos 4\theta$

25. **MARINE BIOLOGY** Rose curves can be observed in marine wildlife. Determine the symmetry, zeros, and maximum r-values of each function modeling a marine species for $0 \le \theta \le \pi$. Then use the information to graph the function. (Example 4)
   a. The pores forming the petal pattern of a sand dollar (Figure 8.2.3) can be modeled by $r = 3\cos 5\theta$.
   b. The outline of the body of a crown-of-thorns sea star (Figure 8.2.4) can be modeled by $r = 20\cos 8\theta$.

Figure 8.2.3

Figure 8.2.4

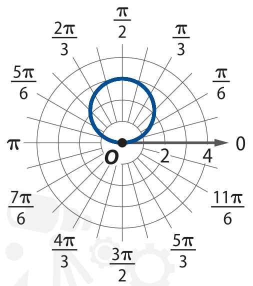
Identify the type of curve given by each equation. Then use symmetry, zeros, and maximum *r*-values to graph the function. (Example 5)

26. $r = \frac{1}{3}\cos\theta$
27. $r = 4\theta + 1;\ \theta > 0$
28. $r = 2\sin 4\theta$
29. $r = 6 + 6\cos\theta$
30. $r^2 = 4\cos 2\theta$
31. $r = 5\theta + 2;\ \theta > 0$
32. $r = 3 - 2\sin\theta$
33. $r^2 = 9\sin 2\theta$

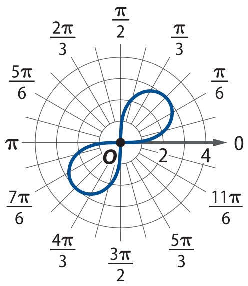
34. **FIGURE SKATING** The original focus of figure skating was to carve figures, known as *compulsory figures,* into the ice. The shape of one of these figures can be modeled by $r^2 = 25\cos 2\theta$. (Example 5)
   a. Which classic curve does the figure model?
   b. Graph the model.

Write an equation for each graph.

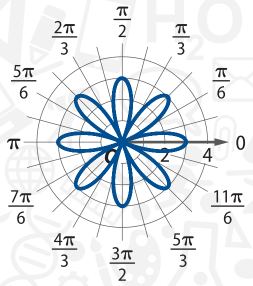
35.



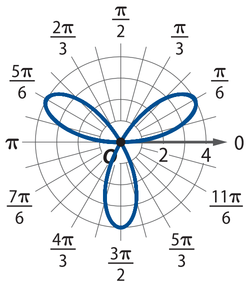
36.



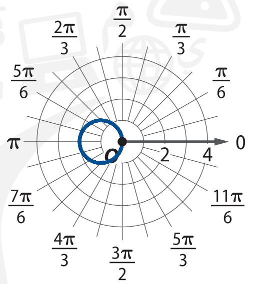
37.



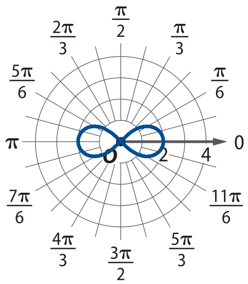
38.



39.



40.



41. **FAN** A ceiling fan has a central motor with five blades that each extend 4 units from the center. The shape of the fan can be represented by a rose curve.
   a. Write two polar equations that can be used to represent the fan.
   b. Sketch two graphs of the fan using the equations that you wrote.

Use one of the three tests to prove the specified symmetry.

42. $r = 3 + \sin\theta$, symmetric about the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$
43. $r^2 = 4\sin 2\theta$, symmetric about the pole
44. $r = 3\sin 2\theta$, symmetric about the polar axis
45. $r = 5\cos 8\theta$, symmetric about the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$
46. $r = 2\sin 4\theta$, symmetric about the pole

47. **FOUR-LEAF CLOVER** The shape of a certain type of clover can be represented using a rose curve. Write a polar equation for the clover if it has:
   a. 5 petals with a length of 2 units each.
   b. 4 petals with a length of 7 units each.
   c. 8 petals with a length of 6 units each.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education (l)Kevin Schafer/Getty Images; (r)DAL/Fabrice Bettex/Alamy Images

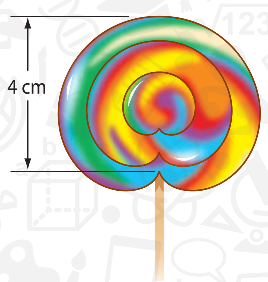
48. **CONCERT** For a concert, a circular stage is constructed and placed in the center so fans can completely surround the musicians. To record the sound of the crowd, two directional microphones are placed next to each other on the stage, one facing due east and the other facing due west. The patterns of the microphones can be represented by the polar equations $r = 2.5 + 2.5 \cos \theta$ and $r = -2.5 - 2.5 \cos \theta$.

a. Identify the type of curve given by each polar equation.

b. Sketch the graph of each microphone pattern on the same polar grid.

c. Describe what the graph tells you about the area covered by the microphones.

49. **CANDY** Write an equation that can model this lollipop in the shape of a limaçon if it is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$ and measures 4 centimeters from the top of the lollipop to where the candy meets the stick.



Match each equation with its graph.

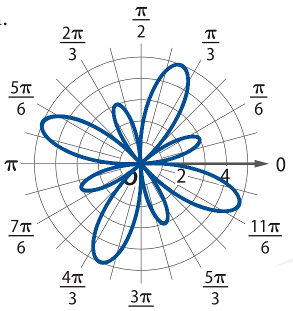
50. $r = 1 + 4 \cos 3\theta$

51. $r = 1 - 4 \sin 4\theta$

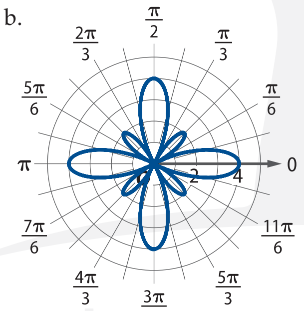
52. $r = 1 - 3 \sin 3\theta$

53. $r = 1 + 3 \cos 4\theta$

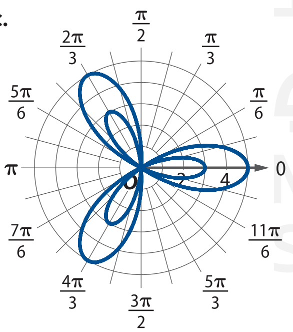
a.



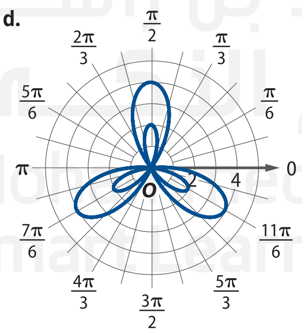
b.



c.



d.



Find x for the interval $0 \leq \theta \leq x$ so that x is a minimum and the graph is complete.

54. $r = 3 + 2 \cos \theta$

55 $r = 2 - \sin 2\theta$

56. $r = 1 + \cos \frac{\theta}{3}$

Match each equation with an equation that produces an equivalent graph.

57. $r = 5 + 4 \cos \theta$

58. $r = -5 + 4 \sin \theta$

59. $r = 5 - 4 \sin \theta$

60. $r = -5 - 4 \cos \theta$

a. $r = 5 + 4 \sin \theta$

b. $r = -5 + 4 \cos \theta$

c. $r = 5 - 4 \cos \theta$

d. $r = -5 - 4 \sin \theta$

61. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** In this problem, you will investigate a spiral of Archimedes.

a. **GRAPHICAL** Sketch separate graphs of $r = \theta$ for the intervals $0 \leq \theta \leq 3\pi$, $-3\pi \leq \theta \leq 0$, and $-3\pi \leq \theta \leq 3\pi$.

b. **VERBAL** Make a conjecture as to the symmetry of $r = \theta$. Explain your reasoning.

c. **ANALYTICAL** Prove your conjecture from part **b** by using one of the symmetry tests discussed in this lesson.

d. **VERBAL** How does changing the interval for θ affect the other classic curves? How does this differ from how the interval affects a spiral of Archimedes? Explain your reasoning.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

62. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Halima and Eiman are graphing polar equations. Eiman says that $r = 7 \sin 2\theta$ is not a function because it does not pass the vertical line test. Halima says the vertical line test does not apply in a polar grid. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

63. **REASONING** Sketch the graphs of $r_1 = \cos \theta$, $r_2 = \cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$, and $r_3 = \cos(\theta - \pi)$ on the same polar grid. Describe the relationship between the three graphs. Make a conjecture as to the change in a graph when a value d is subtracted from θ.

64. **CHALLENGE** Solve the following system of polar equations algebraically on $[0, 2\pi]$. Graph the system and compare the points of intersection with the solutions that you found. Explain any discrepancies.

$r = 1 + 2 \sin \theta$

$r = 4 \sin \theta$

65. **PROOF** Prove that the graph of $r = a + b \cos 2\theta$ is symmetric with respect to the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

66. **PROOF** Prove that the graph of $r = a \sin 2\theta$ is symmetric with respect to the polar axis.

67. **WRITING IN MATH** Describe the effect of a in the graph of $r = a \cos \theta$.

68. **OPEN ENDED** Sketch the graph of a rose with 8 petals. Then write the equation for your graph.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Graph each polar equation. (Lesson 8-1)

69. $r = 3.5$

70. $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{3}$

71. $\theta = 225°$

Find the angle θ between vectors u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree.

72. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 4, -3, 5\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 2, 6, -8\rangle$

73. $\mathbf{u} = 2\mathbf{i} - 4\mathbf{j} + 7\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{v} = 5\mathbf{i} + 6\mathbf{j} - 11\mathbf{k}$

74. $\mathbf{u} = \langle -1, 1, 5\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 7, -6, 9\rangle$

Let $\overrightarrow{DE}$ be the vector with the given initial and terminal points. Write $\overrightarrow{DE}$ as a linear combinatioån of the vectors i and j.

75. $D\left(-5, \frac{2}{3}\right), E\left(-\frac{4}{5}, 0\right)$

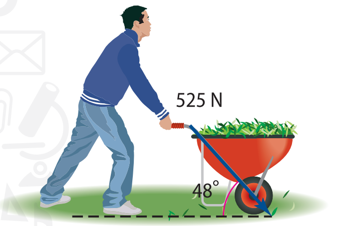
76. $D\left(-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{4}{7}\right), E\left(-\frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{7}\right)$

77. $D(9.7, -2.4), E(-6.1, -8.5)$

78. **YARDWORK** Ahmed is pushing a wheelbarrow full of leaves with a force of 525 newtons at a 48° angle with the ground.

a. Draw a diagram that shows the resolution of the force that Kyle is exerting into its rectangular components.

b. Find the magnitudes of the horizontal and vertical components of the force.



Graph the hyperbola given by each equation.

79. $\frac{x^2}{9} - \frac{y^2}{25} = 1$

80. $\frac{(y-4)^2}{16} - \frac{(x+2)^2}{9} = 1$

81. $\frac{(x+1)^2}{4} - \frac{(y+3)^2}{9} = 1$

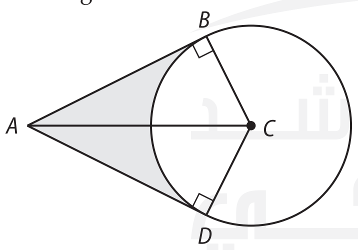
Write an equation for and graph each parabola with focus F and the given characteristics.

82. $F(-5, 8)$; opens right; contains $(-5, 12)$

83. $F(-1, -5)$; opens left; contains $(-1, 5)$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

84. **SAT/ACT** In the figure, C is the center of the circle, $AC = 12$, and $m\angle BAD = 60°$. What is the perimeter of the shaded region?



A $12 + 3\pi$

B $6\sqrt{3} + 4\pi$

C $6\sqrt{3} + 3\pi$

D $12\sqrt{3} + 3\pi$

E $12\sqrt{3} + 4\pi$

85. **REVIEW** While mapping a level site, a surveyor identifies a landmark 450 meters away and 30° left of center and another landmark 600 meters away and 50° right of center. What is the approximate distance between the two landmarks?

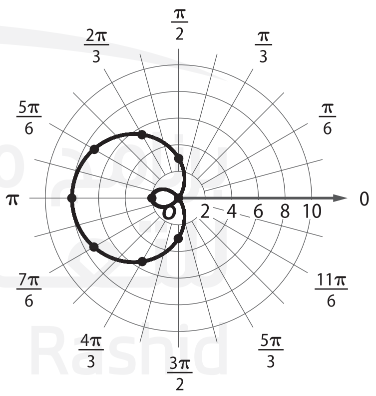
F 672 meters

G 685 meters

H 691 meters

J 703 meters

86. Which type of curve does the figure represent?



A lemniscate

B limaçon

C rose

D cardioid

87. **REVIEW** An air traffic controller is tracking two jets at the same altitude. The coordinates of the jets are (5, 310°) and (6, 345°), with r measured in kilometers. What is the approximate distance between the jets?

F 2.97 kilometers

G 3.25 kilometers

H 3.44 kilometers

J 3.71 kilometers

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

LESSON 8-3 Polar and Rectangular Forms of Equations

Then

- You used a polar coordinate system to graph points and equations. (Lessons 9-1 and 9-2)

Now

1. Convert between polar and rectangular coordinates.
2. Convert between polar and rectangular equations.

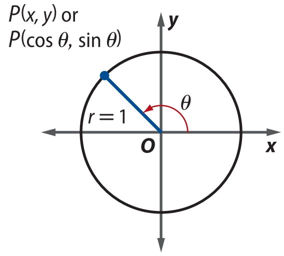
Why?

- An ultrasonic sensor attached to a robot emits an outward beam that rotates through a full circle. The sensor receives a return signal when the beam intercepts an object, and it calculates the position of the object in terms of its distance r and the angle measure θ relative to the front of the robot. The sensor relays these polar coordinates to the robot, which converts them to rectangular coordinates so it can plot the object on an internal map.

1 Polar and Rectangular Coordinates

Recall from Chapter 4 that the coordinates of a point $P(x, y)$ corresponding to an angle θ on a unit circle with radius 1 can be written in terms of θ as $P(\cos\theta, \sin\theta)$ because

$$\cos\theta = \frac{x}{r} = \frac{x}{1} \text{ or } x \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sin\theta = \frac{y}{r} = \frac{y}{1} \text{ or } y.$$



If we let r take on any real value, we can write a point $P(x, y)$ in terms of both r and θ.

$$\cos\theta = \frac{x}{r} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \sin\theta = \frac{y}{r}$$

$$r\cos\theta = x \qquad\qquad r\sin\theta = y \qquad \text{Multiply each side by } r.$$

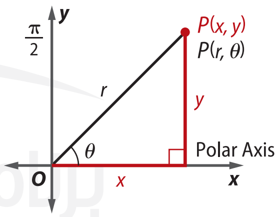
If we let the polar axis and pole in the polar coordinate system coincide with the positive x-axis and origin in the rectangular coordinate system, respectively, we now have a means of converting polar coordinates to rectangular coordinates.

KeyConcept Convert Polar to Rectangular Coordinates

If a point P has polar coordinates (r, θ), then the rectangular coordinates (x, y) of P are given by

$$x = r\cos\theta \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = r\sin\theta.$$

That is, $(x, y) = (r\cos\theta, r\sin\theta)$.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

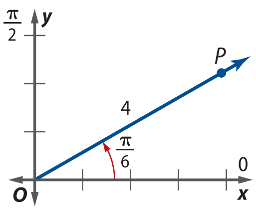
Example 1 Polar Coordinates to Rectangular Coordinates

Find the rectangular coordinates for each point with the given polar coordinates.

a. $P\left(4, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

For $P\left(4, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$, $r = 4$ and $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$.

$x = r\cos\theta$	Conversion formula	$y = r\sin\theta$
$= 4\cos\frac{\pi}{6}$	$r = 4$ and $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$	$= 4\sin\frac{\pi}{6}$
$= 4\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$	Simplify.	$= 4\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$
$= 2\sqrt{3}$		$= 2$



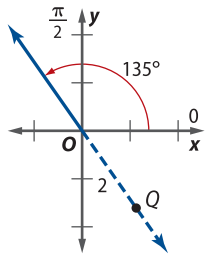
The rectangular coordinates of P are $(2\sqrt{3}, 2)$ or approximately $(3.46, 2)$ as shown.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education catwalker/Shutterstock.com

b. $Q(-2, 135°)$

For $Q(-2, 135°)$, $r = -2$ and $\theta = 135°$.

$x = r \cos \theta$	Conversion formula	$y = r \sin \theta$
$= -2 \cos 135°$	$r = -2$ and $\theta = 135°$	$= -2 \sin 135°$
$= -2\left(-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$	Simplify.	$= -2\left(\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\right)$
$= \sqrt{2}$		$= -\sqrt{2}$

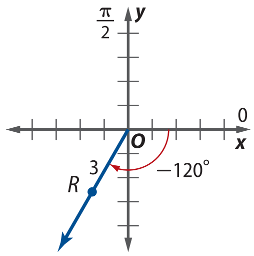


The rectangular coordinates of Q are $(\sqrt{2}, -\sqrt{2})$ or approximately $(1.41, -1.41)$ as shown.

c. $V(3, -120°)$

For $V(3, -120°)$, $r = 3$ and $\theta = -120°$.

$x = r \cos \theta$	Conversion formula	$y = r \sin \theta$
$= 3 \cos -120°$	$r = 3$ and $\theta = -120°$	$= 3 \sin -120°$
$= 3\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)$	Simplify.	$= 3\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$
$= -\frac{3}{2}$		$= -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}$



The rectangular coordinates of V are $\left(-\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ or approximately $(-1.5, -2.6)$ as shown.

GuidedPractice

1A. $R(-6, -120°)$ **1B.** $S\left(5, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ **1C.** $T(-3, 45°)$

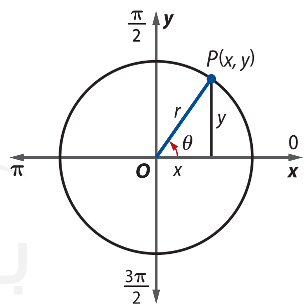
> **StudyTip**
> **Coordinate Conversions** The process for converting rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates is the same as the process used to determine the magnitude and direction of vectors.

To write a pair of rectangular coordinates in polar form, you need to find the distance r a point (x, y) is from the origin or pole and the angle measure θ that point is from the x- or polar axis.

To find the distance r from the point (x, y) to the origin, use the Pythagorean Theorem.

$r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ Pythagorean Theorem

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ Take the positive square root of each side.

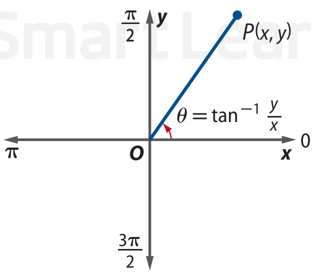


The angle θ is related to x and y by the tangent function.

$\tan \theta = \frac{y}{x}$ Tangent Ratio

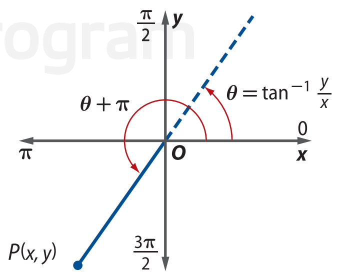
$\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$ Definition of inverse tangent function

Recall that the inverse tangent function is only defined on the interval $\left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ or $[-90°, 90°]$. In the rectangular coordinate system, this refers to θ-values in Quadrants I and IV or when $x > 0$, as shown in Figure 8.3.1. If a point is located in Quadrant II or III, which is when $x < 0$, you must add π or 180° to the angle measure given by the inverse tangent function, as shown in Figure 8.3.2.



When $x > 0$, $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$.

Figure 8.3.1



When $x < 0$, $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x} + \pi$ or $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x} + 180°$.

Figure 8.3.2

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

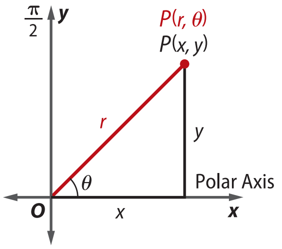
KeyConcept Convert Rectangular to Polar Coordinates

If a point P has rectangular coordinates (x, y) then the polar coordinates (r, θ) of P are given by

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}, \text{ when } x > 0$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} + \pi \text{ or}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} + 180°, \text{ when } x < 0.$$



Recall that polar coordinates are not unique. The conversion from rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates results in just *one* representation of the polar coordinates. There are, however, infinitely many polar representations for a point given in rectangular form.

TechnologyTip

Coordinate Conversions

To convert rectangular coordinates to polar coordinates using a calculator, press [2nd] [APPS] to view the ANGLE menu. Select R▶Pr(and enter the coordinates. This will calculate the value of r. To calculate θ, repeat this process but select R▶Pθ).

Example 2 Rectangular Coordinates to Polar Coordinates

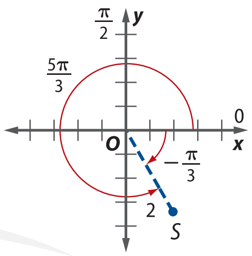
Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates.

a. $S(1, -\sqrt{3})$

For $S(x, y) = (1, -\sqrt{3})$, $x = 1$ and $y = -\sqrt{3}$. Because $x > 0$, use $\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$ to find θ.

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$	Conversion formula	$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x}$	
$= \sqrt{1^2 + (-\sqrt{3})^2}$	$x = 1$ and $y = -\sqrt{3}$	$= \tan^{-1}\frac{-\sqrt{3}}{1}$	
$= \sqrt{4}$ or 2	Simplify.	$= -\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$	

One set of polar coordinate for S is $\left(2, -\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$. Another representation that uses a positive θ-value is $\left(2, -\frac{\pi}{3} + 2\pi\right)$ or $\left(2, \frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$, as shown.



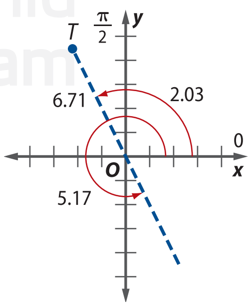
b. $T(-3, 6)$

For $T(x, y) = (-3, 6)$, $x = -3$ and $y = 6$.

Because $x < 0$, use $\tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} + \pi$ to find θ.

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$	Conversion formula	$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{y}{x} + \pi$
$= \sqrt{(-3)^2 + 6^2}$	$x = -3$ and $y = 6$	$= \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{6}{3}\right) + \pi$
$= \sqrt{45}$ or about 6.71	Simplify.	$= \tan^{-1}(-2) + \pi$ or about 2.03

One set of polar coordinates for T is approximately $(6.71, 2.03)$. Another representation that uses a negative r-value is $(-6.71, 2.03 + \pi)$ or $(-6.71, 5.17)$, as shown.



GuidedPractice

Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates. Round to the nearest hundredth, if necessary.

2A. $V(8, 10)$

2B. $W(-9, -4)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

For some real-world phenomena, it is useful to be able to convert between polar coordinates and rectangular coordinates.

Real-World Example 3 Conversion of Coordinates

ROBOTICS Refer to the beginning of the lesson. Suppose the robot is facing due east and its sensor detects an object at (5, 295°).

a. What are the rectangular coordinates that the robot will need to calculate?

$x = r \cos \theta$	Conversion formula	$y = r \sin \theta$
$= 5 \cos 295°$	$r = 5$ and $\theta = 295°$	$= 5 \sin 295°$
≈ 2.11	Simplify.	≈ -4.53

The object is located at the rectangular coordinates (2.11, −4.53).

b. If a previously detected object has rectangular coordinates of (3, 7), what are the distance and angle measure of the object relative to the front of the robot?

$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$	Conversion formula	$\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$
$= \sqrt{3^2 + 7^2}$	$x = 3$ and $y = 7$	$= \tan^{-1} \frac{7}{3}$
≈ 7.62	Simplify.	$\approx 66.8°$

The object is located at the polar coordinates (7.62, 66.8°).

Real-WorldLink

NASA's Special Purpose Dexterous Manipulator, or Dextre, is a 1542-kilogram robot that stands 3.7 meters tall with an arm span of 3.4 meter. Dextre is responsible for performing jobs in space that previously required astronauts.

Source: *The New York Times*

GuidedPractice

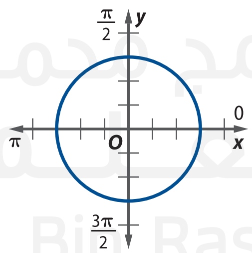
3. **FISHING** A fish finder is a type of radar that is used to locate fish under water. Suppose a boat is facing due east, and a fish finder gives the polar coordinates of a school of fish as (6, 125°).
   A. What are the rectangular coordinates for the school of fish?
   B. If a previously detected school of fish had rectangular coordinates of (−2, 6), what are the distance and angle measure of the school relative to the front of the boat?

2 Polar and Rectangular Equations

In calculus, you will sometimes need to convert from the rectangular form of an equation to its polar form and vice versa to facilitate some calculations. Some complicated rectangular equations have much simpler polar equations. Consider the rectangular and polar equations of the circle graphed below.

Rectangular Equation

$x^2 + y^2 = 9$



Polar Equation

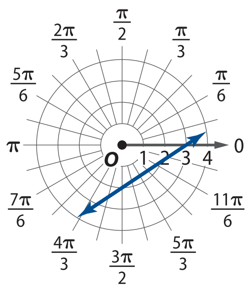
$r = 3$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Likewise, some polar equations have much simpler rectangular equations, such as the line graphed below.

Polar Equation

$r = \dfrac{6}{2 \cos \theta - 3 \sin \theta}$



Rectangular Equation

$2x - 3y = 6$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Fotosearch/age fotostock

The conversion of a rectangular equation to a polar equation is fairly straightforward. Replace x with $r \cos \theta$ and y with $r \sin \theta$, and then simplify the resulting equation using algebraic manipulations and trigonometric identities.

Example 4 Rectangular Equations to Polar Equations

Identify the graph of each rectangular equation. Then write the equation in polar form. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

a. $(x-4)^2 + y^2 = 16$

The graph of $(x-4)^2 + y^2 = 16$ is a circle with radius 4 centered at (4, 0). To find the polar form of this equation, replace x with $r \cos \theta$ and y with $r \sin \theta$. Then simplify.

$$\begin{aligned}
(x-4)^2 + y^2 &= 16 && \text{Original equation}\\
(r\cos\theta - 4)^2 + (r\sin\theta)^2 &= 16 && x = r\cos\theta \text{ and } y = r\sin\theta\\
r^2\cos^2\theta - 8r\cos\theta + 16 + r^2\sin^2\theta &= 16 && \text{Multiply.}\\
r^2\cos^2\theta - 8r\cos\theta + r^2\sin^2\theta &= 0 && \text{Subtract 16 from each side.}\\
r^2\cos^2\theta + r^2\sin^2\theta &= 8r\cos\theta && \text{Isolate the squared terms.}\\
r^2(\cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta) &= 8r\cos\theta && \text{Factor.}\\
r^2(1) &= 8r\cos\theta && \text{Pythagorean Identity}\\
r &= 8\cos\theta && \text{Divide each side by } r.
\end{aligned}$$

The graph of this polar equation (Figure 8.3.3) is a circle with radius 4 centered at (4, 0).

StudyTip

Trigonometric Identities You will find it helpful to review trigonometric identities you to help you simplify the polar forms of rectangular equations. A summary of these identities is found inside the back cover of this text.

b. $y = x^2$

The graph of $y = x^2$ is a parabola with vertex at the origin that opens up.

$$\begin{aligned}
y &= x^2 && \text{Original equation}\\
r\sin\theta &= (r\cos\theta)^2 && x = r\cos\theta \text{ and } y = r\sin\theta\\
r\sin\theta &= r^2\cos^2\theta && \text{Multiply.}\\
\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos^2\theta} &= r && \text{Divide each side by } r\cos^2\theta.\\
\frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}\cdot\frac{1}{\cos\theta} &= r && \text{Rewrite.}\\
\tan\theta\sec\theta &= r && \text{Quotient and Reciprocal Identities}
\end{aligned}$$

The graph of the polar equation $r = \tan\theta\sec\theta$ (Figure 8.3.4) is a parabola with vertex at the pole that opens up.

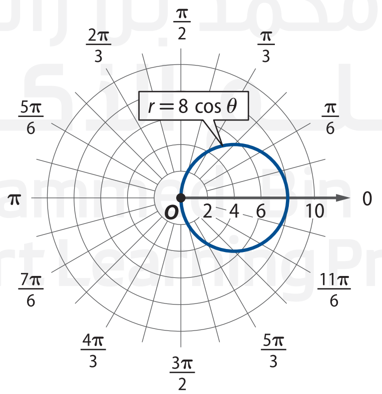


Figure 8.3.3

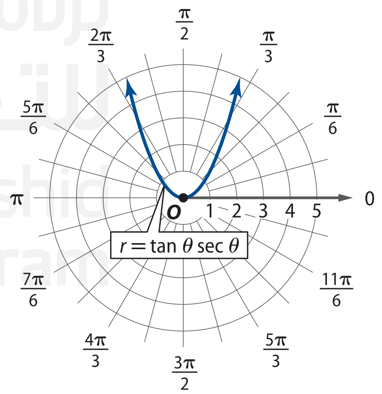


Figure 8.3.4

GuidedPractice

4A. $x^2 + (y-3)^2 = 9$

4B. $x^2 - y^2 = 1$

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

To write a polar equation in rectangular form, you also make use of the relationships $r^2 = x^2 + y^2$, $x = r\cos\theta$, and $y = r\sin\theta$, as well as the relationship $\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$. The process, however, is not as straightforward as converting from rectangular to polar form.

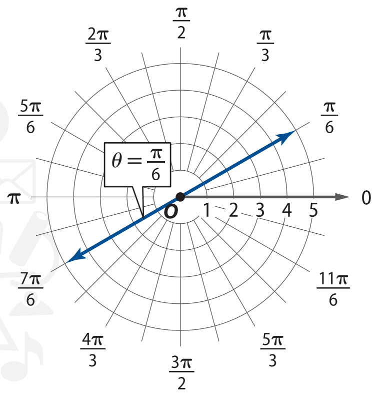
Example 5 Polar Equations to Rectangular Equations

Write each equation in rectangular form, and then identify its graph. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

a. $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$

$\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$	Original equation
$\tan\theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$	Find the tangent of each side.
$\frac{y}{x} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$	$\tan\theta = \frac{y}{x}$
$y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x$	Multiply each side by x.

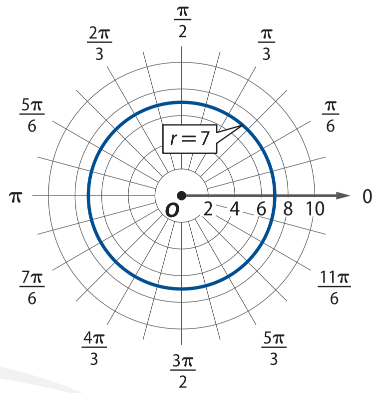
The graph of this equation is a line through the origin with slope $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ or about $\frac{2}{3}$, as supported by the graph of $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ shown.



b. $r = 7$

$r = 7$	Original equation
$r^2 = 49$	Square each side.
$x^2 + y^2 = 49$	$r^2 = x^2 + y^2$

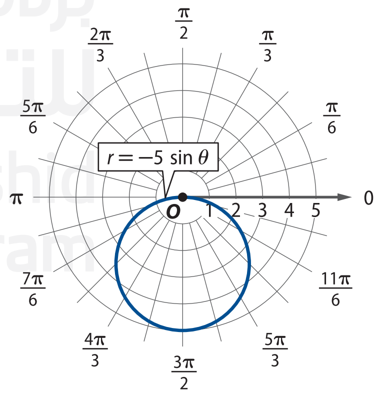
The graph of this rectangular equation is a circle with center at the origin and radius 7, supported by the graph of $r = 7$ shown.



c. $r = -5\sin\theta$

$r = -5\sin\theta$	Original equation
$r^2 = -5r\sin\theta$	Multiply each side by r.
$x^2 + y^2 = -5y$	$r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ and $y = r\sin\theta$
$x^2 + y^2 + 5y = 0$	Add $5y$ to each side.

Because in standard form, $x^2 + (y + 2.5)^2 = 6.25$, you can identify the graph of this equation as a circle centered at $(0, -2.5)$ with radius 2.5, as supported by the graph of $r = -5\sin\theta$.



StudyTip

Alternative Method Two points on the line $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$ are $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ and $\left(4, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$. In rectangular form, these points are $(\sqrt{3}, 1)$ and $(2\sqrt{3}, 2)$. The equation of the line through these points is $y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}x$.

StudyTip

Converting to Rectangular Form Other useful substitutions are variations of the equations $x = r\cos\theta$ and $y = r\sin\theta$, such as $r = \frac{x}{\cos\theta}$ and $r = \frac{y}{\sin\theta}$.

GuidedPractice

5A. $r = -3$ **5B.** $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$ **5C.** $r = 3\cos\theta$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Find the rectangular coordinates for each point with the given polar coordinates. Round to the nearest hundredth, if necessary. (Example 1)

1. $\left(2, \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

2. $\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

3. $(5, 240°)$

4. $(2.5, 250°)$

5. $\left(-2, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

6. $(-13, -70°)$

7. $\left(3, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

8. $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$

9. $(-2, 270°)$

10. $(4, 210°)$

11. $\left(-1, -\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

12. $\left(5, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates if $0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$. Round to the nearest hundredth, if necessary. (Example 2)

13. $(7, 10)$

14. $(-13, 4)$

15. $(-6, -12)$

16. $(4, -12)$

17. $(2, -3)$

18. $(0, -173)$

19. $(a, 3a)$, $a > 0$

20. $(-14, 14)$

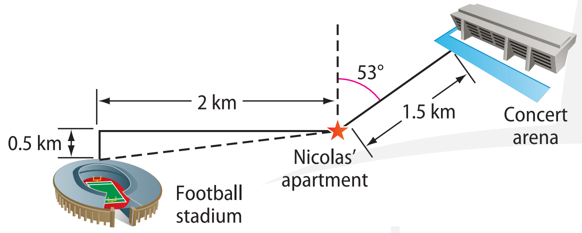
21. $(52, -31)$

22. $(3b, -4b)$, $b > 0$

23. $(1, -1)$

24. $(2, \sqrt{2})$

25. **DISTANCE** Standing on top of his apartment building, Nicolas determines that a concert arena is 53° east of north. Suppose the arena is exactly 1.5 kilometers from Nicolas' apartment. (Example 3)



a. How many kilometers north and east will Nicolas have to travel to reach the arena?

b. If a football stadium is 2 kilometers west and 0.5 kilometers south of Nicolas' apartment, what are the polar coordinates of the stadium if Nicolas' apartment is at the pole?

Identify the graph of each rectangular equation. Then write the equation in polar form. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation. (Example 4)

26. $x = -2$

27. $(x + 5)^2 + y^2 = 25$

28. $y = -3$

29. $x = y^2$

30. $(x - 2)^2 + y^2 = 4$

31. $(x - 1)^2 - y^2 = 1$

32. $x^2 + (y + 3)^2 = 9$

33. $y = \sqrt{3}x$

34. $x^2 + (y + 1)^2 = 1$

35. $x^2 + (y - 8)^2 = 64$

Write each equation in rectangular form, and then identify its graph. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation. (Example 5)

36. $r = 3 \sin \theta$

37. $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{3}$

38. $r = 10$

39. $r = 4 \cos \theta$

40. $\tan \theta = 4$

41. $r = 8 \csc \theta$

42. $r = -4$

43. $\cot \theta = -7$

44. $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{4}$

45. $r = \sec \theta$

46. **EARTHQUAKE** An equation to model the seismic waves of an earthquake is $r = 12.6 \sin \theta$, where r is measured in kilometers. (Example 5)

a. Graph the polar pattern of the earthquake.

b. Write an equation in rectangular form to model the seismic waves.

c. Find the rectangular coordinates of the epicenter of the earthquake, and describe the area that is affected by the earthquake.

47 **MICROPHONE** The polar pattern for a directional microphone at a football game is given by $r = 2 + 2 \cos \theta$. (Example 5)

a. Graph the polar pattern.

b. Will the microphone detect a sound that originates from the point with rectangular coordinates $(-2, 0)$? Explain.

Write each equation in rectangular form, and then identify its graph. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

48. $r = \frac{1}{\cos \theta + \sin \theta}$

49. $r = 10 \csc \left(\theta + \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$

50. $r = 3 \csc \left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

51. $r = -2 \sec \left(\theta - \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$

52. $r = 4 \sec \left(\theta - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

53. $r = \frac{5 \cos \theta + 5 \sin \theta}{\cos^2 \theta - \sin^2 \theta}$

54. $r = 2 \sin \left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

55. $r = 4 \cos \left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

56. **ASTRONOMY** Polar equations are used to model the paths of satellites or other orbiting bodies in space. Suppose the path of a satellite is modeled by $r = \frac{4}{4 + 3 \sin \theta}$, where r is measured in tens of thousands of kilometers, with Earth at the pole.

a. Sketch a graph of the path of the satellite.

b. Determine the minimum and maximum distances the satellite is from Earth at any time.

c. Suppose a second satellite passes through a point with rectangular coordinates $(1.5, -3)$. Are the two satellites at risk of ever colliding at this point? Explain.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Identify the graph of each rectangular equation. Then write the equation in polar form. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

57. $6x - 3y = 4$

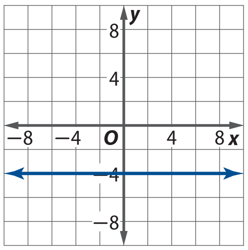
58. $2x + 5y = 12$

59. $(x - 6)^2 + (y - 8)^2 = 100$

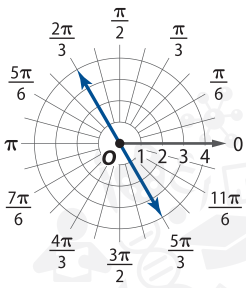
60. $(x + 3)^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 13$

Write rectangular and polar equations for each graph.

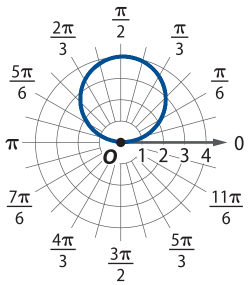
61.



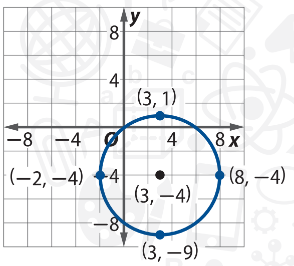
62.



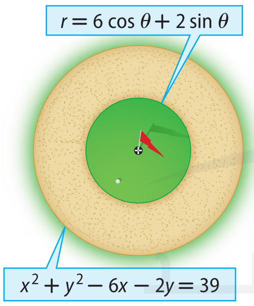
63.



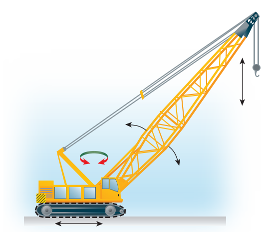
64.

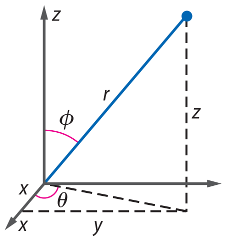


65. GOLF On the 18th hole at Hilly Pines Golf Course, the circular green is surrounded by a ring of sand as shown in the figure. Find the area of the region covered by sand assuming the hole acts as the pole for both equations and units are given in meters.



66. CONSTRUCTION Boom cranes operate on three-dimensional counterparts of polar coordinates called *spherical coordinates*. A point in space has spherical coordinates (r, θ, ϕ), where r represents the distance from the pole, θ represents the angle of rotation about the vertical axis, and ϕ represents the polar angle from the positive vertical axis. Given a point in spherical coordinates (r, θ, ϕ) find the rectangular coordinates (x, y, z) in terms of r, θ, and ϕ.





67. MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS In this problem, you will investigate the relationship between complex numbers and polar coordinates.

a. **GRAPHICAL** The complex number $a + bi$ can be plotted on a complex plane using the ordered pair (a, b), where the x-axis is the real axis R and the y-axis is the imaginary axis $\boldsymbol{i}$. Graph the complex number $6 + 8i$.

b. **NUMERICAL** Find polar coordinates for the complex number using the rectangular coordinates plotted in part **a** if $0 < \theta < 360°$. Graph the coordinates on a polar grid.

c. **GRAPHICAL** Graph the complex number $-3 + 3i$ on a rectangular coordinate system.

d. **GRAPHICAL** Find polar coordinates for the complex number using the rectangular coordinates plotted in part **c** if $0 < \theta < 360°$. Graph the coordinates on a polar grid.

e. **ANALYTICAL** For a complex number $a + bi$, find an expression for converting to polar coordinates.

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

68. ERROR ANALYSIS Usama and Saleh are writing the polar equation $r = \sin \theta$ in rectangular form. Saleh believes that the answer is $x^2 + \left(y - \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{4}$. Usama believes that the answer is simply $y = \sin x$. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

69. CHALLENGE The equation for a circle is $r = 2a \cos \theta$. Write this equation in rectangular form. Find the center and radius of the circle.

70. REASONING Given a set of rectangular coordinates (x, y) and a value for r, write expressions for finding θ in terms of sine and in terms of cosine. (*Hint:* You may have to write multiple expressions for each function, similar to the expressions given in this lesson using tangent.)

71. WRITING IN MATH Make a conjecture about when graphing an equation is made easier by representing the equation in polar form rather than rectangular form and vice versa.

72. PROOF Use $x = r \cos \theta$ and $y = r \sin \theta$ to prove that $r = x \sec \theta$ and $r = y \csc \theta$.

73. CHALLENGE Write $r^2(4 \cos^2 \theta + 3 \sin^2 \theta) + r(-8a \cos \theta + 6b \sin \theta) = 12 - 4a^2 - 3b^2$ in rectangular form. (*Hint:* Distribute before substituting values for r^2 and r. The rectangular equation should be a conic.)

74. WRITING IN MATH Use the definition of a polar axis given in Lesson 8-1 to explain why it was necessary to state that the robot in Example 3 was facing due east. How can the use of quadrant bearings help to eliminate this?

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Use symmetry to graph each equation. (Lesson 8-2)

75. $r = 1 - 2 \sin \theta$

76. $r = -2 - 2 \sin \theta$

77. $r = 2 \sin 3\theta$

Find three different pairs of polar coordinates that name the given point if $-360° < \theta \leq 360°$ or $-2\pi < \theta \leq 2\pi$. (Lesson 8-1)

78. $T(1.5, 180°)$

79. $U\left(-1, \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

80. $V(4, 315°)$

Find the angle θ between u and v to the nearest tenth of a degree.

81. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 6, -4\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -5, -7\rangle$

82. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 2, 3\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle -9, 6\rangle$

83. $\mathbf{u} = \langle 1, 10\rangle, \mathbf{v} = \langle 8, -2\rangle$

Write each pair of parametric equations in rectangular form. Then graph and state any restrictions on the domain.

84. $y = t + 6$ and $x = \sqrt{t}$

85. $y = \frac{t}{2} + 1$ and $x = \frac{t^2}{4}$

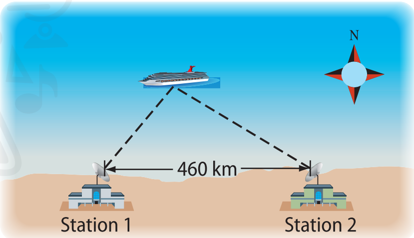
86. $y = -3 \sin t$ and $x = 3 \cos t$

87. **NAVIGATION** Two LORAN broadcasting stations are located 460 kilometers apart. A ship receives signals from both stations and determines that it is 108 kilometers farther from Station 2 than Station 1.

a. Determine the equation of the hyperbola centered at the origin on which the ship is located.

b. Graph the equation, indicating on which branch of the hyperbola the ship is located.

c. Find the coordinates of the location of the ship on the coordinate grid if it is 110 kilometers from the x-axis.



88. **BICYCLES** Woodland Bicycles makes two models of off-road bicycles: the Adventure, which sells for AED 250, and the Grande Venture, which sells for AED 350. Both models use the same frame. The painting and assembly time required for the Adventure is 2 hours, while the time is 3 hours for the Grande Venture. If there are 175 frames and 450 hours of labor available for production, how many of each model should be produced to maximize revenue? What is the maximum revenue?

Solve each system of equations using Gauss-Jordan elimination.

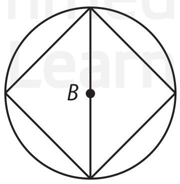
89. $3x + 9y + 6z = 21$
$4x - 10y + 3z = 15$
$-5x + 12y - 2z = -6$

90. $x + 5y - 3z = -14$
$2x - 4y + 5z = 18$
$-7x - 6y - 2z = 1$

91. $2x - 4y + z = 20$
$5x + 2y - 2z = -4$
$6x + 3y + 5z = 23$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

92. **SAT/ACT** A square is inscribed in circle B. If the circumference of the circle is 50π, what is the length of the diagonal of the square?



A $10\sqrt{2}$

B 25

C $25\sqrt{2}$

D 50

E $50\sqrt{2}$

93. **REVIEW** Which of the following could be an equation for a rose with three petals?

F $r = 3 \sin \theta$

G $r = \sin 3\theta$

H $r = 6 \sin \theta$

J $r = \sin 6\theta$

94. What is the polar form of $x^2 + (y - 2)^2 = 4$?

A $r = \sin \theta$

B $r = 2 \sin \theta$

C $r = 4 \sin \theta$

D $r = 8 \sin \theta$

95. **REVIEW** Which of the following could be an equation for a spiral of Archimedes that passes through $A\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$?

F $r = \frac{\sqrt{2}\pi}{2} \cos \theta$

G $r = \theta$

H $r = \frac{3}{4}$

J $r = \frac{\theta}{2}$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 8

Mid-Chapter Quiz

Lessons 8-1 through 8-3

Graph each point on a polar grid. (Lesson 8-1)

1. $A(-2, 45°)$

2. $D(1, 315°)$

3. $C\left(-1.5, -\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

4. $B\left(3, -\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$

Graph each polar equation. (Lesson 8-1)

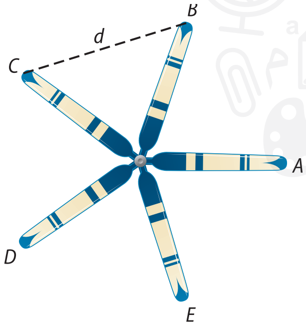
5. $r = 3$

6. $\theta = -\frac{3\pi}{4}$

7. $\theta = 60°$

8. $r = -1.5$

9. HELICOPTERS A toy helicopter rotor consists of five equally spaced blades. Each blade is 11.5 centimeters long. (Lesson 8-1)



a. If the angle blade A makes with the polar axis is 3°, write an ordered pair to represent the tip of each blade on a polar grid. Assume that the rotor is centered at the pole.

b. What is the distance d between the tips of the helicopter blades to the nearest centimeter?

Graph each equation. (Lesson 8-2)

10. $r = \frac{1}{4}\sec\theta$

11. $r = \frac{1}{3}\cos\theta$

12. $r = 3\csc\theta$

13. $r = 4\sin\theta$

14. STAINED GLASS A rose window is a circular window seen in gothic architecture. The pattern of the window radiates from the center. The window shown can be approximated by the equation $r = 3\sin 6\theta$. Use symmetry, zeros, and maximum r-values of the function to graph the function. (Lesson 8-2)

Identify and graph each classic curve. (Lesson 8-2)

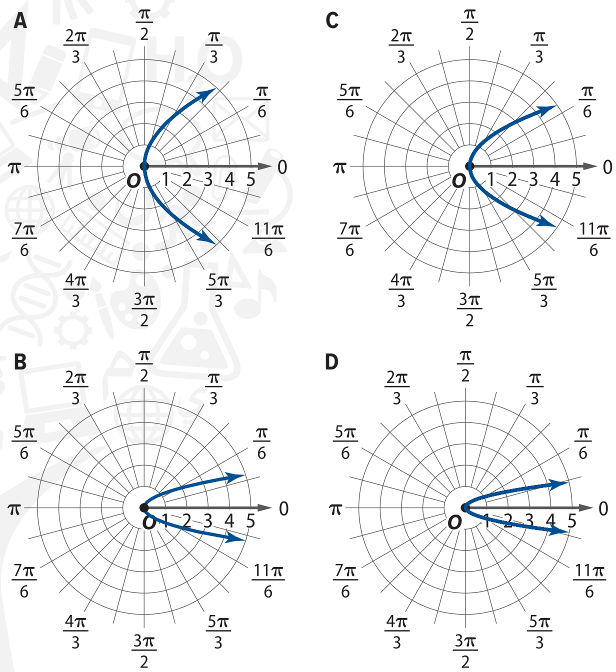
15. $r = \frac{1}{2}\sin\theta$

16. $r = \frac{1}{3}\theta + 3, \theta \geq 0$

17. $r = 1 + 2\cos\theta$

18. $r = 5\sin 3\theta$

19. MULTIPLE CHOICE Identify the polar graph of $y^2 = \frac{1}{2}x$. (Lesson 8-3)



Find the rectangular coordinates for each point with the given polar coordinates. (Lesson 8-3)

20. $\left(4, \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

21. $\left(-2, -\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

22. $(-1, 210°)$

23. $(3, 30°)$

Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates if $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$. Round to the nearest hundredth. (Lesson 8-3)

24. $(-3, 5)$

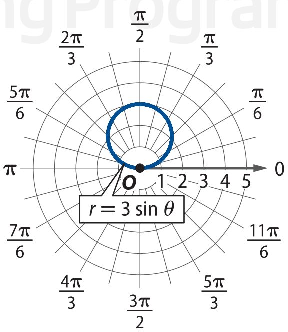
25. $(8, 1)$

26. $(7, -6)$

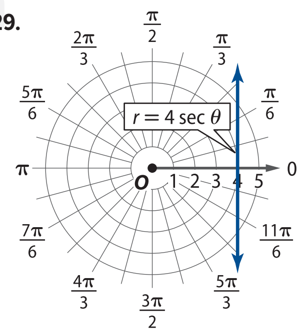
27. $(-4, -10)$

Write a rectangular equation for each graph. (Lesson 8-3)

28.



29.



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education ©DAL MI.Ti./Shutterstock.com

LESSON 8-4

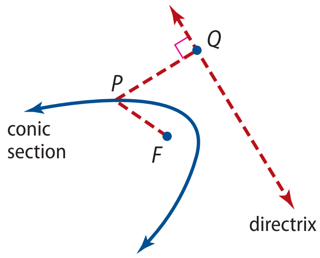
Polar Forms of Conic Sections

:: Then	:: Now	:: Why?
• You defined conic sections.	• **1** Identify polar equations of conics. **2** Write and graph the polar equation of a conic given its eccentricity and the equation of its directrix.	• Polar equations of conic sections can be used to model orbital motion, such as the orbit of a planet around the Sun or the orbit of a satellite around a planet.

1 Use Polar Equations of Conics

Previously, you defined conic sections in terms of the distance between a focus and directrix (parabola) or between two foci (ellipse and hyperbola). Alternatively, we can define all of these curves using the focus-directrix definition of a parabola.

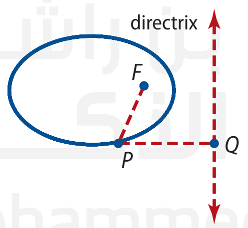
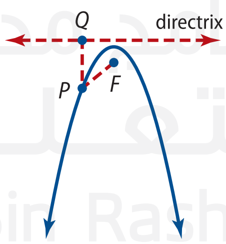
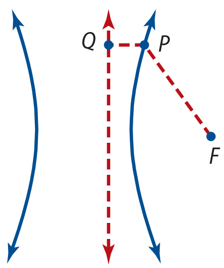
In general, a conic section can be defined as the locus of points such that the distance from a point P to the focus and the distance from the point to a fixed line not containing P (the directrix) is a constant ratio. This constant ratio $\frac{PF}{PQ}$ represents the eccentricity of a conic and is denoted e.



***e* as Constant Ratio**		***e* as Constant Multiplier**
$e = \frac{PF}{PQ}$	or	$PF = e \cdot PQ$

Recall that for a parabola, $PF = PQ$. Therefore, a parabola has eccentricity $\frac{PQ}{PQ}$ or 1. Other values of e give us other conics. These eccentricities are summarized below.

ConceptSummary Eccentricities of Conics

Ellipse	Parabola	Hyperbola
$0 < e < 1$	$e = 1$	$e > 1$
		
$0 < \frac{PF}{PQ} < 1$	$\frac{PF}{PQ} = 1$	$\frac{PF}{PQ} > 1$

Recall too that when the center of a conic section lies at the origin, the rectangular equations of conics take on a simpler form.

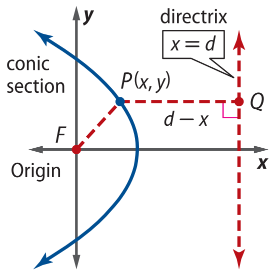
Ellipses	**Parabolas**	**Hyperbolas**
$\frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ or $\frac{x^2}{b^2} + \frac{y^2}{a^2} = 1$	$x^2 = 4py$ or $y^2 = 4px$	$\frac{x^2}{a^2} - \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$ or $\frac{y^2}{a^2} - \frac{x^2}{b^2} = 1$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education DAL NASA/JPL-Caltech

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Using the focus-directrix definition, the equation of a conic in polar form is simplified if a *focus* of the conic lies at the origin.

Consider a conic with its focus located at the origin and its directrix to the right at $x = d$. For any point $P(x, y)$ on the curve, the distance PF is given by $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$, and the distance PQ is given by $d - x$. We can substitute these expressions in the definition of a conic section.



$PF = e \cdot PQ$	Definition of a conic section
$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = e(d - x)$	$PF = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and $PQ = d - x$

StudyTip

Other Conics When defining conics in terms of their eccentricity, *e* is a strictly positive constant. There are no circles, lines, or other degenerate conics.

The expression $\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ should make you think of polar coordinates. In fact, the equation above has a simpler form in the polar coordinate system.

$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = e(d - x)$	Rectangular form of conic defined in terms of its eccentricity e
$r = e(d - r\cos\theta)$	$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and $x = r\cos\theta$
$r = ed - er\cos\theta$	Distributive Property
$r + er\cos\theta = ed$	Isolate r-terms.
$r(1 + e\cos\theta) = ed$	Factor.
$r = \dfrac{ed}{1 + e\cos\theta}$	Solve for r.

This last equation is the polar form of an equation for the conic sections with focus at the pole and vertical directrix and center or vertex to the right of the pole. Different orientations of the focus and directrix can produce different forms of this polar equation as summarized below.

ReadingMath

Eccentricity In each of these polar equations, the letter *e* is a variable that represents the eccentricity of the conic. It should *not* be confused with the transcendental number *e*, which is a constant.

KeyConcept Polar Equations of Conics

The conic section with eccentricity $e > 0$, $d > 0$, and focus at the pole has the polar equation:

- $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 + e\cos\theta}$ if the directrix is the vertical line $x = d$ (Figure 8.4.1),
- $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 - e\cos\theta}$ if the directrix is the vertical line $x = -d$ (Figure 8.4.2),
- $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 + e\sin\theta}$ if the directrix is the horizontal line $y = d$ (Figure 8.4.3), and
- $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 - e\sin\theta}$ if the directrix is the horizontal line $y = -d$ (Figure 8.4.4).

In each of the examples below, $e = 1$, so the conic takes the form of a parabola.

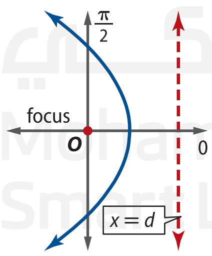


Figure 8.4.1

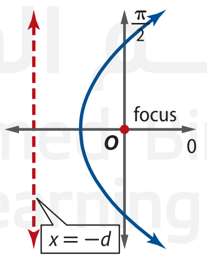


Figure 8.4.2

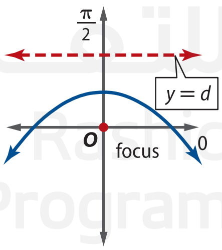


Figure 8.4.3

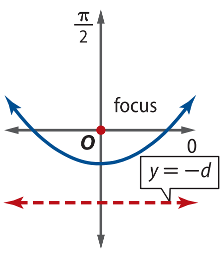


Figure 8.4.4

You will derive the last three of these equations in Exercises 50–52.

Notice that for $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 - e\cos\theta}$, the directrix of the conic is to the left of the pole. For $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 + e\sin\theta}$, the directrix is above the pole. For $r = \dfrac{ed}{1 - e\sin\theta}$, the directrix is below the pole.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

To analyze the polar equation of a conic, begin by writing the equation in standard form, $r = \frac{ed}{1 \pm e \cos \theta}$ or $r = \frac{ed}{1 \pm e \sin \theta}$. In this form, determine the eccentricity and use this value to identify the type of conic the equation represents. Then determine the equation of the directrix, and use it to describe the orientation of the conic.

Example 1 Identify Conics from Polar Equations

Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for each polar equation.

a. $r = \frac{9}{3 + 2.25 \cos \theta}$

Write the equation in standard form, $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \cos \theta}$.

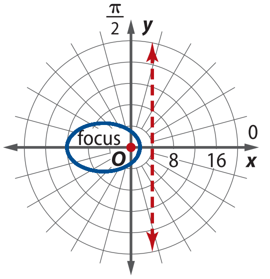
$r = \frac{9}{3 + 2.25 \cos \theta}$ — Original equation

$r = \frac{3(3)}{3(1 + 0.75 \cos \theta)}$ — Factor the numerator and denominator.

$r = \frac{3}{1 + 0.75 \cos \theta}$ — Divide the numerator and denominator by 3.

In this form, you can see from the denominator that $e = 0.75$. Therefore, the conic is an ellipse. For polar equations of this form, the equation of the directrix is $x = d$. From the numerator, we know that $ed = 3$, so $d = 3 \div 0.75$ or 4. Therefore, the equation of the directrix is $x = 4$.

CHECK Sketch the graph of $r = \frac{9}{3 + 2.25 \cos \theta}$ and its directrix $x = 4$ using either the techniques shown in Lesson 8-2 or a graphing calculator. The graph is an ellipse with its directrix to the right of the pole. ✓



b. $r = \frac{-16}{4 \sin \theta - 2}$

Write the equation in standard form.

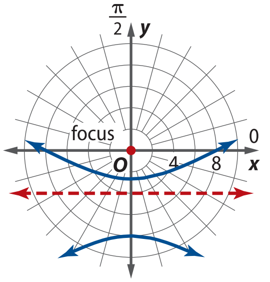
$r = \frac{-16}{4 \sin \theta - 2}$ — Original equation

$r = \frac{-2(8)}{-2(1 - 2 \sin \theta)}$ — Factor the numerator and denominator.

$r = \frac{8}{1 - 2 \sin \theta}$ — Divide the numerator and denominator by −2.

The equation is of the form $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \sin \theta}$, so $e = 2$. Therefore, the conic is a hyperbola. For polar equations of this form, the equation of the directrix is $y = -d$. Because $ed = 8$, $d = 8 \div 2$ or 4. Therefore, the equation of the directrix is $y = -4$.

CHECK Sketch the graph of $r = \frac{-16}{4 \sin \theta - 2}$ and its directrix $y = -4$. The graph is a hyperbola with one focus at the origin, above the directrix. ✓



GuidedPractice

1A. $r = \frac{-6}{3 \cos \theta - 1}$

1B. $r = \frac{9}{3 + 3 \sin \theta}$

1C. $r = \frac{1}{6 + 1.2 \cos \theta}$

> **StudyTip**
> **Focus-Directrix Pairs** While a parabola has one focus and one directrix, ellipses and hyperbolas have two foci-directrix pairs. Either focus-directrix pair can be used to generate the conic.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

2 Write Polar Equations of Conics

You can write the polar equation of a conic given its eccentricity and the equation of the directrix or its eccentricity and some other characteristics.

Example 2 Write Polar Equations of Conics

Write and graph a polar equation and directrix for the conic with the given characteristics.

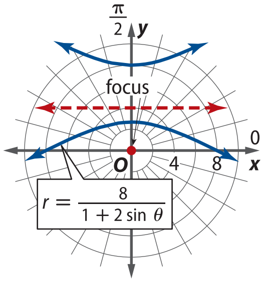
a. $e = 2$; **directrix:** $y = 4$

Because $e = 2$, the conic is a hyperbola. The directrix $y = 4$ is above the pole, so the equation is of the form $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin \theta}$. Use the values for e and d to write the equation.

$r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin \theta}$ Polar form of conic with directrix $y = d$

$r = \frac{2(4)}{1 + 2 \sin \theta}$ or $\frac{8}{1 + 2 \sin \theta}$ $e = 2$ and $d = 4$

Sketch the graph of this polar equation and its directrix. The graph is a hyperbola with its directrix above the pole.



b. $e = 0.5$; **vertices at** $(-4, 0)$ **and** $(12, 0)$

Because $e = 0.5$, the conic is an ellipse. The center of the ellipse is at $(4, 0)$, the midpoint of the segment between the given vertices. This point is to the right of the pole. Therefore, the directrix will be to the left of the pole at $x = -d$. The polar equation of a conic with this d irectrix is $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos \theta}$.

Use the value of e and the polar form of a point on the conic to find the value of d. The vertex point $(12, 0)$ has polar coordinates $(r, \theta) = \left(\sqrt{12^2 + 0^2}, \tan^{-1} \frac{0}{12}\right)$ or $(12, 0)$.

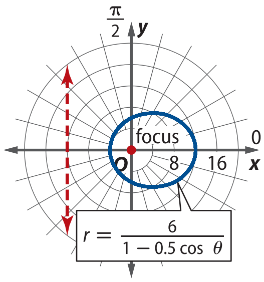
$r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos \theta}$ Polar form of conic with directrix $x = -d$

$12 = \frac{0.5d}{1 - 0.5 \cos 0}$ $e = 0.5$, $r = 12$, and $\theta = 0$

$12 = \frac{0.5d}{0.5}$ $\cos 0 = 1$

$12 = d$ Simplify.

Therefore, the equation for the ellipse is $r = \frac{0.5 \cdot 12}{1 - 0.5 \cos \theta}$ or $r = \frac{6}{1 - 0.5 \cos \theta}$. Because $d = 12$, the equation of the directrix is $x = -12$. The graph is an ellipse with vertices at $(-4, 0)$ and $(12, 0)$.



GuidedPractice

2A. $e = 1$; directrix: $x = 2$

2B. $e = 2.5$; vertices at $(0, -3)$ and $(0, -7)$

StudyTip

Effects of Various Eccentricities You will investigate the effects of various eccentricities for a fixed directrix and various directrixes for a fixed eccentricity in Exercise 49.

Previously, you analyzed the rectangular equations of conics in standard form to describe the geometric properties of parabolas, ellipses, and hyperbolas. You can use the geometric analysis of the graph of a conic given in polar form to write the equation in rectangular form.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 3 Write the Polar Form of Conics in Rectangular Form

Write each polar equation in rectangular form.

a. $r = \dfrac{4}{1 - \sin\theta}$

Step 1 Analyze the polar equation.

For this equation, $e = 1$ and $d = 4$. The eccentricity and form of the equation determine that this is a parabola that opens vertically with focus at the pole and a directrix $y = -4$. The general equation of such a parabola in rectangular form is $(x - h)^2 = 4p(y - k)$.

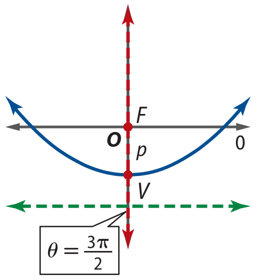


Figure 8.4.5

Step 2 Determine values for h, k, and p.

The vertex lies between the focus F and directrix of the parabola, occurring when $\theta = \frac{3\pi}{2}$, as shown in Figure 8.4.5. Evaluating the function at this value, we find that the vertex lies at polar coordinates $\left(2, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$, which correspond to rectangular coordinates $(0, -2)$. So, $(h, k) = (0, -2)$. The distance p from the vertex at $(0, -2)$ to the focus at $(0, 0)$ is 2.

Step 3 Substitute the values for h, k, and p into the standard form of an equation for a parabola.

$(x - h)^2 = 4p(y - k)$ Standard form of a parabola

$(x - 0)^2 = 4(2)[y - (-2)]$ $h = 0$, $k = -2$, and $p = 2$

$x^2 = 8y + 16$ Simplify.

b. $r = \dfrac{3.2}{1 - 0.6\cos\theta}$

Step 1 Analyze the polar equation.

For this equation, $e = 0.6$ and $d \approx 5.3$. The eccentricity and form of the equation determine that this is an ellipse with directrix $x = -5.3$. Therefore, the major axis of the ellipse lies along the polar or x-axis. The general equation of such an ellipse in rectangular form is $\dfrac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1$.

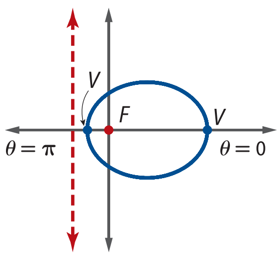


Figure 8.4.6

Step 2 Determine values for h, k, a, and b.

The vertices are the endpoints of the major axis and occur when $\theta = 0$ and π as shown in Figure 8.4.6. Evaluating the function at these values, we find that the vertices have polar coordinates $(8, 0)$ and $(2, \pi)$, which correspond to rectangular coordinates $(8, 0)$ and $(-2, 0)$. The ellipse's center is the midpoint of the segment between the vertices, so $(h, k) = (3, 0)$.

The distance a between the center and each vertex is 5. The distance c from the center to the focus at $(0, 0)$ is 3. By the Pythagorean relation $b = \sqrt{a^2 - c^2}$, $b = \sqrt{5^2 - 3^2}$ or 4.

Step 3 Substitute the values for h, k, a, and b into the standard form of an equation for an ellipse.

$\dfrac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \dfrac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ Standard form of an ellipse

$\dfrac{(x - 3)^2}{5^2} + \dfrac{(y - 0)^2}{4^2} = 1$ $h = 3$, $k = 0$, $a = 5$, and $b = 4$

$\dfrac{(x - 3)^2}{25} + \dfrac{y^2}{16} = 1$ Simplify.

GuidedPractice

3A. $r = \dfrac{2.5}{1 - 1.5\cos\theta}$

3B. $r = \dfrac{5}{1 + \sin\theta}$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Exercises

Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for each polar equation. (Example 1)

1. $r = \dfrac{20}{4 + 4 \sin \theta}$

2. $r = \dfrac{18}{2 - 6 \cos \theta}$

3. $r = \dfrac{21}{3 \cos \theta + 1}$

4. $r = \dfrac{24}{4 \sin \theta + 8}$

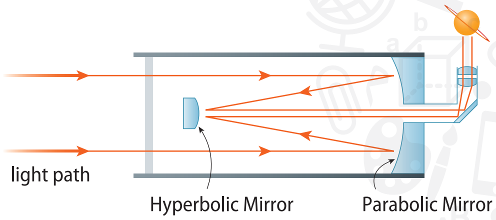
5. $r = \dfrac{-12}{6 \cos \theta - 6}$

6. $r = \dfrac{9}{4 - 3 \sin \theta}$

7. $r = \dfrac{-8}{\sin \theta - 0.25}$

8. $r = \dfrac{10}{2.5 + 2.5 \cos \theta}$

9. TELESCOPES The Cassegrain Telescope, invented in 1692, produces an image by reflecting light off of parabolic and hyperbolic mirrors. Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and the equation of the directrix for each equation modeling a mirror in the telescope. (Example 1)



a. $r = \dfrac{7}{2 \sin \theta + 2}$

b. $r = \dfrac{28}{12.5 \cos \theta + 5}$

Write and graph a polar equation and directrix for the conic with the given characteristics. (Example 2)

10. $e = 1$: directrix: $y = 6$

11. $e = 0.75$; directrix: $x = -8$

12. $e = 5$; directrix: $x = 2$

13. $e = 0.1$; directrix: $y = 8$

14. $e = 6$; directrix: $y = -7$

15. $e = 1$; directrix: $x = -1.5$

16. $e = 0.8$; vertices at $(-36, 0)$ and $(4, 0)$

17. $e = 1.5$; vertices at $(-3, 0)$ and $(-15, 0)$

Write each polar equation in rectangular form. (Example 3)

18. $r = \dfrac{4.8}{1 + \sin \theta}$

19. $r = \dfrac{30}{4 + \cos \theta}$

20. $r = \dfrac{5}{1 - 1.5 \cos \theta}$

21. $r = \dfrac{5.1}{1 + 0.7 \sin \theta}$

22. $r = \dfrac{12}{1 - \cos \theta}$

23. $r = \dfrac{6}{0.25 - 0.75 \sin \theta}$

24. $r = \dfrac{4.5}{1 + 1.25 \sin \theta}$

25. $r = \dfrac{8.4}{1 - 0.4 \cos \theta}$

GRAPHING CALCULATOR **Determine the type of conic for each polar equation. Then graph each equation.**

26. $r = \dfrac{2}{2 + \sin\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)}$

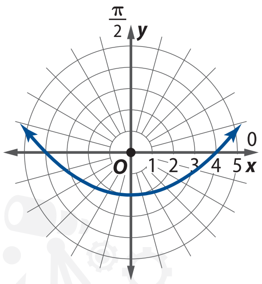
27. $r = \dfrac{3}{1 + \cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)}$

28. $r = \dfrac{2}{1 - \cos\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)}$

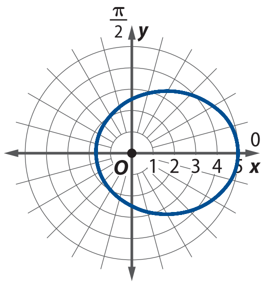
29. $r = \dfrac{4}{1 + 2 \sin\left(\theta + \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)}$

Match each polar equation with its graph.

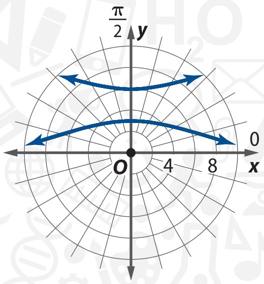
a.



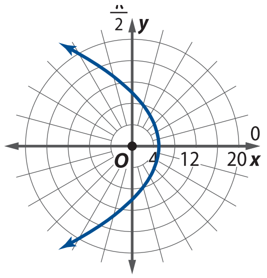
b.



c.



d.



30. $r = \dfrac{10}{1 + \cos \theta}$

31. $r = \dfrac{4}{1 - \sin \theta}$

32. $r = \dfrac{5}{2 - \cos \theta}$

33. $r = \dfrac{12}{1 + 3 \sin \theta}$

Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for each polar equation. Then sketch the graph of the equation, and label the directrix.

34. $r = \dfrac{12}{2 - 0.75 \cos \theta}$

35. $r = \dfrac{1}{0.2 - 0.2 \sin \theta}$

36. $r = \dfrac{6}{1.2 \sin \theta + 0.3}$

37. $r = \dfrac{8}{\cos \theta + 5}$

38. ASTRONOMY The comet Borrelly travels in an elliptical orbit around the Sun with eccentricity $e = 0.624$. The point in a comet's orbit nearest to the Sun is defined as the *perihelion,* while the farthest point from the Sun is defined as the *aphelion.* The aphelion occurs at a distance of 5.83 AU (astronomical units, based on the distance between Earth and the Sun) from the Sun and the perihelion occurs at a distance of 1.35 AU. The diameter of the Sun is about 0.0093 AU.

a. Write a polar equation for the elliptical orbit of the comet Borrelly, and graph the equation.

b. Determine the distance in kilometers between the comet Borrelly and the Sun at the aphelion and perihelion if 1 AU ≈ 149.7 million kilometers.

PROOF **Prove each of the following.**

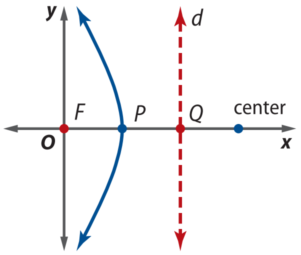
39. $b = a\sqrt{1 - e^2}$ for an ellipse

40. $b = a\sqrt{e^2 - 1}$ for a hyperbola

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

41. **PROOF** Use the definition for the eccentricity of a conic, $PF = ePQ$, and the drawing of the hyperbola shown below, to verify that $d = \frac{a(e^2 - 1)}{e}$ for any hyperbola.



Write each rectangular equation in polar form.

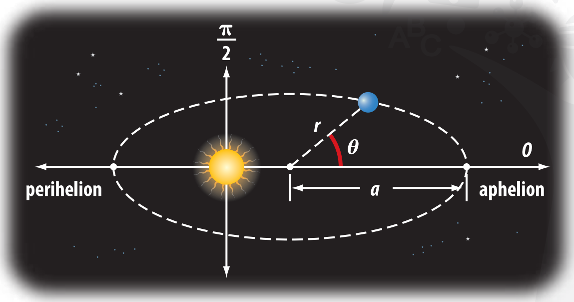
42. $x^2 = 4y + 4$

43. $-10y + 25 = x^2$

44. $\frac{(x - 2)^2}{16} + \frac{y^2}{12} = 1$

45. $\frac{(x + 4)^2}{64} + \frac{y^2}{48} = 1$

46. **ASTRONOMY** The planets travel around the Sun in approximately elliptical orbits with the Sun at one focus, as shown below.



a. Show that the polar equation of the planets' orbit can be written as $r = \frac{a(1 - e^2)}{(1 - e \cos \theta)}$.

b. Prove that the perihelion distance of any planet is $a(1 - e)$, and the aphelion distance is $a(1 + e)$.

c. Use the formulas from part **a** to find the perihelion and aphelion distances for each of the planets.

Planet	a	e	Planet	a	e
Earth	1.000	0.017	Neptune	30.06	0.009
Jupiter	5.203	0.048	Saturn	9.539	0.056
Mars	1.524	0.093	Uranus	19.18	0.047
Mercury	0.387	0.206	Venus	0.723	0.007

d. For which planet is the distance between the perihelion and aphelion the smallest? the greatest?

Write each equation in polar form. (*Hint*: Translate each conic so that a focus lies on the pole.)

47. $\frac{(x - 2)^2}{64} - \frac{y^2}{36} = 1$

48. $3(x + 5)^2 + 4y^2 = 192$

49. **MULTIPLE REPRESENTATIONS** In this problem, you will investigate the effects of varying the eccentricity and the directrix on graphs of conic sections.

a. **NUMERICAL** Write an equation for a conic section with focus (0, 0) and directrix $x = 3$ for $e = 0.4$, 0.6, 1, 1.6, and 2. Then identify the type of conic that each equation represents.

b. **GRAPHICAL** Graph and label the eccentricity for each of the equations that you found in part **a** on the same coordinate plane.

c. **VERBAL** Describe the changes in the graphs from part **b** as e approaches 2.

d. **NUMERICAL** Write an equation for a conic section with focus (0, 0) and eccentricity $e = 0.5$ for $d = 0.25$, 1, and 4.

e. **GRAPHICAL** Graph each of the equations on the same coordinate plane.

f. **VERBAL** Describe the relationship between the value of d and the distances between the vertices and the foci of the graphs from part **e**.

Derive each of the following polar equations of conics for the equation $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \cos \theta}$. Include a diagram with each derivation.

50. $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \cos \theta}$

51. $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin \theta}$

52. $r = \frac{ed}{1 - e \sin \theta}$

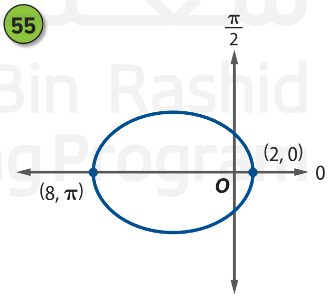
H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

53. **WRITING IN MATH** Describe two definitions that can be used to define a conic section.

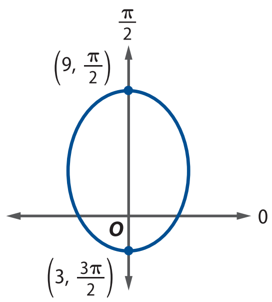
54. **REASONING** Explain why $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \sin \theta}$ does not produce a true circle for any value of e.

CHALLENGE Determine a polar equation for the ellipse with the given vertices if one focus is at the pole.

55.



56.



57. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain how you can find the distance from the focus at (0, 0) to any point on the conic when the rectangular coordinates, polar coordinates, or θ is provided.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Spiral Review

Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates if $0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$. If necessary, round to the nearest hundredth. (Lesson 8-3)

58. $\left(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}\right)$

59. $(-2, -5)$

60. $(8, -12)$

Identify and graph each classic curve. (Lesson 8-2)

61. $r = 3 + 3 \cos \theta$

62. $r = -2 \sin 3\theta$

63. $r = \frac{5}{2}\theta, \theta \ge 0$

Determine an equation of an ellipse with each set of characteristics.

64. co-vertices $(5, 8)$, $(5, 0)$; foci $(8, 4)$, $(2, 4)$

65. major axis $(-2, 4)$ to $(8, 4)$; minor axis $(3, 1)$ to $(3, 7)$

66. foci $(1, -1)$, $(9, -1)$; length of minor axis equals 6

67. **OLYMPICS** In the Olympic Games, team standings are determined according to each team's total points. Each type of Olympic medal earns a team a given number of points. Use the information to determine the Olympics in which the United States earned the most points.

Olympics	Gold	Silver	Bronze
1996	44	32	25
2000	37	24	31
2004	35	39	29
2008	36	38	36

Medal	Points
gold	3
silver	2
bronze	1

Find the values of $\sin 2\theta$, $\cos 2\theta$, and $\tan 2\theta$ for the given value and interval.

68. $\sin \theta = \frac{2}{3}, (0°, 90°)$

69. $\tan \theta = -\frac{24}{7}, \left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi\right)$

70. $\sin \theta = -\frac{4}{5}, \left(\pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$

Locate the vertical asymptotes, and sketch the graph of each function.

71. $y = \sec\left(x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

72. $y = 4 \cot \frac{x}{2}$

73. $y = 2 \cot\left[\frac{2}{3}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right] + 0.75$

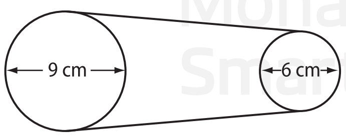
Find the exact values of the five remaining trigonometric functions of θ.

74. $\sec \theta = 2$, where $\sin \theta > 0$ and $\cos \theta > 0$

75. $\csc \theta = \sqrt{5}$, where $\sin \theta > 0$ and $\cos \theta > 0$

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

76. **SAT/ACT** A pulley with a 9-centimeter diameter is belted to a pulley with a 6-centimeter diameter, as shown in the figure. If the larger pulley runs at 120 rpm (revolutions per minute), how fast does the smaller pulley run?



A 80 rpm
B 120 rpm
C 160 rpm
D 180 rpm
E 200 rpm

77. What type of conic is given by $r = \frac{3}{2 - 0.5 \cos \theta}$?

F circle
G ellipse
H parabola
J hyperbola

78. **REVIEW** Which of the following includes the component form and magnitude of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ with initial point $A(3, 4, -2)$ and terminal point $B(-5, 2, 1)$?

A $\langle -8, -2, 3\rangle, \sqrt{77}$
B $\langle 8, -2, 3\rangle, \sqrt{77}$
C $\langle -8, -2, 3\rangle, \sqrt{109}$
D $\langle 8, -2, 3\rangle, \sqrt{109}$

79. **REVIEW** What is the eccentricity of the ellipse described by $\frac{y^2}{47} + \frac{(x - 12)^2}{34} = 1$?

F 0.38
G 0.41
H 0.53
J 0.62

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

LESSON 8-5

Complex Numbers and DeMoivre's Theorem

Then

- You performed operations with complex numbers written in rectangular form.

Now

1. Convert complex numbers from rectangular to polar form and vice versa.
2. Find products, quotients, powers, and roots of complex numbers in polar form.

Why?

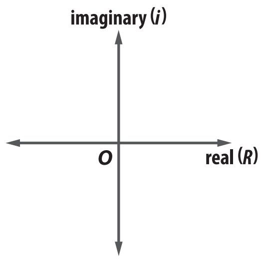
- Electrical engineers use complex numbers to describe certain relationships of electricity. Voltage *E*, impedance *Z*, and current *I* are the three quantities related by the equation $E = I \cdot Z$ used to describe alternating current. Each variable can be written as a complex number in the form $a + bj$, where *j* is an imaginary number (engineers use *j* to not be confused with current *I*). For impedance, the real part *a* represents the opposition to current flow due to resistors, and the imaginary part *b* is related to the opposition due to inductors and capacitors.

NewVocabulary

- complex plane
- real axis
- imaginary axis
- Argand plane
- absolute value of a complex number
- polar form
- trigonometric form
- modulus
- argument
- *p*th roots of unity

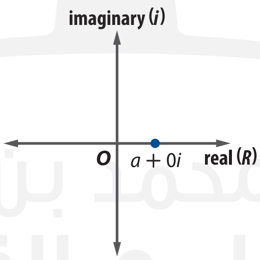
1 Polar Forms of Complex Numbers

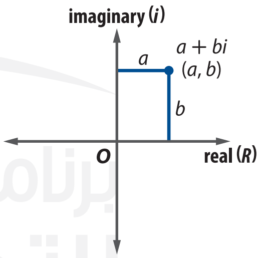
A complex number given in rectangular form, $a + bi$, has a real component a and an imaginary component bi. You can graph a complex number on the **complex plane** by representing it with the point (a, b). Similar to a coordinate plane, we need two axes to graph a complex number. The real component is plotted on the horizontal axis called the **real axis**, and the imaginary component is plotted on the vertical axis called the **imaginary axis**. The complex plane may also be referred to as the **Argand Plane** (ar GON).



Complex Plane

Consider a complex number where $b = 0$, $a + 0i$. The result is a real number a that can be graphed using just a real number line or the real axis. When $b \neq 0$, the imaginary axis is needed to represent the imaginary component.



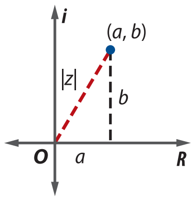


Recall that the absolute value of a real number is its distance from zero on the number line. Similarly, the **absolute value of a complex number** is its distance from zero in the complex plane. When $a + bi$ is graphed in the complex plane, the distance from zero can be calculated using the Pythagorean Theorem.

KeyConcept Absolute Value of a Complex Number

The absolute value of the complex number $z = a + bi$ is

$$|z| = |a + bi| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}.$$



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

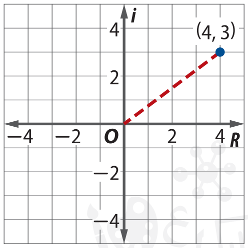
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Jim Mires/Alamy

Example 1 Graphs and Absolute Values of Complex Numbers

Graph each number in the complex plane, and find its absolute value.

a. $z = 4 + 3i$

$(a, b) = (4, 3)$



$|z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ Absolute value formula

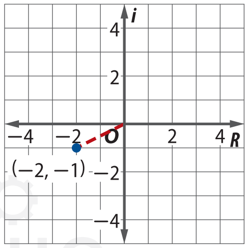
$= \sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}$ $a = 4$ and $b = 3$

$= \sqrt{25}$ or 5 Simplify.

The absolute value of $4 + 3i = 5$.

b. $z = -2 - i$

$(a, b) = (-2, -1)$



$|z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ Absolute value formula

$= \sqrt{(-2)^2 + (-1)^2}$ $a = -2$ and $b = -1$

$= \sqrt{5}$ or 2.24 Simplify.

The absolute value of $-2 - i \approx 2.24$.

GuidedPractice

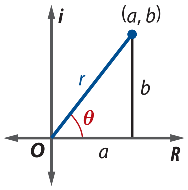
1A. $5 + 2i$

1B. $-3 + 4i$

WatchOut!

Polar Form The *polar form of a complex number* should not be confused with *polar coordinates of a complex number*. The polar form of a complex number is another way to represent a complex number. Polar coordinates of a complex number will be discussed later in this lesson.

Just as rectangular coordinates (x, y) can be written in polar form, so can the coordinates that represent the graph of a complex number in the complex plane. The same trigonometric ratios that were used to find values of x and y can be applied to represent values for a and b.



$\cos\theta = \frac{a}{r}$ and $\sin\theta = \frac{b}{r}$

$r\cos\theta = a$ $r\sin\theta = b$ Multiply each side by r.

Substituting the polar representations for a and b, we can calculate the **polar form** or **trigonometric form** of a complex number.

$z = a + bi$ Original complex number

$= r\cos\theta + (r\sin\theta)i$ $a = r\cos\theta$ and $b = r\sin\theta$

$= r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ Factor.

In the case of a complex number, r represents the absolute value, or **modulus**, of the complex number and can be found using the same process you used when finding the absolute value, $r = |z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$. The angle θ is called the **argument** of the complex number. Similar to finding θ with rectangular coordinates (x, y), when using a complex number, $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$ or $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a} + \pi$ if $a < 0$.

StudyTip

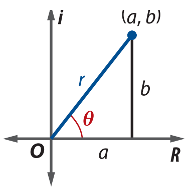
Argument The argument of a complex number is also called the *amplitude*. Just as in polar coordinates, θ is not unique, although it is normally given in the interval $-2\pi < \theta < 2\pi$.

KeyConcept Polar Form of a Complex Number

The polar or trigonometric form of the complex number $z = a + bi$ is

$z = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$, where

$r = |z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, $a = r\cos\theta$, $b = r\sin\theta$, and $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$ for $a > 0$ or $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a} + \pi$ for $a < 0$.



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Example 2 Complex Numbers in Polar Form

Express each complex number in polar form.

a. $-6 + 8i$

Find the modulus r and argument θ.

$$r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \qquad \text{Conversion formula} \qquad \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a} + \pi$$

$$= \sqrt{(-6)^2 + 8^2} \text{ or } 10 \qquad a = -6 \text{ and } b = 8 \qquad = \tan^{-1}\frac{8}{-6} + \pi \text{ or about } 2.21$$

The polar form of $-6 + 8i$ is about $10(\cos 2.21 + i \sin 2.21)$.

b. $4 + \sqrt{3}i$

Find the modulus r and argument θ.

$$r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \qquad \text{Conversion formula} \qquad \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$$

$$= \sqrt{4^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} \qquad a = 4 \text{ and } b = \sqrt{3} \qquad = \tan^{-1}\frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$$

$$= \sqrt{19} \text{ or about } 4.36 \qquad \text{Simplify.} \qquad \approx 0.41$$

The polar form of $4 + \sqrt{3}i$ is about $4.36(\cos 0.41 + i \sin 0.41)$.

Guided Practice

2A. $9 + 7i$

2B. $-2 - 2i$

Reading Math

Polar Form $r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ is often abbreviated as $r \text{ cis } \theta$. In Example 2a, $-6 + 8i$ can also be expressed as 10 cis 2.21, where $10 = \sqrt{(-6)^2 + 8^2}$ and $2.21 = \tan^{-1}\frac{8}{-6}$.

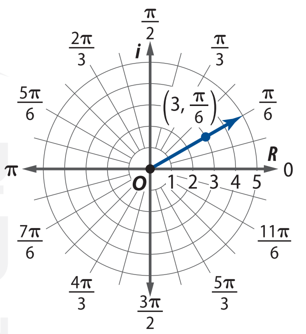
You can use the polar form of a complex number to graph the number on a polar grid by using the r and θ values as your polar coordinates (r, θ). You can also take a complex number written in polar form and convert it to rectangular form by evaluating.

Example 3 Graph and Convert the Polar Form of a Complex Number

Graph $z = 3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ on a polar grid. Then express it in rectangular form.

The value of r is 3, and the value of θ is $\frac{\pi}{6}$.

Plot the polar coordinates $\left(3, \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$.



To express the number in rectangular form, evaluate the trigonometric values and simplify.

$$3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right) \qquad \text{Polar form}$$

$$= 3\left[\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + i\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\right] \qquad \text{Evaluate for cosine and sine.}$$

$$= \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i \qquad \text{Distributive Property}$$

The rectangular form of $z = 3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ is $z = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{3}{2}i$.

Guided Practice

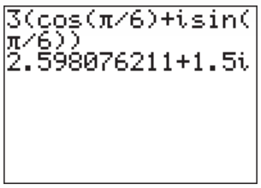
Graph each complex number on a polar grid. Then express it in rectangular form.

3A. $5\left(\cos\frac{3\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$

3B. $4\left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$

Technology Tip

Complex Number Conversions You can convert a complex number in polar form to rectangular form by entering the expression in polar form, then selecting ENTER. To be in polar mode, select MODE then $a + bi$.



Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

2 Products, Quotients, Powers, and Roots of Complex Numbers

The polar form of complex numbers, along with the sum and difference formulas for cosine and sine, greatly aid in the multiplication and division of complex numbers. The formula for the product of two complex numbers in polar form can be derived by performing the multiplication.

$z_1z_2 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1) \cdot r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)$ — Original equation

$= r_1r_2(\cos\theta_1\cos\theta_2 + i\cos\theta_1\sin\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_1\cos\theta_2 + i^2\sin\theta_1\sin\theta_2)$ — FOIL

$= r_1r_2[(\cos\theta_1\cos\theta_2 - \sin\theta_1\sin\theta_2) + (i\cos\theta_1\sin\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_1\cos\theta_2)]$ — $i^2 = -1$ and group imaginary terms.

$= r_1r_2[(\cos\theta_1\cos\theta_2 - \sin\theta_1\sin\theta_2) + i(\cos\theta_1\sin\theta_2 + \sin\theta_1\cos\theta_2)]$ — Factor out i.

$= r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$ — Sum identities for cosine and sine

KeyConcept Product and Quotient of Complex Numbers in Polar Form

Given the complex numbers $z_1 = r_1(\cos\theta_1 + i\sin\theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos\theta_2 + i\sin\theta_2)$:

Product Formula $z_1z_2 = r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$

Quotient Formula $\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}[\cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + i\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)]$, where z_2 and $r_2 \neq 0$

You will prove the Quotient Formula in Exercise 77.

ReadingMath

Plural Forms *Moduli* is the plural of *modulus*.

Notice that when multiplying complex numbers, you multiply the moduli and add the arguments. When dividing, you divide the moduli and subtract the arguments.

Example 4 Product of Complex Numbers in Polar Form

Find $2\left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{3}\right) \cdot 4\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ in polar form. Then express the product in rectangular form.

$2\left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{3}\right) \cdot 4\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ — Original expression

$= 2(4)\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{3} + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right]$ — Product Formula

$= 8\left(\cos\frac{11\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$ — Simplify.

Now find the rectangular form of the product.

$8\left(\cos\frac{11\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$ — Polar form

$= 8\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - i\frac{1}{2}\right)$ — Evaluate.

$= 4\sqrt{3} - 4i$ — Distributive Property

The polar form of the product is $8\left(\cos\frac{11\pi}{6} + i\sin\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$. The rectangular form of the product is $4\sqrt{3} - 4i$.

GuidedPractice

Find each product in polar form. Then express the product in rectangular form.

4A. $3\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right) \cdot 5\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

4B. $-6\left(\cos\frac{3\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) \cdot 2\left(\cos\frac{2\pi}{3} + i\sin\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

As mentioned at the beginning of this lesson, quotients of complex numbers can be used to show relationships in electricity.

Real-World Career

Electrical Engineers Electrical engineers design and create new technology used to manufacture global positioning systems, giant generators that power entire cities, turbine engines used in jet aircrafts, and radar and navigation systems. They also work on improving various products such as cell phones, cars, and robots.

Real-World Example 5 Quotient of Complex Numbers in Polar Form

ELECTRICITY If a circuit has a voltage E of 150 volts and an impedance Z of $6 - 3j$ ohms, find the current I amps in the circuit in rectangular form. Use $E = I \cdot Z$.

Express each number in polar form.

$150 = 150(\cos 0 + j \sin 0)$ — $r = \sqrt{150^2 + 0^2}$ or 150; $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{0}{150}$ or 0

$6 - 3j = 3\sqrt{5}[\cos(-0.46) + j \sin(-0.46)]$ — $r = \sqrt{6^2 + (-3)^2}$ or $3\sqrt{5}$; $\theta = \tan^{-1} -\frac{3}{6}$ or about -0.46

Solve for the current I in $I \cdot Z = E$.

$I \cdot Z = E$ — Original equation

$I = \frac{E}{Z}$ — Divide each side by Z.

$I = \frac{150(\cos 0 + j \sin 0)}{3\sqrt{5}[\cos(-0.46) + j \sin(-0.46)]}$ — $E = 150(\cos 0 + j \sin 0)$ and $Z = 3\sqrt{5}[\cos(-0.46) + j \sin(-0.46)]$

$I = \frac{150}{3\sqrt{5}}\{\cos[0 - (-0.46)] + j \sin[0 - (-0.46)]\}$ — Quotient Formula

$I = 10\sqrt{5}(\cos 0.46 + j \sin 0.46)$ — Simplify.

Now convert the current to rectangular form.

$I = 10\sqrt{5}(\cos 0.46 + j \sin 0.46)$ — Original equation

$= 10\sqrt{5}(0.90 + 0.44j)$ — Evaluate.

$= 20.12 + 9.84j$ — Distributive Property

The current is about $20.12 + 9.84j$ amps.

Guided Practice

5. **ELECTRICITY** **If a circuit has a voltage of 120 volts and a current of $8 + 6j$** amps, find the impedance of the circuit in rectangular form.

Before calculating the powers and roots of complex numbers, it may be helpful to express the complex numbers in polar form. Abraham DeMoivre is credited with discovering a useful pattern for evaluating powers of complex numbers.

We can use the formula for the product of complex numbers to help visualize the pattern that DeMoivre discovered.

First, find z^2 by taking the product of $z \cdot z$.

$z \cdot z = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) \cdot r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)$ — Multiply.

$z^2 = r^2[\cos(\theta + \theta) + i \sin(\theta + \theta)]$ — Product Formula

$z^2 = r^2(\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta)$ — Simplify.

Now find z^3 by calculating $z^2 \cdot z$.

$z^2 \cdot z = r^2(\cos 2\theta + i \sin 2\theta) \cdot r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)$ — Multiply.

$z^3 = r^3[\cos(2\theta + \theta) + i \sin(2\theta + \theta)]$ — Product Formula

$z^3 = r^3(\cos 3\theta + i \sin 3\theta)$ — Simplify.

Notice that when calculating these powers of a complex number, you take the nth power of the modulus and multiply the argument by n.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education Dmitry Kalinovsky/Shutterstock.com

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

This pattern is summarized below.

Math HistoryLink

Abraham DeMoivre
(1667–1754)
A French mathematician, DeMoivre is known for the theorem named for him and his book on probability theory, *The Doctrine of Chances*. He is credited with being one of the pioneers of analytic geometry and probability.

KeyConcept DeMoivre's Theorem

If the polar form of a complex number is $z = r(\cos\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\theta)$, then for positive integers n

$$z^n = [r(\cos\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\theta)]^n \quad \text{or} \quad r^n(\cos n\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin n\theta).$$

You will prove DeMoivre's Theorem in Lesson 10-4.

Example 6 DeMoivre's Theorem

Find $\left(4 + 4\sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i}\right)^6$, and express it in rectangular form.

First, write $4 + 4\sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i}$ in polar form.

$$\begin{aligned} r &= \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} && \text{Conversion formula} && \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a} \\ &= \sqrt{4^2 + (4\sqrt{3})^2} && a = 4 \text{ and } b = 4\sqrt{3} && = \tan^{-1}\frac{4\sqrt{3}}{4} \\ &= \sqrt{16 + 48} && \text{Simplify.} && = \tan^{-1}\sqrt{3} \\ &= 8 && \text{Simplify.} && = \frac{\pi}{3} \end{aligned}$$

The polar form of $4 + 4\sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i}$ is $8\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$.

Now use DeMoivre's Theorem to find the sixth power.

$$\begin{aligned} (4 + 4\sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i})^6 &= \left[8\left(\cos\frac{\pi}{3} + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right]^6 && \text{Original equation} \\ &= 8^6\left[\cos 6\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 6\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right] && \text{DeMoivre's Theorem} \\ &= 262{,}144(\cos 2\pi + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 2\pi) && \text{Simplify.} \\ &= 262{,}144(1 + 0\boldsymbol{i}) && \text{Evaluate.} \\ &= 262{,}144 && \text{Simplify.} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $(4 + 4\sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i})^6 = 262{,}144$.

GuidedPractice

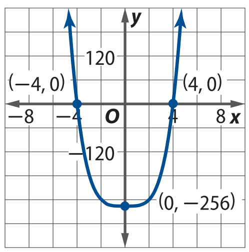
Find each power, and express it in rectangular form.

6A. $(1 + \sqrt{3}\boldsymbol{i})^4$

6B. $(2\sqrt{3} - 2\boldsymbol{i})^8$

Mohammed Bin Rashid

In the real number system, $x^4 = 256$ has two solutions, 4 and -4. The graph of $y = x^4 - 256$ shows that there are two real zeros at $x = 4$ and -4. In the complex number system, however, there are two real solutions and two complex solutions.



Through the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra polynomials of degree n have exactly n zeros in the complex number system. Therefore, the equation $x^4 = 256$, rewritten as $x^4 - 256 = 0$, has exactly four solutions, or roots: 4, -4, $4\boldsymbol{i}$, and $-4\boldsymbol{i}$. In general, all nonzero complex numbers have p distinct pth roots. That is, they each have two square roots, three cube roots, four fourth roots, and so on.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

ReviewVocabulary

Fundamental Theorem of Algebra A polynomial function of degree n, where $n > 0$, has at least one zero (real or imaginary) in the complex number system.

To find all of the roots of a polynomial, we can use DeMoivre's Theorem to arrive at the following expression.

KeyConcept Distinct Roots

For a positive integer p, the complex number $r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ has p distinct pth roots. They are found by

$$r^{\frac{1}{p}}\left(\cos\frac{\theta + 2n\pi}{p} + i\sin\frac{\theta + 2n\pi}{p}\right),$$

where $n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, p - 1$.

We can use this formula for the different values of n, but we can stop when $n = p - 1$. When n equals or exceeds p, the roots repeat as the following shows.

$$\frac{\theta + 2\pi p}{p} = \frac{\theta}{p} + 2\pi \qquad \text{Coterminal with } \frac{\theta}{p}\text{, when } n = 0$$

Example 7 *p*th Roots of a Complex Number

Find the fourth roots of $-4 - 4i$.

First, write $-4 - 4i$ in polar form.

$$-4 - 4i = 4\sqrt{2}\left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) \qquad r = \sqrt{(-4)^2 + (-4)^2} \text{ or } 4\sqrt{2};\ \theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{-4}{-4} + \pi \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{4}$$

Now write an expression for the fourth roots.

$$(4\sqrt{2})^{\frac{1}{4}}\left(\cos\frac{\frac{5\pi}{4} + 2n\pi}{4} + i\sin\frac{\frac{5\pi}{4} + 2n\pi}{4}\right) \qquad \theta = \frac{5\pi}{4},\ p = 4, \text{ and } r^{\frac{1}{p}} = (4\sqrt{2})^{\frac{1}{4}}$$

$$= \sqrt[8]{32}\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{n\pi}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{n\pi}{2}\right)\right] \qquad \text{Simplify.}$$

Let $n = 0, 1, 2,$ and 3 successively to find the fourth roots.

Let $n = 0$. $\sqrt[8]{32}\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(0)\pi}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(0)\pi}{2}\right)\right]$ — Distinct Roots

$= \sqrt[8]{32}\left(\cos\frac{5\pi}{16} + i\sin\frac{5\pi}{16}\right)$ or $0.86 + 1.28i$ — First fourth root

Let $n = 1$. $\sqrt[8]{32}\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(1)\pi}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(1)\pi}{2}\right)\right]$

$= \sqrt[8]{32}\left(\cos\frac{13\pi}{16} + i\sin\frac{13\pi}{16}\right)$ or $-1.28 + 0.86i$ — Second fourth root

Let $n = 2$. $\sqrt[8]{32}\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(2)\pi}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(2)\pi}{2}\right)\right]$

$= \sqrt[8]{32}\left(\cos\frac{21\pi}{16} + i\sin\frac{21\pi}{16}\right)$ or $-0.86 - 1.28i$ — Third fourth root

Let $n = 3$. $\sqrt[8]{32}\left[\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(3)\pi}{2}\right) + i\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{16} + \frac{(3)\pi}{2}\right)\right]$

$= \sqrt[8]{32}\left(\cos\frac{29\pi}{16} + i\sin\frac{29\pi}{16}\right)$ or $1.28 - 0.86i$ — Fourth fourth root

The fourth roots of $-4 - 4i$ are approximately $0.86 + 1.28i$, $-1.28 + 0.86i$, $-0.86 - 1.28i$, and $1.28 - 0.86i$.

GuidedPractice

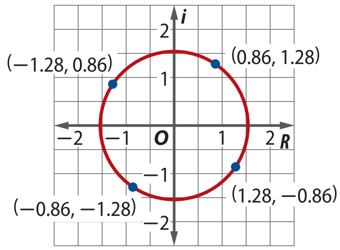
7A. Find the cube roots of $2 + 2i$.

7B. Find the fifth roots of $4\sqrt{3} - 4i$.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

We can make observations about the distinct roots of a number by graphing the roots on a coordinate plane. As shown at the right, the four fourth roots found in Example 7 lie on a circle. If we look at the polar form of each complex number, each has the same modulus of $\sqrt[8]{32}$, which acts as the radius of the circle. The roots are also equally spaced around the circle as a result of the arguments differing by $\frac{\pi}{2}$.



A special case of finding roots occurs when finding the pth roots of 1. When 1 is written in polar form, $r = 1$. As mentioned in the previous paragraph, the modulus of our roots is the radius of the circle that is formed from plotting the roots on a coordinate plane. Thus, the pth roots of 1 lie on the unit circle. Finding the pth roots of 1 is referred to as finding the ***p*th roots of unity**.

StudyTip

The *p*th Roots of a Complex Number Each root will have the same modulus of $r^{\frac{1}{p}}$. The argument of the first root is $\frac{\theta}{p}$, and each successive root is found by repeatedly adding $\frac{2\pi}{p}$ to the argument.

Example 8 The *p*th Roots of Unity

Find the eighth roots of unity.

First, write 1 in polar form.

$1 = 1 \cdot (\cos 0 + \boldsymbol{i} \sin 0)$ — $r = \sqrt{1^2 + 0^2}$ or 1 and $\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{0}{1}$ or 0

Now write an expression for the eighth roots.

$1\left(\cos \frac{0 + 2n\pi}{8} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{0 + 2n\pi}{8}\right)$ — $\theta = 0$, $p = 8$, and $r^{\frac{1}{p}} = 1^{\frac{1}{8}}$ or 1

$= \cos \frac{n\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{n\pi}{4}$ — Simplify.

Let $n = 0$ to find the first root of 1.

$\boldsymbol{n = 0} \qquad \cos \frac{(0)\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{(0)\pi}{4}$ — Distinct Roots

$= \cos 0 + \boldsymbol{i} \sin 0$ or 1 — First root

Notice that the modulus of each complex number is 1. The arguments are found by $\frac{n\pi}{4}$, resulting in θ increasing by $\frac{\pi}{4}$ for each successive root. Therefore, we can calculate the remaining roots by adding $\frac{\pi}{4}$ to each previous θ.

$\cos 0 + \boldsymbol{i} \sin 0$ or 1 — 1st root

$\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{\pi}{4}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$ — 2nd root

$\cos \frac{\pi}{2} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{\pi}{2}$ or $\boldsymbol{i}$ — 3rd root

$\cos \frac{3\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{3\pi}{4}$ or $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$ — 4th root

$\cos \pi + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \pi$ or -1 — 5th root

$\cos \frac{5\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{5\pi}{4}$ or $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$ — 6th root

$\cos \frac{3\pi}{2} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{3\pi}{2}$ or $-\boldsymbol{i}$ — 7th root

$\cos \frac{7\pi}{4} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{7\pi}{4}$ or $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$ — 8th root

The eighth roots of 1 are 1, $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$, $\boldsymbol{i}$, $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$, -1, $-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$, $-\boldsymbol{i}$, and $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$ as shown in Figure 8.5.1.

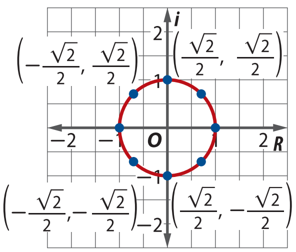


Figure 8.5.1

GuidedPractice

8A. Find the cube roots of unity.

8B. Find the seventh roots of unity.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Exercises

Graph each number in the complex plane, and find its absolute value. (Example 1)

1. $z = 4 + 4i$
2. $z = -3 + i$
3. $z = -4 - 6i$
4. $z = 2 - 5i$
5. $z = 3 + 4i$
6. $z = -7 + 5i$
7. $z = -3 - 7i$
8. $z = 8 - 2i$

9. **VECTORS** The force on an object is given by $z = 10 + 15i$, where the components are measured in newtons (N). (Example 1)
   a. Represent z as a vector in the complex plane.
   b. Find the magnitude and direction angle of the vector.

Express each complex number in polar form. (Example 2)

10. $4 + 4i$
11. $-2 + i$
12. $4 - \sqrt{2}i$
13. $2 - 2i$
14. $4 + 5i$
15. $-2 + 4i$
16. $-1 - \sqrt{3}i$
17. $3 + 3i$

Graph each complex number on a polar grid. Then express it in rectangular form. (Example 3)

18. $10(\cos 6 + i \sin 6)$
19. $2(\cos 3 + i \sin 3)$
20. $4\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
21. $3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
22. $\left(\cos \frac{11\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$
23. $2\left(\cos \frac{4\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$
24. $-3(\cos 180^\circ + i \sin 180^\circ)$
25. $\frac{3}{2}(\cos 360^\circ + i \sin 360^\circ)$

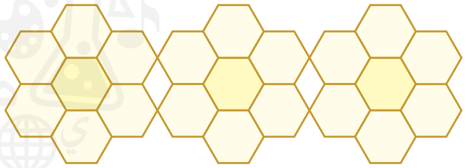
Find each product or quotient, and express it in rectangular form. (Examples 4 and 5)

26. $6\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \cdot 4\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
27. $5(\cos 135^\circ + i \sin 135^\circ) \cdot 2\,(\cos 45^\circ + i \sin 45^\circ)$
28. $3\left(\cos \frac{3\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) \div \frac{1}{2}(\cos \pi + i \sin \pi)$
29. $2(\cos 90^\circ + i \sin 90^\circ) \cdot 2(\cos 270^\circ + i \sin 270^\circ)$
30. $3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right) \div 4\left(\cos \frac{2\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$
31. $4\left(\cos \frac{9\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{9\pi}{4}\right) \div 2\left(\cos \frac{3\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$
32. $\frac{1}{2}(\cos 60^\circ + i \sin 60^\circ) \cdot 6(\cos 150^\circ + i \sin 150^\circ)$
33. $6\left(\cos \frac{3\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{3\pi}{4}\right) \div 2\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
34. $5(\cos 180^\circ + i \sin 180^\circ) \cdot 2(\cos 135^\circ + i \sin 135^\circ)$
35. $\frac{1}{2}\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \div 3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

Find each power, and express it in rectangular form. (Example 6)

36. $(2 + 2\sqrt{3}i)^6$
37. $(12i - 5)^3$
38. $\left[4\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right]^4$
39. $(\sqrt{3} - i)^3$
40. $(3 - 5i)^4$
41. $(2 + 4i)^4$
42. $(3 - 6i)^4$
43. $(2 + 3i)^2$
44. $\left[3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right]^3$
45. $\left[2\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right]^4$

46. **DESIGN** Suha works for an advertising agency. She wants to incorporate a design comprised of regular hexagons as the artwork for one of her proposals. Suha can locate the vertices of one of the central regular hexagons by graphing the solutions to $x^6 - 1 = 0$ in the complex plane. Find the vertices of this hexagon. (Example 7)



Find all of the distinct *p*th roots of the complex number. (Examples 7 and 8)

47. sixth roots of i
48. fifth roots of $-i$
49. fourth roots of $4\sqrt{3} - 4i$
50. cube roots of $-117 + 44i$
51. fifth roots of $-1 + 11\sqrt{2}i$
52. square root of $-3 - 4i$
53. find the square roots of unity
54. find the fourth roots of unity

55. **ELECTRICITY** The impedance in one part of a series circuit is $5(\cos 0.9 + j \sin 0.9)$ ohms. In the second part of the circuit, it is $8(\cos 0.4 + j \sin 0.4)$ ohms.
   a. Convert each expression to rectangular form.
   b. Add your answers from part **a** to find the total impedance in the circuit.
   c. Convert the total impedance back to polar form.

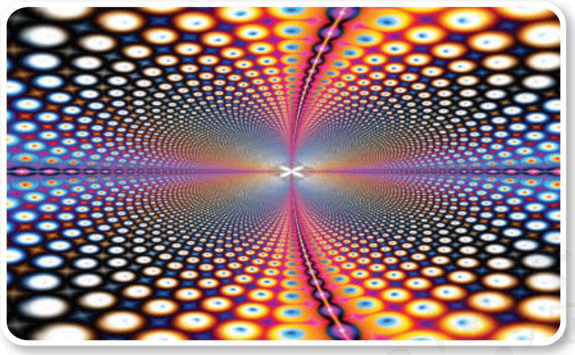
Find each product. Then repeat the process by multiplying the polar forms of each pair of complex numbers using the Product Formula.

56. $(1 - i)(4 + 4i)$
57. $(3 + i)(3 - i)$
58. $(4 + i)(3 - i)$
59. $(-6 + 5i)(2 - 3i)$
60. $(\sqrt{2} + 2i)(1 + i)$
61. $(3 - 2i)(1 + \sqrt{3}i)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

62. **FRACTALS** A *fractal* is a geometric figure that is made up of a pattern that is repeated indefinitely on successively smaller scales, as shown below.



In this problem, you will generate a fractal through iterations of $f(z) = z^2$. Consider $z_0 = 0.8 + 0.5\boldsymbol{i}$.

a. Calculate z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4, z_5, z_6, and z_7 where $z_1 = f(z_0)$, $z_2 = f(z_1)$, and so on.

b. Graph each of the numbers on the complex plane.

c. Predict the location of z_{100}. Explain.

63. **TRANSFORMATIONS** There are certain operations with complex numbers that correspond to geometric transformations in the complex plane. Describe the transformation applied to point z to obtain point w in the complex plane for each of the following operations.

a. $w = z + (3 - 4\boldsymbol{i})$

b. w is the complex conjugate of z.

c. $w = \boldsymbol{i} \cdot z$

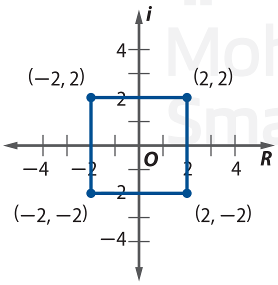
d. $w = 0.25z$

Find z and the pth roots of z given each of the following.

64. $p = 3$, one cube root is $\frac{5}{2} - \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{2}\boldsymbol{i}$

65. $p = 4$, one fourth root is $-1 - \boldsymbol{i}$

66. **GRAPHICS** By representing each vertex by a complex number in polar form, a programmer dilates and then rotates the square below 45° counterclockwise so that the new vertices lie at the midpoints of the sides of the original square.



a. By what complex number should the programmer multiply each number to produce this transformation?

b. What happens if the numbers representing the original vertices are multiplied by the square of your answer to part **a**?

Use the Distinct Roots Formula to find all of the solutions of each equation. Express the solutions in rectangular form.

67. $x^3 = \boldsymbol{i}$

68. $x^3 + 3 = 128$

69. $x^4 = 81\boldsymbol{i}$

70. $x^5 - 1 = 1023$

71. $x^3 + 1 = \boldsymbol{i}$

72. $x^4 - 2 + \boldsymbol{i} = -1$

H.O.T. Problems Use Higher-Order Thinking Skills

73. **ERROR ANALYSIS** Alma and Bilal are evaluating $\left(-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{i}\right)^5$. Alma uses DeMoivre's Theorem and gets an answer of $\cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \frac{5\pi}{6}$. Bilal tells her that she has only completed part of the problem. Is either of them correct? Explain your reasoning.

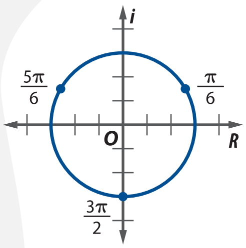
74. **REASONING** Suppose $z = a + b\boldsymbol{i}$ is one of the 29th roots of 1.

a. What is the maximum value of a?

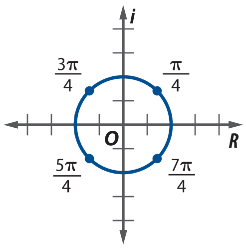
b. What is the maximum value of b?

CHALLENGE **Find the roots shown on each graph and write them in polar form. Then identify the complex number with the given roots.**

75



76.



77. **PROOF** Given $z_1 = r_1(\cos \theta_1 + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \theta_1)$ and $z_2 = r_2(\cos \theta_2 + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \theta_2)$, where $r_2 \neq 0$, prove that $\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}[\cos (\theta_1 - \theta_2) + \boldsymbol{i} \sin (\theta_1 - \theta_2)]$.

REASONING **Determine whether each statement is *sometimes*, *always*, or *never* true. Explain your reasoning.**

78. The pth roots of a complex number z are equally spaced around the circle centered at the origin with radius $r^{\frac{1}{p}}$.

79. The complex conjugate of $z = a + b\boldsymbol{i}$ is $\overline{z} = a - b\boldsymbol{i}$. For any z, $z + \overline{z}$ and $z \cdot \overline{z}$ are real numbers.

80. **OPEN ENDED** Find two complex numbers $a + b\boldsymbol{i}$ in which $a \neq 0$ and $b \neq 0$ with an absolute value of $\sqrt{17}$.

81. **WRITING IN MATH** Explain why the sum of the imaginary parts of the p distinct pth roots of any positive real number must be zero. (*Hint*: The roots are the vertices of a regular polygon.)

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education DAL/George Pappas/Shutterstock.com

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Spiral Review

Write each polar equation in rectangular form. (Lesson 8-4)

82. $r = \dfrac{15}{1 + 4\cos\theta}$

83. $r = \dfrac{14}{2\cos\theta + 2}$

84. $r = \dfrac{-6}{\sin\theta - 2}$

Identify the graph of each rectangular equation. Then write the equation in polar form. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation. (Lesson 8-3)

85. $(x - 3)^2 + y^2 = 9$

86. $x^2 - y^2 = 1$

87. $x^2 + y^2 = 2y$

Graph the conic given by each equation.

88. $y = x^2 + 3x + 1$

89. $y^2 - 2x^2 - 16 = 0$

90. $x^2 + 4y^2 + 2x - 24y + 33 = 0$

Find the center, foci, and vertices of each ellipse.

91. $\dfrac{(x + 8)^2}{9} + \dfrac{(y - 7)^2}{81} = 1$

92. $25x^2 + 4y^2 + 150x + 24y = -161$

93. $4x^2 + 9y^2 - 56x + 108y = -484$

Solve each system of equations using Gauss-Jordan elimination.

94.
$$\begin{aligned} x + y + z &= 12 \\ 6x - 2y - z &= 16 \\ 3x + 4y + 2z &= 28 \end{aligned}$$

95.
$$\begin{aligned} 9g + 7h &= -30 \\ 8h + 5j &= 11 \\ -3g + 10j &= 73 \end{aligned}$$

96.
$$\begin{aligned} 2k - n &= 2 \\ 3p &= 21 \\ 4k + p &= 19 \end{aligned}$$

97. POPULATION In the beginning of 2008, the world's population was about 6.7 billion. If the world's population grows continuously at a rate of 2%, the future population P, in billions, can be predicted by $P = 6.5e^{0.02t}$, where t is the time in years since 2008.

a. According to this model, what will be the world's population in 2018?

b. Some experts have estimated that the world's food supply can support a population of at most 18 billion people. According to this model, for how many more years will the food supply be able to support the trend in world population growth?

Skills Review for Standardized Tests

98. SAT/ACT The graph on the xy-plane of the quadratic function g is a parabola with vertex at $(3, -2)$. If $g(0) = 0$, then which of the following must also equal 0?

A $g(2)$

B $g(3)$

C $g(4)$

D $g(6)$

E $g(7)$

99. Which of the following expresses the complex number $20 - 21\boldsymbol{i}$ in polar form?

F $29(\cos 5.47 + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 5.47)$

G $29(\cos 5.52 + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 5.52)$

H $32(\cos 5.47 + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 5.47)$

J $32(\cos 5.52 + \boldsymbol{i}\sin 5.52)$

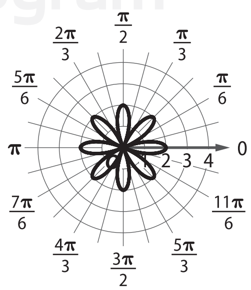
100. FREE RESPONSE Consider the graph at the right.

a. Give a possible equation for the function.

b. Describe the symmetries of the graph.

c. Give the zeroes of the function over the domain $0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$.

d. What is the minimum value of r over the domain $0 \le \theta \le 2\pi$?



برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

CHAPTER 8

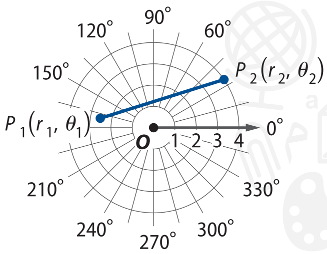
Study Guide and Review

Chapter Summary

KeyConcepts

Polar Coordinates (Lesson 8-1)

- In the polar coordinate system, a point (r, θ) is located using its directed distance r and directed angle θ.
- The distance between $P_1(r_1, \theta_1)$ and $P_2(r_2, \theta_2)$ in the polar plane is $P_1P_2 = \sqrt{r_1^2 + r_2^2 - 2r_1r_2 \cos(\theta_2 - \theta_1)}$.



Graphs of Polar Equations (Lesson 8-2)

- Circle: $r = a \cos \theta$ or $r = a \sin \theta$
- Limaçon: $r = a \pm b \cos \theta$ or $r = a \pm b \sin \theta$, $a > 0$, $b > 0$
- Rose: $r = a \cos n\theta$ or $r = a \sin n\theta$, $n \geq 2$, $n \in \mathbb{Z}$
- Lemniscate: $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ or $r^2 = a^2 \sin 2\theta$
- Spirals of Archimedes: $r = a\theta + b$, $\theta \geq 0$

Polar and Rectangular Forms of Equations (Lesson 8-3)

- A point $P(r, \theta)$ has rectangular coordinates $(r \cos \theta, r \sin \theta)$.
- To convert a point $P(x, y)$ from rectangular to polar coordinates, use the equations $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x}$, when $x > 0$ or $\theta = \tan^{-1} \frac{y}{x} + \pi$, when $x < 0$.

Polar Forms of Conic Sections (Lesson 8-4)

- The polar equation of a conic section is of the form $r = \frac{ed}{1 \pm e \cos \theta}$ or $r = \frac{ed}{1 \pm e \sin \theta}$, depending on the location and orientation of the directrix.

Complex Numbers and DeMoivre's Theorem (Lesson 8-5)

- The polar or trigonometric form of the complex number $a + bi$ is $r(\cos \theta + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \theta)$.
- The product formula for two complex numbers z_1 and z_2 is $z_1z_2 = r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1 + \theta_2) + \boldsymbol{i} \sin(\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$.
- The quotient formula for two complex numbers z_1 and z_2 is $\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}[\cos(\theta_1 - \theta_2) + \boldsymbol{i} \sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)]$, where z_2 and $r_2 \neq 0$.
- DeMoivre's Theorem states that if the polar form of a complex number is $z = r(\cos \theta + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \theta)$, then $z^n = r^n(\cos n\theta + \boldsymbol{i} \sin n\theta)$ for positive integers n.

KeyVocabulary

absolute value of a complex number
Argand plane
argument
cardioid
complex plane
imaginary axis
lemniscate
limaçon
modulus
polar axis
polar coordinate system
polar coordinates
polar equation
polar form
polar graph
pole
*p*th roots of unity
real axis
rose
spiral of Archimedes
trigonometric form

VocabularyCheck

Choose the correct term from the list above to complete each sentence.

1. A(n) ____________ is the set of all points with coordinates (r, θ) that satisfy a given polar equation.

2. A plane that has an axis for the real component and an axis for the imaginary component is a(n) ____________.

3. The location of a point in the ____________ is identified using the directed distance from a fixed point and the angle from a fixed axis.

4. A special type of limaçon with equation of the form $r = a + b \cos \theta$ where $a = b$ is called a(n) ____________.

5. The ____________ is the angle θ of a complex number written in the form $r(\cos \theta + \boldsymbol{i} \sin \theta)$.

6. The origin of a polar coordinate system is called the ____________.

7. The absolute value of a complex number is also called the ____________.

8. The ____________ is another name for the complex plane.

9. The graph of a polar equation of the form $r^2 = a^2 \cos 2\theta$ or $r^2 = a^2 \sin 2\theta$ is called a(n) ____________.

10. The ____________ is an initial ray from the pole, usually horizontal and directed toward the right.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Lesson-by-Lesson Review

8-1 Polar Coordinates

Graph each point on a polar grid.

11. $W(-0.5, 210°)$ **12.** $X\left(1.5, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$

13. $Y(4, -120°)$ **14.** $Z\left(-3, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$

Graph each polar equation.

15. $\theta = -60°$ **16.** $r = \frac{9}{2}$

17. $r = 7$ **18.** $\theta = \frac{11\pi}{6}$

Find the distance between each pair of points.

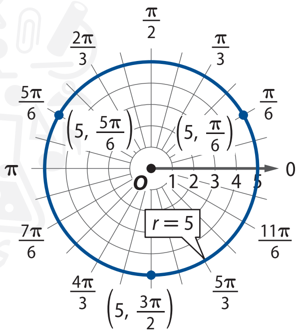
19. $\left(5, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(2, -\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ **20.** $(-3, 60°), (4, 240°)$

21. $(-1, -45°), (6, 270°)$ **22.** $\left(7, \frac{5\pi}{6}\right), \left(2, \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$

Example 1

Graph $r = 5$.

The solutions of $r = 5$ are ordered pairs of the form $(5, \theta)$ where θ is any real number. The graph consists of all points that are 5 units from the pole, so the graph is a circle centered at the pole with radius 5.



8-2 Graphs of Polar Equations

Use symmetry, zeros, and maximum *r*-values to graph each function.

23. $r = \sin 3\theta$ **24.** $r = 2\cos\theta$

25. $r = 5\cos 2\theta$ **26.** $r = 4\sin 4\theta$

27. $r = 2 + 2\cos\theta$ **28.** $r = 1.5\theta, \theta \geq 0$

Use symmetry to graph each equation.

29. $r = 2 - \sin\theta$ **30.** $r = 1 + 5\cos\theta$

31. $r = 3 - 2\cos\theta$ **32.** $r = 4 + 4\sin\theta$

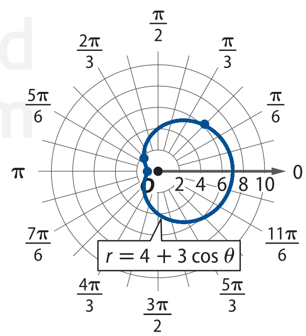
33. $r = -3\sin\theta$ **34.** $r = -5 + 3\cos\theta$

Example 2

Use symmetry to graph $r = 4 + 3\cos\theta$.

Replacing (r, θ) with $(r, -\theta)$ yields $r = 4 + 3\cos(-\theta)$, which simplifies to $r = 4 + 3\cos\theta$ because cosine is even. The equations are equivalent, so the graph of this equation is symmetric with respect to the polar axis. Therefore, you can make a table of values to find the *r*-values corresponding to θ on the interval $[0, \pi]$.

θ	r
0	7
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{8+3\sqrt{2}}{2}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	4
$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$\frac{8-3\sqrt{2}}{2}$
π	1



By plotting these points and using polar axis symmetry, you obtain the graph shown.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Study Guide and Review *Continued*

8-3 Polar and Rectangular Forms

Find two pairs of polar coordinates for each point with the given rectangular coordinates if $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$. Round to the nearest hundredth.

35. $(-1, 5)$

36. $(3, 7)$

37. $(2a, 0)$, $a > 0$

38. $(4b, -6b)$, $b > 0$

Write each equation in rectangular form, and then identify its graph. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

39. $r = 5$

40. $r = -4 \sin \theta$

41. $r = 6 \sec \theta$

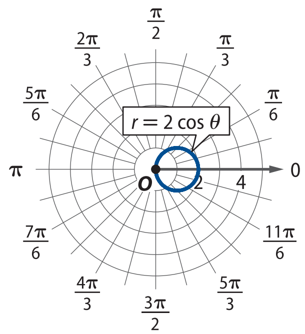
42. $r = \frac{1}{3} \csc \theta$

Example 3

Write $r = 2 \cos \theta$ in rectangular form, and then identify its graph. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

$r = 2 \cos \theta$	Original equation
$r^2 = 2r \cos \theta$	Multiply each side by r.
$x^2 + y^2 = 2x$	$r^2 = x^2 + y^2$ and $x = r \cos \theta$
$x^2 + y^2 - 2x = 0$	Subtract $2x$ from each side.

In standard form, $(x - 1)^2 + y^2 = 1$, you can identify the graph of this equation as a circle centered at (1, 0) with radius 1, as supported by the graph of $r = 2 \cos \theta$.



8-4 Polar Forms of Conic Sections

Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for each polar equation.

43. $r = \frac{3.5}{1 + \sin \theta}$

44. $r = \frac{1.2}{1 + 0.3 \cos \theta}$

45. $r = \frac{14}{1 - 2 \sin \theta}$

46. $r = \frac{6}{1 - \cos \theta}$

Write and graph a polar equation and directrix for the conic with the given characteristics.

47. $e = 0.5$; vertices at $(0, -2)$ and $(0, 6)$

48. $e = 1.5$; directrix: $x = 5$

Write each polar equation in rectangular form.

49. $r = \frac{1.6}{1 - 0.2 \sin \theta}$

50. $r = \frac{5}{1 + \cos \theta}$

Example 4

Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for $r = \frac{7}{3.5 - 3.5 \cos \theta}$.

Write the equation in standard form, $r = \frac{ed}{1 + e \cos \theta}$.

$r = \frac{7}{3.5 - 3.5 \cos \theta}$	Original equation
$r = \frac{3.5(2)}{3.5(1 - \cos \theta)}$	Factor the numerator and denominator.
$r = \frac{2}{1 - \cos \theta}$	Divide the numerator and denominator by 3.5.

In this form, you can see from the denominator that $e = 1$; therefore, the conic is a parabola. For polar equations of this form, the equation of the directrix is $x = -d$. From the numerator, we know that $ed = 2$, so $d = 2 \div 1$ or 2. Therefore, the equation of the directrix is $x = -2$.

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

8-5 Complex Numbers and DeMoivre's Theorem

Graph each number in the complex plane, and find its absolute value.

51. $z = 3 - i$

52. $z = 4i$

53. $z = -4 + 2i$

54. $z = 6 - 3i$

Express each complex number in polar form.

55. $3 + \sqrt{2}i$

56. $-5 + 8i$

57. $-4 - \sqrt{3}i$

58. $\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{2}i$

Graph each complex number on a polar grid. Then express it in rectangular form.

59. $z = 3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

60. $z = 5\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

61. $z = -2\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

62. $z = 4\left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$

Find each product or quotient, and express it in rectangular form.

63. $-2\left(\cos \frac{5\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{5\pi}{6}\right) \cdot -4\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{3} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

64. $8(\cos 225° + i \sin 225°) \cdot \frac{1}{2}(\cos 120° + i \sin 120°)$

65. $5\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{2} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{2}\right) \div \frac{1}{3}\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

66. $6(\cos 210° + i \sin 210°) \div 3(\cos 150° + i \sin 150°)$

Find each power, and express it in rectangular form.

67. $(4 - i)^5$

68. $(\sqrt{2} + 3i)^4$

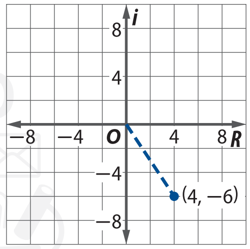
Find all of the distinct pth roots of the complex number.

69. cube roots of $6 - 4i$

70. fourth roots of $1 + i$

Example 5

Graph $4 - 6i$ in the complex plane and express in polar form.



Find the modulus.

$r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ — Conversion formula

$= \sqrt{4^2 + (-6)^2}$ or $2\sqrt{13}$ — $a = 4$ and $b = -6$

Find the argument.

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\frac{b}{a}$ — Conversion formula

$= \tan^{-1}\left(-\frac{6}{4}\right)$ — $a = 4$ and $b = -6$

$= -0.98$ — Simplify.

The polar form of $4 - 6i$ is approximately $2\sqrt{13}\,[\cos(-0.98) + i \sin(-0.98)]$.

Example 6

Find $-3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \cdot 5\left(\cos \frac{7\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ in polar form. Then express the product in rectangular form.

$-3\left(\cos \frac{\pi}{4} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \cdot 5\left(\cos \frac{7\pi}{6} + i \sin \frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$ — Original expression

$= (-3 \cdot 5)\left[\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{7\pi}{6}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{7\pi}{6}\right)\right]$ — Product Formula

$= -15\left[\cos\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right)\right]$ — Simplify.

Now find the rectangular form of the product.

$-15\left[\cos\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right)\right]$ — Polar form

$= -15[-0.26 + i(-0.97)$ — Evaluate.

$= 3.9 + 14.5i$ — Distributive Property

The polar form of the product is $-15\left[\cos\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{17\pi}{12}\right)\right]$

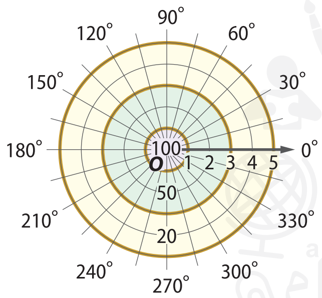
The rectangular form of the product is $3.9 + 14.5i$.

برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Applications and Problem Solving

71. GAMES An arcade game consists of rolling a ball up an incline at a target. The region in which the ball lands determines the number of points earned. The model shows the point value for each region. (Lesson 8-1)



a. If, on a turn, a player rolls the ball to the point (3.5, 165°), how many points does he get?

b. Give two possible locations that a player will receive 50 points.

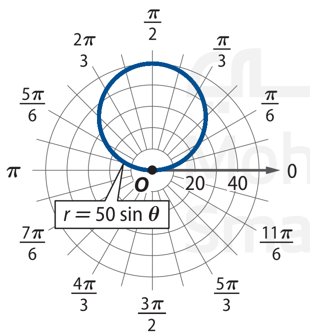
72. LANDSCAPING A landscaping company uses an adjustable lawn sprinkler that can rotate 360° and can cover a circular region with radius of 20 meters. (Lesson 8-1)

a. Graph the dimensions of the region that the sprinkler can cover on a polar grid if it is set to rotate 360°.

b. Find the area of the region that the sprinkler covers if the rotation is adjusted to $-30° \leq \theta \leq 210°$.

73. BIOLOGY The pattern on the shell of a snail can be modeled using $r = \frac{1}{3}\theta + \frac{1}{2}$, $\theta \geq 0$. Identify and graph the classic curve that models this pattern. (Lesson 8-2)

74. RIDES The path of a Ferris wheel can be modeled by $r = 50 \sin \theta$, where r is given in meters. (Lesson 8-3)



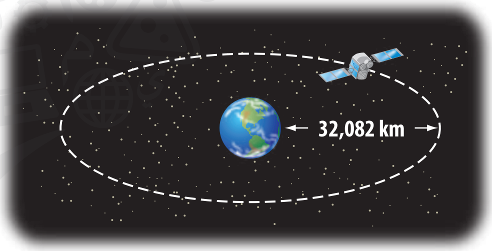
a. What are the polar coordinates of a rider located at $\theta = \frac{\pi}{12}$? Round to the nearest tenth, if necessary.

b. What are the rectangular coordinates of the rider's location? Round to the nearest tenth, if necessary.

c. What is the rider's distance above the ground if the polar axis represents the ground?

75. ORIENTEERING Orienteering requires participants to make their way through an area using a topographic map. One orienteer starts at Checkpoint A and walks 5000 meters at an angle of 35° measured clockwise from due east. A second orienteer starts at Checkpoint A and walks 3000 meters due west and then 2000 meters due north. How far, to the nearest meter, are the two orienteers from each other? (Lesson 8-3)

76. SATELLITE The orbit of a satellite around Earth has eccentricity of 0.05, and the distance from a vertex of the path to the center of Earth is 32,082 kilometers. Write a polar equation that can be used to model the path of the satellite if Earth is located at the focus closest to the given vertex. (Lesson 8-4)

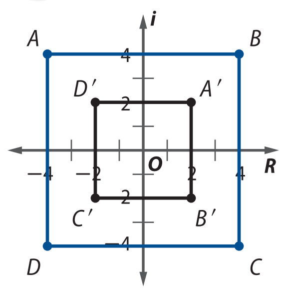


77. ELECTRICITY Most circuits in Europe are designed to accommodate 220 volts. For parts **a** and **b**, use $E = I \cdot Z$, where voltage E is measured in volts, impedance Z is measured in ohms, and current I is measured in amps. Round to the nearest tenth. (Lesson 8-5)

a. If the circuit has a current of $2 + 5\boldsymbol{j}$ amps, what is the impedance?

b. If a circuit has an impedance of $1 - 3\boldsymbol{j}$ ohms, what is the current?

78. COMPUTER GRAPHICS Geometric transformation of figures can be performed using complex numbers. If a programmer starts with square $ABCD$, as shown below, each of the vertices can be represented by a complex number in polar form. Multiplication can then be used to rotate and dilate the square, producing the square $A'B'C'D'$. By what complex number should the programmer multiply each number to produce this transformation? (Lesson 8-5)

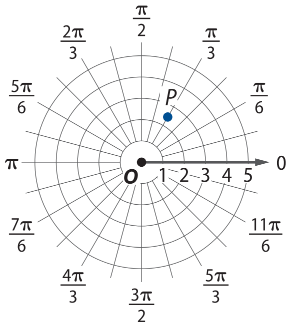


Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

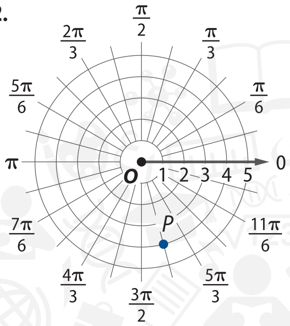
CHAPTER 8 Practice Test

Find four different pairs of polar coordinates that name point P if $-2\pi \le \theta \le 2\pi$.

1.



2.



Graph each polar equation.

3. $\theta = 30°$

4. $r = 1$

5. $r = 2.5$

6. $\theta = \frac{5\pi}{3}$

7. $r = \frac{2}{3}\sin\theta$

8. $r = -\frac{1}{2}\sec\theta$

9. $r = -4\csc\theta$

10. $r = 2\cos\theta$

Identify and graph each classic curve.

11. $r = 1.5 + 1.5\cos\theta$

12. $r^2 = 6.25\sin 2\theta$

13. RADAR An air traffic controller is tracking an airplane with a current location of (66, 115°). The value of r is given in kilometers.

a. What are the rectangular coordinates of the airplane? Round to the nearest tenth kilometers.

b. If a second plane is located at the point (50, −75), what are the polar coordinates of the plane if $r > 0$ and $0 \le \theta \le 360°$? Round to the nearest kilometers and the nearest tenth of a degree, if necessary.

c. What is the distance between the two planes? Round to the nearest kilometers.

Identify the graph of each rectangular equation. Then write the equation in polar form. Support your answer by graphing the polar form of the equation.

14. $(x - 7)^2 + y^2 = 49$

15. $y = 3x^2$

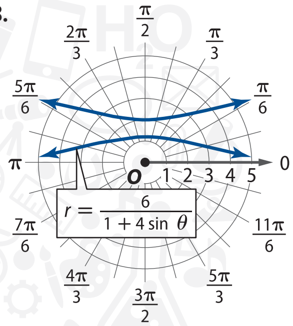
Determine the eccentricity, type of conic, and equation of the directrix for each polar equation.

16. $r = \frac{2}{1 - 0.4\sin\theta}$

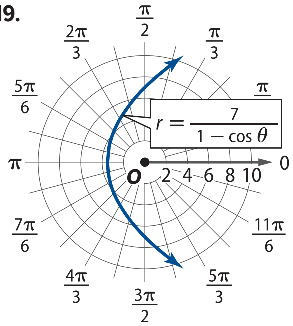
17. $r = \frac{6}{2\cos\theta + 1}$

Write the equation for each polar graph in rectangular form.

18.



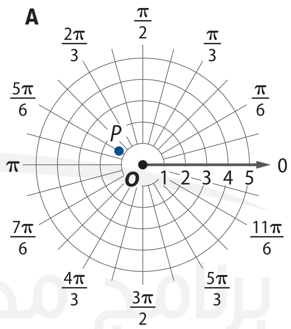
19.



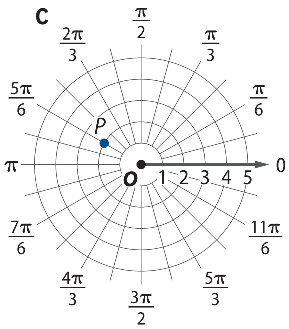
20. ELECTRICITY If a circuit has a voltage E of 135 volts and a current I of $3 - 4j$ amps, find the impedance Z of the circuit in ohms in rectangular form. Use the equation $E = I \cdot Z$.

21. MULTIPLE CHOICE Identify the graph of point P with complex coordinates $(-\sqrt{3}, -1)$ on the polar coordinate plane.

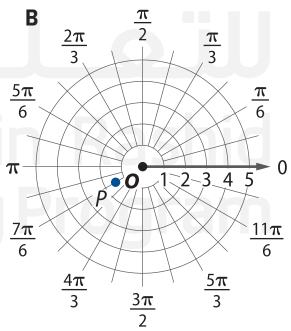
A



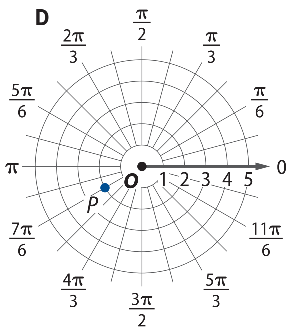
C



B



D



Find each power, and express it in rectangular form. Round to the nearest tenth.

22. $(-1 + 4i)^3$

23. $(-7 - 3i)^5$

24. $(6 + i)^4$

25. $(2 - 5i)^6$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

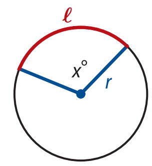
CHAPTER 8

Connect to AP Calculus
Arc Length

:: Objective

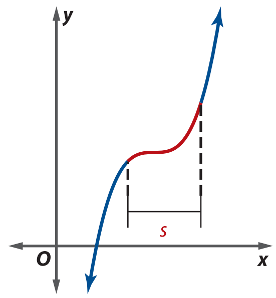
- Approximate the arc length of a curve.

You can find the length of a line segment by using the Distance Formula. You can find the length of an arc by using proportions. In calculus, you will need to calculate many lengths that are not represented by line segments or sections of a circle.

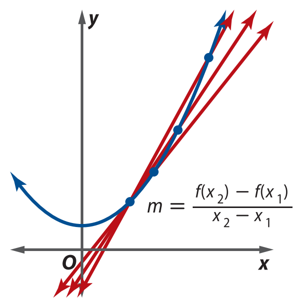


$$\frac{\ell}{2\pi r} = \frac{x}{360}$$

Integral calculus focuses on areas, volumes, and lengths. It can be used to find the length of a curve for which we do not have a standard equation, such as a curve defined by a quadratic, cubic, or polar function. *Riemann sums* and *definite integrals*, two concepts that you will learn more about in the following chapters, are needed to calculate the exact length of a curve, or *arc length*, denoted *s*.



In this lesson, we will approximate the arc length of a curve using a process similar to the method that you applied to approximate the rate of change at a point. Recall that in Chapter 1, you calculated the slopes of secant lines to approximate the rates of change for graphs at specific points. Decreasing the distance between the two points on the secant lines increased the accuracy of the approximations as shown in the graph at the right.



Activity 1 Approximate Arc Length

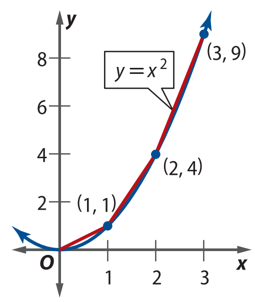
Approximate the arc length of the graph of $y = x^2$ for $0 \le x \le 3$.

Step 1 Graph $y = x^2$ for $0 \le x \le 3$ as shown.

Step 2 Graph points on the curve at $x = 1$, 2, and 3. Connect the points using line segments as shown.

Step 3 Use the Distance Formula to find the length of each line segment.

Step 4 Approximate the length of the arc by finding the sum of the lengths of the line segments.



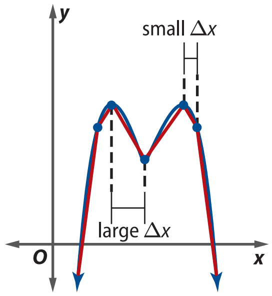
Analyze the Results

1. Is your approximation *greater* or *less* than the actual length? Explain your reasoning.
2. Approximate the arc length a second time using 6 line segments that are formed by the points $x = 0$, 0.5, 1.0, 1.5, 2.0, 2.5, and 3.0. Include a sketch of the graph with your approximation.
3. Describe what happens to the approximation for the arc length as shorter line segments are used.
4. For the two approximations, the endpoints of the line segments were equally spaced along the *x*-axis. Do you think this will always produce the most accurate approximation? Explain your reasoning.

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Notice that for the first activity, the endpoints of the line segments were equally spaced 0.5 units apart along the x-axis. When using advanced methods of calculus to find *exact* arc length, a constant difference between a pair of endpoints along the x-axis is essential. This difference is denoted Δx.

Accurately approximating arc length by using a constant Δx to create the line segments may not always be the most efficient method. The shape of the arc will dictate the spacing of the endpoints, thus creating different values for Δx. For example, if a graph shows an increase or decrease over a large interval for x, a large line segment may be used for the approximation. If a graph includes a turning point, it is better to use small line segments to account for the curve in the graph.



Previously, you learned how to calculate the distance between polar coordinates. This formula can be used to approximate the arc length of a curve represented by a polar equation.

Activity 2 Approximate Arc Length

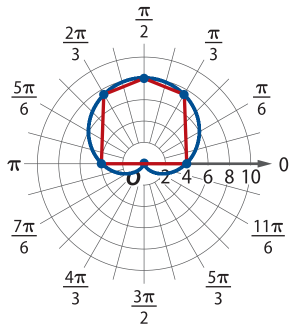
Approximate the arc length of the graph of $r = 4 + 4 \sin \theta$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

Step 1 Graph $r = 4 + 4 \sin \theta$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ as shown.

Step 2 Draw 6 points on the curve at $\theta = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \pi$, and $\frac{3\pi}{2}$. Connect the points using line segments as shown.

Step 3 Use the Polar Distance Formula to find the length of each line segment.

Step 4 Approximate the length of the arc by finding the sum of the lengths of the line segments.



StudyTip

Polar Graphs Create a table of values for r and θ when calculating the arc length for a polar graph. This will help to reduce errors created by functions that produce negative values for r.

Analyze the Results

5. Explain how symmetry can be used to reduce the number of calculations in Step 3.

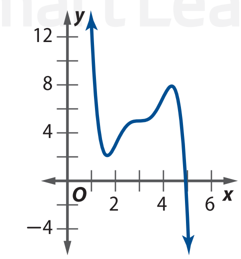
6. Approximate the arc length using at least 10 segments. Include a sketch of the graph.

7. Let n be the number of line segments used in an approximation and $\Delta\theta$ be a constant difference in θ between the endpoints of a line segment. Make a conjecture regarding the relationship between n, θ, and the approximation for an arc length.

Model and Apply

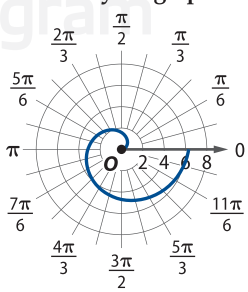
Approximate the arc length for each graph. Include a sketch of your graph.

8.



$y = -(x - 3)^5 + 3(x - 3)^3 + 5$
for $1 \leq x \leq 5$

9.



$r = \theta$ for $0 \leq \theta \leq 2\pi$

Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Student Handbook

Symbols, Formulas, and Key Concepts

Statistical Tables

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Symbols

Algebra

$\neq$	is not equal to
$\approx$	is approximately equal to
$\sim$	is similar to
$>, \geq$	is greater than, is greater than or equal to
$<, \leq$	is less than, is less than or equal to
$-a$	opposite or additive inverse of a
$\|a\|$	absolute value of a
$\sqrt{a}$	principal square root of a
$a : b$	ratio of a to b
(x, y)	ordered pair
(x, y, z)	ordered triple
i	the imaginary unit
$b^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{b}$	nth root of b
$\mathbb{Q}$	rational numbers
$\mathbb{I}$	irrational numbers
$\mathbb{Z}$	integers
$\mathbb{W}$	whole numbers
$\mathbb{N}$	natural numbers
∞	infinity
$-\infty$	negative infinity
[ ]	endpoint included
( )	endpoints not included
$\log_b x$	logarithm base b of x
$\log x$	common logarithm of x
$\ln x$	natural logarithm of x
ω	omega, angular speed
α	alpha, angle measure
β	beta, angle measure
γ	gamma, angle measure
θ	theta, angle measure
λ	lambda, wavelength
ϕ	phi, angle measure
$\mathbf{a}$	vector **a**
$\|\mathbf{a}\|$	magnitude of vector **a**

Sets and Logic

$\in$	is an element of
$\subset$	is a subset of
$\cap$	intersection
$\cup$	union
$\varnothing$	empty set
$\sim p$	negation of p, not p
$p \wedge q$	conjunction of p and q
$p \vee q$	disjunction of p and q
$p \longrightarrow q$	conditional statement, if p then q
$p \longleftrightarrow q$	biconditional statement, p if and only if q

Geometry

$\angle$	angle
$\triangle$	triangle
$^\circ$	degree
π	pi
$\measuredangle$	angles
$m\angle A$	degree measure of $\angle A$
$\overleftrightarrow{AB}$	line containing points A and B
$\overline{AB}$	segment with endpoints A and B
$\overrightarrow{AB}$	ray with endpoint A containing B
AB	measure of $\overline{AB}$, distance between points A and B
$\parallel$	is parallel to
$\nparallel$	is not parallel to
$\perp$	is perpendicular to
$\triangle$	triangle
$\square$	parallelogram
n-gon	polygon with n sides
$\vec{a}$	vector a
$\overrightarrow{AB}$	vector from A to B
$\|\overrightarrow{AB}\|$	magnitude of the vector from A to B
A'	the image of preimage A
$\rightarrow$	is mapped onto
$\odot A$	circle with center A
$\widehat{AB}$	minor arc with endpoints A and B
$\widehat{ABC}$	major arc with endpoints A and C
$m\widehat{AB}$	degree measure of arc AB

Trigonometry

$\sin x$	sine of x
$\cos x$	cosine of x
$\tan x$	tangent of x
$\sin^{-1} x$	Arcsin x
$\cos^{-1} x$	Arccos x
$\tan^{-1} x$	Arctan x

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Symbols

Functions

$f(x)$	f of x, the value of f at x
$f(x) = \{$	piecewise-defined function
$f(x) = \lvert x \rvert$	absolute value function
$f(x) = [\![x]\!]$	function of greatest integer not greater than x
$f(x, y)$	f of x and y, a function with two variables, x and y
$[f \circ g](x)$	f of g of x, the composition of functions f and g
$f^{-1}(x)$	inverse of $f(x)$

Calculus

$\lim\limits_{x \to c}$	limit as x approaches c
m_{sec}	slope of a secant line
$f'(x)$	derivative of $f(x)$
Δ	delta, change
$\int$	indefinite integral
$\int_a^b$	definite integral
$F(x)$	antiderivative of $f(x)$

Probability and Statistics

$P(a)$	probability of a
$P(n, r)$ or ${}_nP_r$	permutation of n objects taken r at a time
$C(n, r)$ or ${}_nC_r$	combination of n objects taken r at a time
$P(A)$	probability of A
$P(A \mid B)$	the probability of A given that B has already occurred
$n!$	Factorial of n (n being a natural number)
Σ	sigma (uppercase), summation
μ	mu, population mean
σ	sigma (lowercase), population standard deviation
σ^2	population variance
s	sample standard deviation
s^2	sample variance
$\sum\limits_{n=1}^{k}$	summation from $n = 1$ to k
$\bar{x}$	x-bar, sample mean
H_0	null hypothesis
H_a	alternative hypothesis

Measures

Metric	Customary
Length	
1 kilometer (km) = 1000 meters (m) 1 meter = 100 centimeters (cm) 1 centimeter = 10 millimeters (mm)	1 mile (mi) = 1760 yards (yd) 1 mile = 5280 feet (ft) 1 yard = 3 feet 1 foot = 12 inches (in) 1 yard = 36 inches
Volume and Capacity	
1 liter (L) = 1000 milliliters (mL) 1 kiloliter (kL) = 1000 liters	1 gallon (gal) = 4 quarts (qt) 1 gallon = 128 fluid ounces (fl oz) 1 quart = 2 pints (pt) 1 pint = 2 cups (c) 1 cup = 8 fluid ounces
Weight and Mass	
1 kilogram (kg) = 1000 grams (g) 1 gram = 1000 milligrams (mg) 1 metric ton (t) = 1000 kilograms	1 ton (T) = 2000 pounds (lb) 1 pound = 16 ounces (oz)

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Arithmetic Operations and Relations

Identity	For any number a, $a + 0 = 0 + a = a$ and $a \cdot 1 = 1 \cdot a = a$.
Substitution (=)	If $a = b$, then a may be replaced by b.
Reflexive (=)	$a = a$
Symmetric (=)	If $a = b$, then $b = a$.
Transitive (=)	If $a = b$ and $b = c$, then $a = c$.
Commutative	For any numbers a and b, $a + b = b + a$ and $a \cdot b = b \cdot a$.
Associative	For any numbers a, b, and c, $(a + b) + c = a + (b + c)$ and $(a \cdot b) \cdot c = a \cdot (b \cdot c)$.
Distributive	For any numbers a, b, and c, $a(b + c) = ab + ac$ and $a(b - c) = ab - ac$.
Additive Inverse	For any number a, there is exactly one number $-a$ such that $a + (-a) = 0$.
Multiplicative Inverse	For any number $\frac{a}{b}$, where $a, b \neq 0$, there is exactly one number $\frac{b}{a}$ such that $\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{b}{a} = 1$.
Multiplicative (0)	For any number a, $a \cdot 0 = 0 \cdot a = 0$.
Addition (=)	For any numbers a, b, and c, if $a = b$, then $a + c = b + c$.
Subtraction (=)	For any numbers a, b, and c, if $a = b$, then $a - c = b - c$.
Multiplication and Division (=)	For any numbers a, b, and c, with $c \neq 0$, if $a = b$, then $ac = bc$ and $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c}$.
Addition (>)*	For any numbers a, b, and c, if $a > b$, then $a + c > b + c$.
Subtraction (>)*	For any numbers a, b, and c, if $a > b$, then $a - c > b - c$.
Multiplication and Division (>)*	For any numbers a, b, and c, 1. if $a > b$ and $c > 0$, then $ac > bc$ and $\frac{a}{c} > \frac{b}{c}$. 2. if $a > b$ and $c < 0$, then $ac < bc$ and $\frac{a}{c} < \frac{b}{c}$.
Zero Product	For any real numbers a and b, if $ab = 0$, then $a = 0$, $b = 0$, or both a and b equal 0.

** These properties are also true for $<$, $\geq$, and $\leq$.*

Algebraic Formulas and Key Concepts

Matrices

Adding	$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a+e & b+f \\ c+g & d+h \end{bmatrix}$	**Multiplying by a Scalar**	$k\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ka & kb \\ kc & kd \end{bmatrix}$
Subtracting	$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a-e & b-f \\ c-g & d-h \end{bmatrix}$	**Multiplying**	$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ae+bg & af+bh \\ ce+dg & cf+dh \end{bmatrix}$

Polynomials

Quadratic Formula	$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$, $a \neq 0$	**Square of a Difference**	$(a - b)^2 = (a - b)(a - b)$ $= a^2 - 2ab + b^2$
Square of a Sum	$(a + b)^2 = (a + b)(a + b)$ $= a^2 + 2ab + b^2$	**Product of Sum and Difference**	$(a + b)(a - b) = (a - b)(a + b)$ $= a^2 - b^2$

Logarithms

Product Property	$\log_x ab = \log_x a + \log_x b$	**Power Property**	$\log_b m^p = p \log_b m$
Quotient Property	$\log_x \frac{a}{b} = \log_x a - \log_x b$, $b \neq 0$	**Change of Base**	$\log_a n = \frac{\log_b n}{\log_b a}$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Algebraic Formulas and Key Concepts

Exponential and Logarithmic Functions			
Compound Interest	$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt}$	**Exponential Growth or Decay**	$N = N_0(1 + r)^t$
Continuous Compound Interest	$A = Pe^{rt}$	**Continuous Exponential Growth or Decay**	$N = N_0e^{kt}$
Product Property	$\log_b xy = \log_b x + \log_b y$	**Power Property**	$\log_b x^p = p \log_b x$
Quotient Property	$\log_b \frac{x}{y} = \log_b x - \log_b y$	**Change of Base**	$\log_b x = \frac{\log_a x}{\log_a b}$
Logistic Growth	$f(t) = \frac{c}{1 + ae^{-bt}}$		

Sequences and Series			
***n*th term, Arithmetic**	$a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$	***n*th term, Geometric**	$a_n = a_1r^{n-1}$
Sum of Arithmetic Series	$S_n = n\left(\frac{a_1 + a_2}{2}\right)$ or $S_n = \frac{n}{2}[2a_1 + (n - 1)d]$	**Sum of Geometric Series**	$S_n = \frac{a_1 - a_1r^n}{1 - r}$ or $S_n = \frac{a_1 - a_nr}{1 - r}, r \neq 1$
Sum of Infinite Geometric Series	$S = \frac{a_1}{1 - r}, \lvert r \rvert < 1$	**Euler's Formula**	$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\theta$
Power Series	$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_nx^n = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \cdots$	**Exponential Series**	$e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!} = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$
Binomial Theorem	$(a + b)^n = {}_nC_0\, a^nb^0 + {}_nC_1\, a^{n-1}b^1 + {}_nC_2\, a^{n-2}b^2 + \cdots + {}_nC_r\, a^{n-r}b^r + \cdots + {}_nC_n\, a^0b^n$		
Cosine and Sine Power Series	$\cos x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^nx^{2n}}{(2n)!} = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} - \frac{x^6}{6!} + \cdots$		$\sin x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^nx^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!} = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \frac{x^7}{7!} + \cdots$

Vectors			
Addition in Plane	$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2 \rangle$	**Addition in Space**	$\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 + b_1, a_2 + b_2, a_3 + b_3 \rangle$
Subtraction in Plane	$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2 \rangle$	**Subtraction in Space**	$\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{b}) = \langle a_1 - b_1, a_2 - b_2, a_3 - b_3 \rangle$
Scalar Multiplication in Plane	$k\mathbf{a} = \langle ka_1, ka_2 \rangle$	**Scalar Multiplication in Space**	$k\mathbf{a} = \langle ka_1, ka_2, ka_3 \rangle$
Dot Product in Plane	$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2$	**Dot Product in Space**	$\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b} = a_1b_1 + a_2b_2 + a_3b_3$
Angle Between Two Vectors	$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{a} \cdot \mathbf{b}}{\lvert\mathbf{a}\rvert\lvert\mathbf{b}\rvert}$	**Projection of u onto v**	$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}}\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{\lvert\mathbf{v}\rvert^2}\right)\mathbf{v}$
Magnitude of a Vector	$\lvert\mathbf{v}\rvert = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$	**Triple Scalar Product**	$\mathbf{t} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = \begin{vmatrix} t_1 & t_2 & t_3 \\ u_1 & u_2 & u_3 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \end{vmatrix}$

Equations of a Line on a Coordinate Plane	
Slope-intercept form of a line	$y = mx + b$
Point-slope form of a line	$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Algebraic Formulas and Key Concepts

Conic Sections			
Parabola	$(x-h)^2 = 4p(y-k)$ or $(y-k)^2 = 4p(x-h)$	**Circle**	$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ or $(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 = r^2$
Ellipse	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ or $\frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} + \frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} = 1$	**Hyperbola**	$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ or $\frac{(y-k)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(x-h)^2}{b^2} = 1$
Rotation of Conics	$x' = x\cos\theta + y\sin\theta$ and $y' = y\cos\theta - x\sin\theta$		

Parametric Equations			
Vertical Position	$y = tv_0 \sin\theta - \frac{1}{2}gt^2 + h_0$	**Horizontal Distance**	$x = tv_0\cos\theta$

Complex Numbers			
Product Formula	$z_1z_2 = r_1r_2[\cos(\theta_1+\theta_2) + \boldsymbol{i}\sin(\theta_1+\theta_2)]$	**Quotient Formula**	$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2}[\cos(\theta_1-\theta_2) + \boldsymbol{i}\sin(\theta_1-\theta_2)]$
Distinct Roots Formula	$r^{\frac{1}{p}}\left(\cos\frac{\theta+2n\pi}{p} + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\frac{\theta+2n\pi}{p}\right)$	**De Moivre's Theorem**	$z^n = [r(\cos\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin\theta)]^n$ or $r^n(\cos n\theta + \boldsymbol{i}\sin n\theta)$

Geometric Formulas and Key Concepts

Coordinate Geometry			
Slope	$m = \frac{y_2-y_1}{x_2-x_1}, x_2 \neq x_1$	**Distance on a number line**	$d = \lvert a-b\rvert$
Distance on a coordinate plane	$d = \sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2 + (y_2-y_1)^2}$	**Arc length**	$\ell = \frac{x}{360}\cdot 2\pi r$
Midpoint on a coordinate plane	$M = \left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1+y_2}{2}\right)$	**Midpoint on a number line**	$M = \frac{a+b}{2}$
Midpoint in space	$M = \left(\frac{x_1+x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1+y_2}{2}, \frac{z_1+z_2}{2}\right)$	**Pythagorean Theorem**	$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$
Distance in space	$d = \sqrt{(x_2-x_1)^2 + (y_2-y_1)^2 + (z_2-z_1)^2}$		

Perimeter and Circumference					
Square	$P = 4s$	**Rectangle**	$P = 2\ell + 2w$	**Circle**	$C = 2\pi r$ or $C = \pi d$

Lateral Surface Area			
Prism	$L = Ph$	**Pyramid**	$L = \frac{1}{2}P\ell$
Cylinder	$L = 2\pi rh$	**Cone**	$L = \pi r\ell$

Total Surface Area					
Prism	$S = Ph + 2B$	**Cone**	$S = \pi r\ell + \pi r^2$	**Cylinder**	$S = 2\pi rh + 2\pi r^2$
Pyramid	$S = \frac{1}{2}P\ell + B$	**Sphere**	$S = 4\pi r^2$	**Cube**	$S = 6s^2$

Volume					
Prism	$V = Bh$	**Cone**	$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2h$	**Cylinder**	$V = \pi r^2h$
Pyramid	$V = \frac{1}{3}Bh$	**Sphere**	$V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$	**Cube**	$V = s^3$
Rectangular prism	$V = \ell wh$				

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Trigonometric Functions and Identities

Trigonometric Functions

Trigonometric Functions	$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}}$ $\csc\theta = \frac{\text{hyp}}{\text{opp}} = \frac{1}{\sin\theta}$	$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}}$ $\sec\theta = \frac{\text{hyp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{1}{\cos\theta}$	$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{\sin\theta}{\cos\theta}$ $\cot\theta = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{opp}} = \frac{\cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$
Law of Cosines	$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc\cos A$	$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac\cos B$	$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab\cos C$
Law of Sines	$\frac{\sin A}{a} = \frac{\sin B}{b} = \frac{\sin C}{c}$	**Heron's Formula**	Area $= \sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}$
Linear Speed	$v = \frac{s}{t}$	**Angular Speed**	$\omega = \frac{\theta}{t}$

Trigonometric Identities

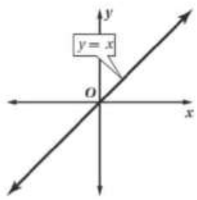
Reciprocal	$\sin\theta = \frac{1}{\csc\theta}$ $\csc\theta = \frac{1}{\sin\theta}$	$\cos\theta = \frac{1}{\sec\theta}$ $\sec\theta = \frac{1}{\cos\theta}$	$\tan\theta = \frac{1}{\cot\theta}$ $\cot\theta = \frac{1}{\tan\theta}$
Pythagorean	$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$	$\tan^2\theta + 1 = \sec^2\theta$	$\cot^2\theta + 1 = \csc^2\theta$
Cofunction	$\sin\theta = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$ $\cos\theta = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$	$\tan\theta = \cot\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$ $\cot\theta = \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$	$\sec\theta = \csc\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$ $\csc\theta = \sec\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$
Odd-Even	$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin\theta$ $\csc(-\theta) = -\csc\theta$	$\cos(-\theta) = \cos\theta$ $\sec(-\theta) = \sec\theta$	$\tan(-\theta) = -\tan\theta$ $\cot(-\theta) = -\cot\theta$
Sum & Difference	$\cos(\alpha + \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta - \sin\alpha\sin\beta$ $\sin(\alpha + \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta + \cos\alpha\sin\beta$ $\tan(\alpha + \beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha + \tan\beta}{1 - \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$	$\cos(\alpha - \beta) = \cos\alpha\cos\beta + \sin\alpha\sin\beta$ $\sin(\alpha - \beta) = \sin\alpha\cos\beta - \cos\alpha\sin\beta$ $\tan(\alpha - \beta) = \frac{\tan\alpha - \tan\beta}{1 + \tan\alpha\tan\beta}$	
Double-Angle	$\cos 2\theta = \cos^2\theta - \sin^2\theta$ $\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\theta\cos\theta$	$\cos 2\theta = 2\cos^2\theta - 1$ $\tan 2\theta = \frac{2\tan\theta}{1 - \tan^2\theta}$	$\cos 2\theta = 1 - 2\sin^2\theta$
Power-Reducing	$\sin^2\theta = \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{2}$	$\cos^2\theta = \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2}$	$\tan^2\theta = \frac{1 - \cos 2\theta}{1 + \cos 2\theta}$
Half-Angle	$\sin\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{2}}$ $\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}}$	$\cos\frac{\theta}{2} = \pm\sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos\theta}{2}}$ $\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{1 - \cos\theta}{\sin\theta}$	$\tan\frac{\theta}{2} = \frac{\sin\theta}{1 + \cos\theta}$
Product-to-Sum	$\sin\alpha\sin\beta = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(\alpha - \beta) - \cos(\alpha + \beta)]$ $\cos\alpha\cos\beta = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(\alpha - \beta) + \cos(\alpha + \beta)]$	$\sin\alpha\cos\beta = \frac{1}{2}[\sin(\alpha + \beta) + \sin(\alpha - \beta)]$ $\cos\alpha\sin\beta = \frac{1}{2}[\sin(\alpha + \beta) - \sin(\alpha - \beta)]$	
Sum-to-Product	$\sin\alpha + \sin\beta = 2\sin\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right)$ $\sin\alpha - \sin\beta = 2\cos\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right)$	$\cos\alpha + \cos\beta = 2\cos\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right)$ $\cos\alpha - \cos\beta = -2\sin\left(\frac{\alpha + \beta}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{\alpha - \beta}{2}\right)$	

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

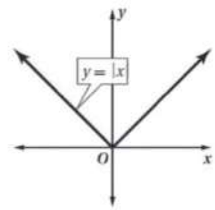
Parent Functions and Function Operations

Parent Functions

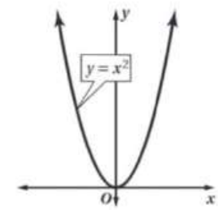
Linear Functions



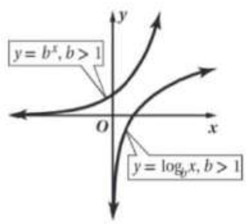
Absolute Value Functions



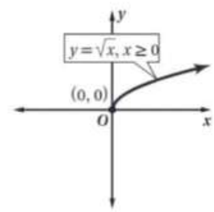
Quadratic Functions



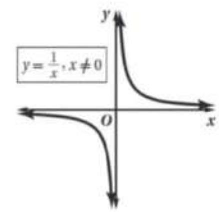
Exponential and Logarithmic Functions



Square Root Functions



Reciprocal and Rational Functions



Function Operations

Addition	$(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$	**Multiplication**	$(f \cdot g)(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x)$
Subtraction	$(f-g)(x) = f(x) - g(x)$	**Division**	$\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)},\ g(x) \neq 0$

Calculus

Limits

Sum	$\lim_{x \to c} [f(x) + g(x)] = \lim_{x \to c} f(x) + \lim_{x \to c} g(x)$	**Difference**	$\lim_{x \to c} [f(x) - g(x)] = \lim_{x \to c} f(x) - \lim_{x \to c} g(x)$
Scalar Multiple	$\lim_{x \to c} [k\,f(x)] = k \lim_{x \to c} f(x)$	**Product**	$\lim_{x \to c} [f(x) \cdot g(x)] = \lim_{x \to c} f(x) \cdot \lim_{x \to c} g(x)$
Quotient	$\lim_{x \to c} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\lim_{x \to c} f(x)}{\lim_{x \to c} g(x)}$, if $\lim_{x \to c} g(x) \neq 0$	**Power**	$\lim_{x \to c} [f(x)^n] = \left[\lim_{x \to c} f(x)\right]^n$
***n*th Root**	$\lim_{x \to c} \sqrt[n]{f(x)} = \sqrt[n]{\lim_{x \to c} f(x)}$, if $\lim_{x \to c} f(x) > 0$ when n is even	**Velocity**	**Average** $v_{avg} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$ **Instantaneous** $v(t) = \lim_{h \to 0} \frac{f(t+h) - f(t)}{h}$

Derivatives

Power Rule	If $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$	**Sum or Difference**	If $f(x) = g(x) \pm h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) \pm h'(x)$
Product Rule	$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)g(x)] = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$	**Quotient Rule**	$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{f(x)}{g(x)}\right] = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{[g(x)]^2}$

Integrals

Indefinite Integral	$\int f(x)\,dx = F(x) + C$	**Fundamental Theorem of Calculus**	$\int_a^b f(x)\,dx = F(b) - F(a)$

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Statistics Formulas and Key Concepts

z-Values	$z = \dfrac{X - \mu}{\sigma}$	**z-Value of a Sample Mean**	$z = \dfrac{\overline{x} - \mu}{\sigma_{\overline{x}}}$
Binomial Probability	$P(X) = {}_nC_x\, p^x q^{n-x} = \dfrac{n!}{(n-x)!\,x!}\, p^x q^{n-x}$	**Maximum Error of Estimate**	$E = z \cdot \sigma_{\overline{x}}$ or $z \cdot \dfrac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$
Confidence Interval, Normal Distribution	$CI = \overline{x} \pm E$ or $\overline{x} \pm z \cdot \dfrac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$	**Confidence Interval, t-Distribution**	$CI = \overline{x} \pm t \cdot \dfrac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$
Correlation Coefficient	$r = \dfrac{1}{n-1} \sum \left(\dfrac{x_i - \overline{x}}{s_x}\right)\left(\dfrac{y_i - \overline{y}}{s_y}\right)$	**t-Test for the Correlation Coefficient**	$t = r\sqrt{\dfrac{n-2}{1-r^2}}$, degrees of freedom: $n - 2$

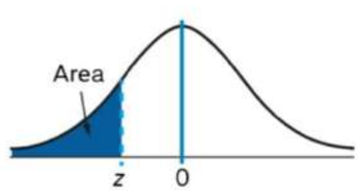
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

TABLE A The Standard Normal Distribution

Cumulative Standard Normal Distribution

z	.00	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.06	.07	.08	.09
−3.4	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0003	.0002
−3.3	.0005	.0005	.0005	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0004	.0003
−3.2	.0007	.0007	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0006	.0005	.0005	.0005
−3.1	.0010	.0009	.0009	.0009	.0008	.0008	.0008	.0008	.0007	.0007
−3.0	.0013	.0013	.0013	.0012	.0012	.0011	.0011	.0011	.0010	.0010
−2.9	.0019	.0018	.0018	.0017	.0016	.0016	.0015	.0015	.0014	.0014
−2.8	.0026	.0025	.0024	.0023	.0023	.0022	.0021	.0021	.0020	.0019
−2.7	.0035	.0034	.0033	.0032	.0031	.0030	.0029	.0028	.0027	.0026
−2.6	.0047	.0045	.0044	.0043	.0041	.0040	.0039	.0038	.0037	.0036
−2.5	.0062	.0060	.0059	.0057	.0055	.0054	.0052	.0051	.0049	.0048
−2.4	.0082	.0080	.0078	.0075	.0073	.0071	.0069	.0068	.0066	.0064
−2.3	.0107	.0104	.0102	.0099	.0096	.0094	.0091	.0089	.0087	.0084
−2.2	.0139	.0136	.0132	.0129	.0125	.0122	.0119	.0116	.0113	.0110
−2.1	.0179	.0174	.0170	.0166	.0162	.0158	.0154	.0150	.0146	.0143
−2.0	.0228	.0222	.0217	.0212	.0207	.0202	.0197	.0192	.0188	.0183
−1.9	.0287	.0281	.0274	.0268	.0262	.0256	.0250	.0244	.0239	.0233
−1.8	.0359	.0351	.0344	.0336	.0329	.0322	.0314	.0307	.0301	.0294
−1.7	.0446	.0436	.0427	.0418	.0409	.0401	.0392	.0384	.0375	.0367
−1.6	.0548	.0537	.0526	.0516	.0505	.0495	.0485	.0475	.0465	.0455
−1.5	.0668	.0655	.0643	.0630	.0618	.0606	.0594	.0582	.0571	.0559
−1.4	.0808	.0793	.0778	.0764	.0749	.0735	.0721	.0708	.0694	.0681
−1.3	.0968	.0951	.0934	.0918	.0901	.0885	.0869	.0853	.0838	.0823
−1.2	.1151	.1131	.1112	.1093	.1075	.1056	.1038	.1020	.1003	.0985
−1.1	.1357	.1335	.1314	.1292	.1271	.1251	.1230	.1210	.1190	.1170
−1.0	.1587	.1562	.1539	.1515	.1492	.1469	.1446	.1423	.1401	.1379
−0.9	.1841	.1814	.1788	.1762	.1736	.1711	.1685	.1660	.1635	.1611
−0.8	.2119	.2090	.2061	.2033	.2005	.1977	.1949	.1922	.1894	.1867
−0.7	.2420	.2389	.2358	.2327	.2296	.2266	.2236	.2206	.2177	.2148
−0.6	.2743	.2709	.2676	.2643	.2611	.2578	.2546	.2514	.2483	.2451
−0.5	.3085	.3050	.3015	.2981	.2946	.2912	.2877	.2843	.2810	.2776
−0.4	.3446	.3409	.3372	.3336	.3300	.3264	.3228	.3192	.3156	.3121
−0.3	.3821	.3783	.3745	.3707	.3669	.3632	.3594	.3557	.3520	.3483
−0.2	.4207	.4168	.4129	.4090	.4052	.4013	.3974	.3936	.3897	.3859
−0.1	.4602	.4562	.4522	.4483	.4443	.4404	.4364	.4325	.4286	.4247
−0.0	.5000	.4960	.4920	.4880	.4840	.4801	.4761	.4721	.4681	.4641

For *z* values less than −3.49, use 0.0001.



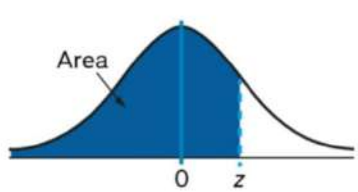
Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

TABLE A (*continued*)

Cumulative Standard Normal Distribution

z	.00	.01	.02	.03	.04	.05	.06	.07	.08	.09
0.0	.5000	.5040	.5080	.5120	.5160	.5199	.5239	.5279	.5319	.5359
0.1	.5398	.5438	.5478	.5517	.5557	.5596	.5636	.5675	.5714	.5753
0.2	.5793	.5832	.5871	.5910	.5948	.5987	.6026	.6064	.6103	.6141
0.3	.6179	.6217	.6255	.6293	.6331	.6368	.6406	.6443	.6480	.6517
0.4	.6554	.6591	.6628	.6664	.6700	.6736	.6772	.6808	.6844	.6879
0.5	.6915	.6950	.6985	.7019	.7054	.7088	.7123	.7157	.7190	.7224
0.6	.7257	.7291	.7324	.7357	.7389	.7422	.7454	.7486	.7517	.7549
0.7	.7580	.7611	.7642	.7673	.7704	.7734	.7764	.7794	.7823	.7852
0.8	.7881	.7910	.7939	.7967	.7995	.8023	.8051	.8078	.8106	.8133
0.9	.8159	.8186	.8212	.8238	.8264	.8289	.8315	.8340	.8365	.8389
1.0	.8413	.8438	.8461	.8485	.8508	.8531	.8554	.8577	.8599	.8621
1.1	.8643	.8665	.8686	.8708	.8729	.8749	.8770	.8790	.8810	.8830
1.2	.8849	.8869	.8888	.8907	.8925	.8944	.8962	.8980	.8997	.9015
1.3	.9032	.9049	.9066	.9082	.9099	.9115	.9131	.9147	.9162	.9177
1.4	.9192	.9207	.9222	.9236	.9251	.9265	.9279	.9292	.9306	.9319
1.5	.9332	.9345	.9357	.9370	.9382	.9394	.9406	.9418	.9429	.9441
1.6	.9452	.9463	.9474	.9484	.9495	.9505	.9515	.9525	.9535	.9545
1.7	.9554	.9564	.9573	.9582	.9591	.9599	.9608	.9616	.9625	.9633
1.8	.9641	.9649	.9656	.9664	.9671	.9678	.9686	.9693	.9699	.9706
1.9	.9713	.9719	.9726	.9732	.9738	.9744	.9750	.9756	.9761	.9767
2.0	.9772	.9778	.9783	.9788	.9793	.9798	.9803	.9808	.9812	.9817
2.1	.9821	.9826	.9830	.9834	.9838	.9842	.9846	.9850	.9854	.9857
2.2	.9861	.9864	.9868	.9871	.9875	.9878	.9881	.9884	.9887	.9890
2.3	.9893	.9896	.9898	.9901	.9904	.9906	.9909	.9911	.9913	.9916
2.4	.9918	.9920	.9922	.9925	.9927	.9929	.9931	.9932	.9934	.9936
2.5	.9938	.9940	.9941	.9943	.9945	.9946	.9948	.9949	.9951	.9952
2.6	.9953	.9955	.9956	.9957	.9959	.9960	.9961	.9962	.9963	.9964
2.7	.9965	.9966	.9967	.9968	.9969	.9970	.9971	.9972	.9973	.9974
2.8	.9974	.9975	.9976	.9977	.9977	.9978	.9979	.9979	.9980	.9981
2.9	.9981	.9982	.9982	.9983	.9984	.9984	.9985	.9985	.9986	.9986
3.0	.9987	.9987	.9987	.9988	.9988	.9989	.9989	.9989	.9990	.9990
3.1	.9990	.9991	.9991	.9991	.9992	.9992	.9992	.9992	.9993	.9993
3.2	.9993	.9993	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9994	.9995	.9995	.9995
3.3	.9995	.9995	.9995	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9996	.9997
3.4	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9997	.9998

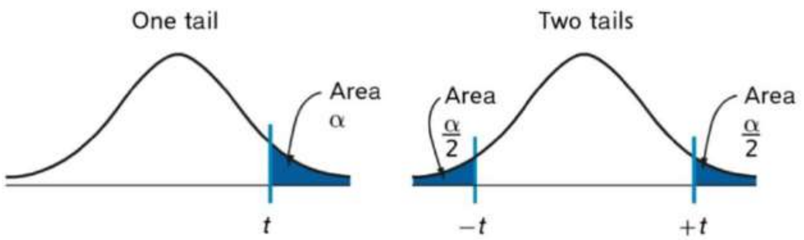
For *z* values greater than 3.49, use 0.9999.



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

TABLE B Student's *t*-Distribution (the *t* Distribution)

Degrees of Freedom	Confidence intervals	80%	90%	95%	98%	99%
	One tail, α	0.10	0.05	0.025	0.01	0.005
	Two tails, α	0.20	0.10	0.05	0.02	0.01
1		3.078	6.314	12.706	31.821	63.657
2		1.886	2.920	4.303	6.965	9.925
3		1.638	2.353	3.182	4.541	5.841
4		1.533	2.132	2.776	3.747	4.604
5		1.476	2.015	2.571	3.365	4.032
6		1.440	1.943	2.447	3.143	3.707
7		1.415	1.895	2.365	2.998	3.499
8		1.397	1.860	2.306	2.896	3.355
9		1.383	1.833	2.262	2.821	3.250
10		1.372	1.812	2.228	2.764	3.169
11		1.363	1.796	2.201	2.718	3.106
12		1.356	1.782	2.179	2.681	3.055
13		1.350	1.771	2.160	2.650	3.012
14		1.345	1.761	2.145	2.624	2.977
15		1.341	1.753	2.131	2.602	2.947
16		1.337	1.746	2.120	2.583	2.921
17		1.333	1.740	2.110	2.567	2.898
18		1.330	1.734	2.101	2.552	2.878
19		1.328	1.729	2.093	2.539	2.861
20		1.325	1.725	2.086	2.528	2.845
21		1.323	1.721	2.080	2.518	2.831
22		1.321	1.717	2.074	2.508	2.819
23		1.319	1.714	2.069	2.500	2.807
24		1.318	1.711	2.064	2.492	2.797
25		1.316	1.708	2.060	2.485	2.787
26		1.315	1.706	2.056	2.479	2.779
27		1.314	1.703	2.052	2.473	2.771
28		1.313	1.701	2.048	2.467	2.763
29		1.311	1.699	2.045	2.462	2.756
30		1.310	1.697	2.042	2.457	2.750
32		1.309	1.694	2.037	2.449	2.738
34		1.307	1.691	2.032	2.441	2.728
36		1.306	1.688	2.028	2.434	2.719
38		1.304	1.686	2.024	2.429	2.712
40		1.303	1.684	2.021	2.423	2.704
45		1.301	1.679	2.014	2.412	2.690
50		1.299	1.676	2.009	2.403	2.678
55		1.297	1.673	2.004	2.396	2.668
60		1.296	1.671	2.000	2.390	2.660
65		1.295	1.669	1.997	2.385	2.654
70		1.294	1.667	1.994	2.381	2.648
75		1.293	1.665	1.992	2.377	2.643
80		1.292	1.664	1.990	2.374	2.639
90		1.291	1.662	1.987	2.368	2.632
100		1.290	1.660	1.984	2.364	2.626
500		1.283	1.648	1.965	2.334	2.586
1000		1.282	1.646	1.962	2.330	2.581
(z) ∞		1.282	1.645	1.960	2.326	2.576



Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

TABLE C The Chi-Square Distribution (X^2)

Degrees of Freedom	α									
	0.995	0.99	0.975	0.95	0.90	0.10	0.05	0.025	0.01	0.005
1	—	—	0.001	0.004	0.016	2.706	3.841	5.024	6.635	7.879
2	0.010	0.020	0.051	0.103	0.211	4.605	5.991	7.378	9.210	10.597
3	0.072	0.115	0.216	0.352	0.584	6.251	7.815	9.348	11.345	12.838
4	0.207	0.297	0.484	0.711	1.064	7.779	9.488	11.143	13.277	14.860
5	0.412	0.554	0.831	1.145	1.610	9.236	11.071	12.833	15.086	16.750
6	0.676	0.872	1.237	1.635	2.204	10.645	12.592	14.449	16.812	18.548
7	0.989	1.239	1.690	2.167	2.833	12.017	14.067	16.013	18.475	20.278
8	1.344	1.646	2.180	2.733	3.490	13.362	15.507	17.535	20.090	21.955
9	1.735	2.088	2.700	3.325	4.168	14.684	16.919	19.023	21.666	23.589
10	2.156	2.558	3.247	3.940	4.865	15.987	18.307	20.483	23.209	25.188
11	2.603	3.053	3.816	4.575	5.578	17.275	19.675	21.920	24.725	26.757
12	3.074	3.571	4.404	5.226	6.304	18.549	21.026	23.337	26.217	28.299
13	3.565	4.107	5.009	5.892	7.042	19.812	22.362	24.736	27.688	29.819
14	4.075	4.660	5.629	6.571	7.790	21.064	23.685	26.119	29.141	31.319
15	4.601	5.229	6.262	7.261	8.547	22.307	24.996	27.488	30.578	32.801
16	5.142	5.812	6.908	7.962	9.312	23.542	26.296	28.845	32.000	34.267
17	5.697	6.408	7.564	8.672	10.085	24.769	27.587	30.191	33.409	35.718
18	6.265	7.015	8.231	9.390	10.865	25.989	28.869	31.526	34.805	37.156
19	6.844	7.633	8.907	10.117	11.651	27.204	30.144	32.852	36.191	38.582
20	7.434	8.260	9.591	10.851	12.443	28.412	31.410	34.170	37.566	39.997
21	8.034	8.897	10.283	11.591	13.240	29.615	32.671	35.479	38.932	41.401
22	8.643	9.542	10.982	12.338	14.042	30.813	33.924	36.781	40.289	42.796
23	9.262	10.196	11.689	13.091	14.848	32.007	35.172	38.076	41.638	44.181
24	9.886	10.856	12.401	13.848	15.659	33.196	36.415	39.364	42.980	45.559
25	10.520	11.524	13.120	14.611	16.473	34.382	37.652	40.646	44.314	46.928
26	11.160	12.198	13.844	15.379	17.292	35.563	38.885	41.923	45.642	48.290
27	11.808	12.879	14.573	16.151	18.114	36.741	40.113	43.194	46.963	49.645
28	12.461	13.565	15.308	16.928	18.939	37.916	41.337	44.461	48.278	50.993
29	13.121	14.257	16.047	17.708	19.768	39.087	42.557	45.722	49.588	52.336
30	13.787	14.954	16.791	18.493	20.599	40.256	43.773	46.979	50.892	53.672
40	20.707	22.164	24.433	26.509	29.051	51.805	55.758	59.342	63.691	66.766
50	27.991	29.707	32.357	34.764	37.689	63.167	67.505	71.420	76.154	79.490
60	35.534	37.485	40.482	43.188	46.459	74.397	79.082	83.298	88.379	91.952
70	43.275	45.442	48.758	51.739	55.329	85.527	90.531	95.023	100.425	104.215
80	51.172	53.540	57.153	60.391	64.278	96.578	101.879	106.629	112.329	116.321
90	59.196	61.754	65.647	69.126	73.291	107.565	113.145	118.136	124.116	128.299
100	67.328	70.065	74.222	77.929	82.358	118.498	124.342	129.561	135.807	140.169

Copyright © McGraw-Hill Education

Hybrid education in the Emirati school

Within the strategic dimension of the Ministry of Education's development plans and its endeavor to diversify education channels and overcome all the challenges that may prevent it, and to ensure continuity in all circumstances, the Ministry has implemented a hybrid education plan for all students at all levels of education.

Study Plan		Pre-kindergarten/ kindergarten	Cycle 1	Cycle 2	Cycle 3
School learning		✓	✓	✓	✓
e-learning	Direct	–	–	✓	✓
	Self	✓	✓	✓	✓

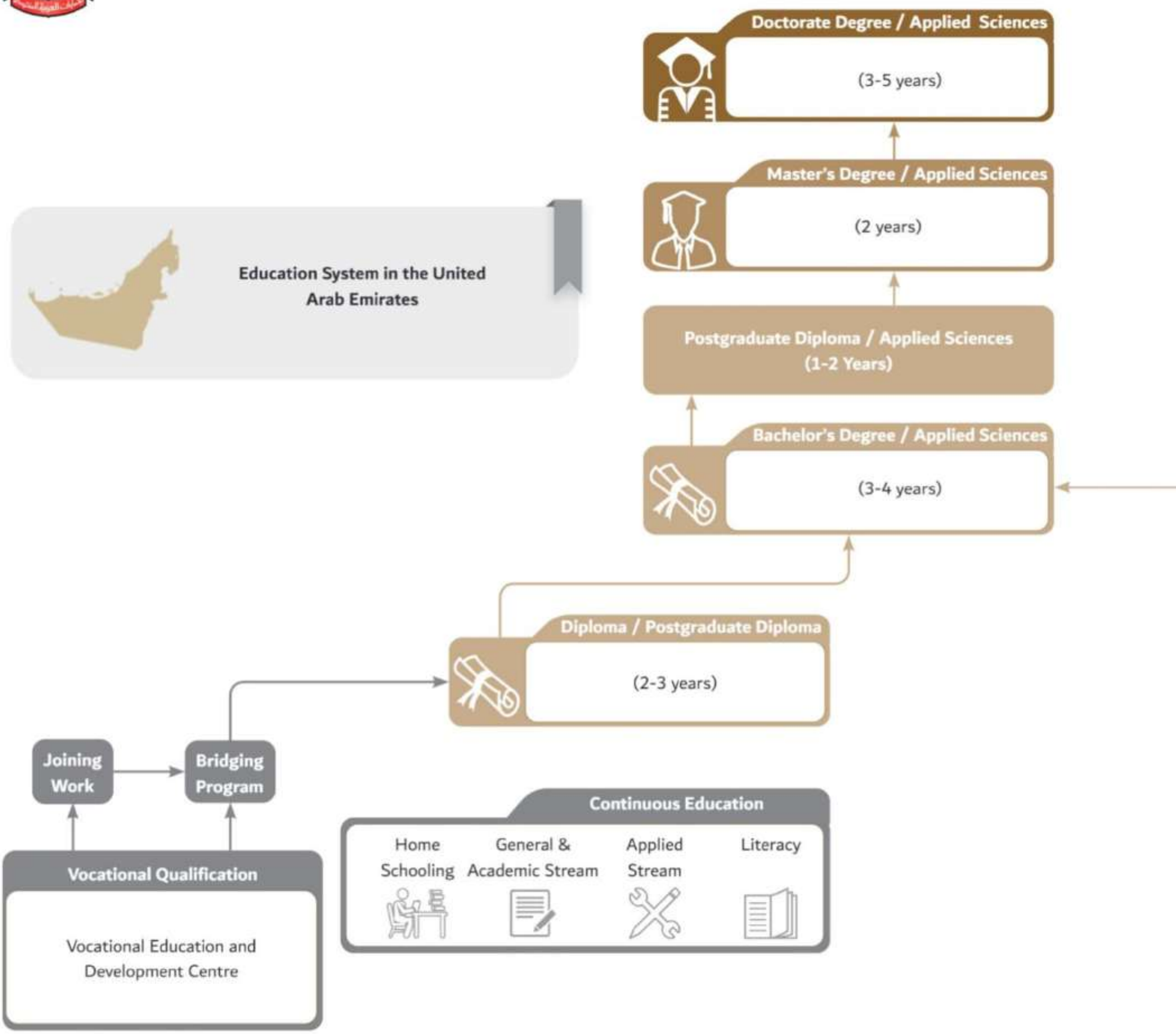
Channels for obtaining a textbook:

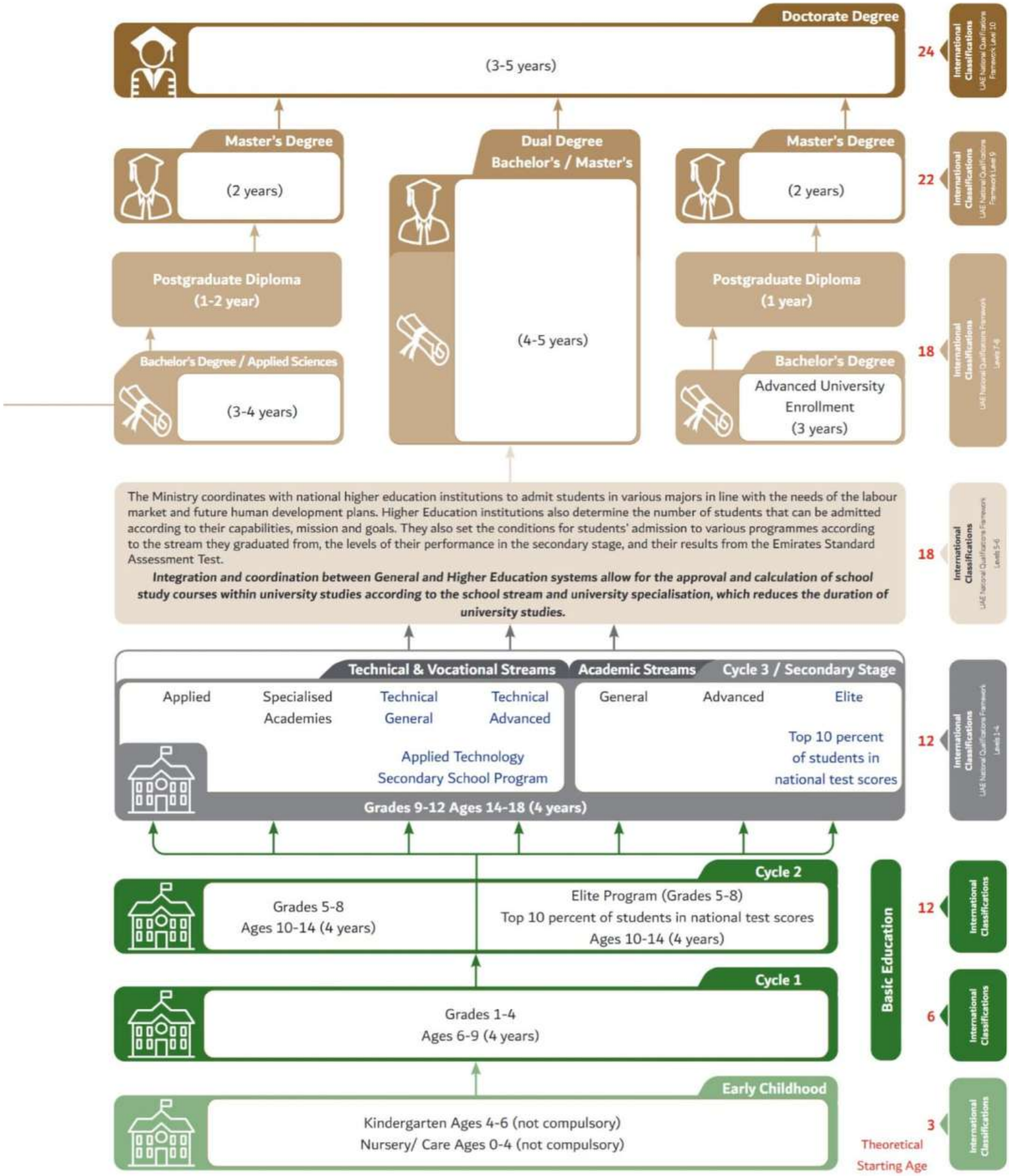
برنامج محمد بن راشد للتعلم الذكي
Mohammed Bin Rashid Smart Learning Program

Electronic units

UNITED ARAB EMIRATES
MINISTRY OF EDUCATION

Education System in the United Arab Emirates





Doctorate Degree
(3-5 years)
24
International Classifications
UAE National Qualifications Framework Level 10
Master's Degree
(2 years)
Dual Degree
Bachelor's / Master's
(4-5 years)
Master's Degree
(2 years)
22
International Classifications
UAE National Qualifications Framework Level 9
Postgraduate Diploma
(1-2 year)
Postgraduate Diploma
(1 year)
Bachelor's Degree / Applied Sciences
(3-4 years)
Bachelor's Degree
Advanced University Enrollment
(3 years)
18
International Classifications
UAE National Qualifications Framework Levels 7-8
The Ministry coordinates with national higher education institutions to admit students in various majors in line with the needs of the labour market and future human development plans. Higher Education institutions also determine the number of students that can be admitted according to their capabilities, mission and goals. They also set the conditions for students' admission to various programmes according to the stream they graduated from, the levels of their performance in the secondary stage, and their results from the Emirates Standard Assessment Test.
Integration and coordination between General and Higher Education systems allow for the approval and calculation of school study courses within university studies according to the school stream and university specialisation, which reduces the duration of university studies.
18
International Classifications
UAE National Qualifications Framework Levels 5-6
Technical & Vocational Streams
Academic Streams
Cycle 3 / Secondary Stage
Applied
Specialised Academies
Technical General
Technical Advanced
Applied Technology Secondary School Program
General
Advanced
Elite
Top 10 percent of students in national test scores
Grades 9-12 Ages 14-18 (4 years)
12
International Classifications
UAE National Qualifications Framework Levels 1-4
Cycle 2
Grades 5-8
Ages 10-14 (4 years)
Elite Program (Grades 5-8)
Top 10 percent of students in national test scores
Ages 10-14 (4 years)
12
International Classifications
Cycle 1
Grades 1-4
Ages 6-9 (4 years)
Basic Education
6
International Classifications
Early Childhood
Kindergarten Ages 4-6 (not compulsory)
Nursery/ Care Ages 0-4 (not compulsory)
3
Theoretical Starting Age
International Classifications

All rights reserved. No part of this bage may be reproduced, stored in a retieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior permission in writing of the publisher.

Ministry of Education
Call Centre
For Suggestions Inquiries
& Complaints

80051115

04-2176855

www.moe.gov.ae

ccc.moe@moe.gov.ae